

---

# **bizhub C35P**

## **Reference Guide**

---

**A0VD-9582-12A**

---

## Copyright Notice

The digitally encoded software and publication included with your printer are Copyrighted © 2009 by KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC., Marunouchi Center Building, 1-6-1 Marunouchi, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, 100-0005, Japan. All Rights Reserved.

This software may not be reproduced, modified, displayed, transferred, or copied in any form or in any manner or on any media, in whole or in part, without the express written permission of KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of KONICA MINOLTA. The information contained in this guide is intended for use with the KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P printers only.

## About the GPL (General Public License)

This driver is written for Linux, which is written and distributed under the GNU GPL. The printing system CUPS adopted to run on the Linux is published by ESP (Easy Software Products) under the GPL. All source codes that we write must be available to the general public.

## Trademarks

KONICA MINOLTA and the KONICA MINOLTA logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of KONICA MINOLTA HOLDINGS, INC.

bizhub and PageScope are trademarks or registered trademarks of KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

All other trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## Notice

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. reserves the right to make changes to this guide and to the equipment described herein without notice. Considerable effort has been made to ensure that this manual is free of inaccuracies and omissions. However, KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. makes no warranty of any kind including, but not limited to, any implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose with regard to this manual.

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. assumes no responsibility for, or liability for, errors contained in this manual or for incidental, special, or consequential damages arising out of the furnishing of this manual, or the use of this manual in operating the equipment, or in connection with the performance of the equipment when so operated.

# SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

This package contains the following materials provided by Konica Minolta Business Technologies, Inc. (KMBT): software included as part of the printing system, the digitally-encoded machine-readable outline data encoded in the special format and in the encrypted form ("Font Programs"), other software which runs on a computer system for use in conjunction with the Printing Software ("Host Software"), and related explanatory written materials ("Documentation"). The term "Software" shall be used to describe Printing Software, Font Programs and/or Host Software and also include any upgrades, modified versions, additions, and copies of the Software.

The Software is being licensed to you under the terms of this Agreement.

KMBT grants to you a non-exclusive sublicense to use the Software and Documentation, provided that you agree to the following:

1. You may use the Printing Software and accompanying Font Programs for imaging to the licensed output device(s), solely for your own internal business purposes.
2. In addition to the license for Font Programs set forth in Section 1 ("Printing Software") above, you may use Roman Font Programs to reproduce weights, styles, and versions of letters, numerals, characters and symbols ("Typefaces") on the display or monitor for your own internal business purposes.
3. You may make one backup copy of the Host Software, provided your backup copy is not installed or used on any computer. Notwithstanding the above restrictions, you may install the Host Software on any number of computers solely for use with one or more printing systems running the Printing Software.
4. You may assign its rights under this Agreement to an assignee of all of Licensee's right and interest to such Software and Documentation ("Assignee") provided you transfer to Assignee all copies of such Software and Documentation Assignee agrees to be bound by all of the terms and conditions of this Agreement.
5. You agree not to modify, adapt or translate the Software and Documentation.
6. You agree that you will not attempt to alter, disassemble, decrypt, reverse engineer or decompile the Software.
7. Title to and ownership of the Software and Documentation and any reproductions thereof shall remain with KMBT.
8. Trademarks shall be used in accordance with accepted trademark practice, including identification of the trademark owner's name. Trademarks can only be used to identify printed output produced by the Software. Such use of any trademark does not give you any rights of ownership in that trademark.
9. You may not rent, lease, sublicense, lend or transfer versions or copies of the Software that the Licensee does not use, or Software contained on any unused media, except as part of the permanent transfer of all Software and Documentation as described above.
10. In no event will KMBT or its licensor be liable to you for any consequential, incidental INDIRECT, PUNITIVE or special damages, including any lost profits or lost saving, even if KMBT has been advised of the possibility of such damages, or for any claim by any third party. KMBT or its licensor disclaims all warranties with regard to the software, express or implied, including, without limitation implied warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, title and non-infringement of third party rights. Some states or jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental, consequential or special damages, so the above limitations may not apply to you.

11. Notice to Government End Users: The Software is a “commercial item,” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R.2.101, consisting of “commercial computer software” and “commercial computer software documentation,” as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 and 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, all U.S. Government End Users acquire the Software with only those rights set forth herein.
12. You agree that you will not export the Software in any form in violation of any applicable laws and regulations regarding export control of any countries.

## About Adobe Color Profile

### ADOBE SYSTEMS INCORPORATED COLOR PROFILE LICENSE AGREEMENT

NOTICE TO USER: PLEASE READ THIS CONTRACT CAREFULLY. BY USING ALL OR ANY PORTION OF THE SOFTWARE YOU ACCEPT ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS SOFTWARE YOU ACCEPT ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT USE THE SOFTWARE.

1. **DEFINITIONS** In this Agreement, “Adobe” means Adobe Systems Incorporated, a Delaware corporation, located at 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, California 95110. “Software” means the software and related items with which this Agreement is provided.
2. **LICENSE** Subject to the terms of this Agreement, Adobe hereby grants you the worldwide, non-exclusive, nontransferable, royalty-free license to use, reproduce and publicly display the Software. Adobe also grants you the rights to distribute the Software only (a) as embedded within digital image files and (b) on a standalone basis. No other distribution of the Software is allowed; including, without limitation, distribution of the Software when incorporated into or bundled with any application software. All individual profiles must be referenced by their ICC Profile description string. You may not modify the Software. Adobe is under no obligation to provide any support under this Agreement, including upgrades or future versions of the Software or other items. No title to the intellectual property in the Software is transferred to you under the terms of this Agreement. You do not acquire any rights to the Software except as expressly set forth in this Agreement.
3. **DISTRIBUTION** If you choose to distribute the Software, you do so with the understanding that you agree to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Adobe against any losses, damages or costs arising from any claims, lawsuits or other legal actions arising out of such distribution, including without limitation, your failure to comply with this Section 3. If you distribute the Software on a standalone basis, you will do so under the terms of this Agreement or your own license agreement which (a) complies with the terms and conditions of this Agreement; (b) effectively disclaims all warranties and conditions, express or implied, on behalf of Adobe; (c) effectively excludes all liability for damages on behalf of Adobe; (d) states that any provisions that differ from this Agreement are offered by you alone and not Adobe and (e) states that the Software is available from you or Adobe and informs licensees how to obtain it in a reasonable manner on or through a medium customarily used for software exchange. Any distributed Software will include the Adobe copyright notices as included in the Software provided to you by Adobe.



4. **DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY** Adobe licenses the Software to you on an “AS IS” basis. Adobe makes no representation as to the adequacy of the Software for any particular purpose or to produce any particular result. Adobe shall not be liable for loss or damage arising out of this Agreement or from the distribution or use of the Software or any other materials. ADOBE AND ITS SUPPLIERS DO NOT AND CANNOT WARRANT THE PERFORMANCE OR RESULTS YOU MAY OBTAIN BY USING THE SOFTWARE, EXCEPT FOR ANY WARRANTY, CONDITION, REPRESENTATION OR TERM TO THE EXTENT TO WHICH THE SAME CANNOT OR MAY NOT BE EXCLUDED OR LIMITED BY LAW APPLICABLE TO YOU IN YOUR JURISDICTION, ADOBE AND ITS SUPPLIERS MAKE NO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS OR TERMS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WHETHER BY STATUTE, COMMON LAW, CUSTOM, USAGE OR OTHERWISE AS TO ANY OTHER MATTERS, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS, INTEGRATION, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE. YOU MAY HAVE ADDITIONAL RIGHTS WHICH VARY FROM JURISDICTION TO JURISDICTION. The provisions of Sections 4, 5 and 6 shall survive the termination of this Agreement, howsoever caused, but this shall not imply or create any continued right to use the Software after termination of this Agreement.
5. **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY** IN NO EVENT WILL ADOBE OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES, CLAIMS OR COSTS WHATSOEVER OR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, OR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST SAVINGS, EVEN IF AN ADOBE REPRESENTATIVE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH LOSS, DAMAGES, CLAIMS OR COSTS OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY ANY THIRD PARTY. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS APPLY TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN YOUR JURISDICTION. ADOBE'S AGGREGATE LIABILITY AND THAT OF ITS SUPPLIERS UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE. Nothing contained in this Agreement limits Adobe's liability to you in the event of death or personal injury resulting from Adobe's negligence or for the tort of deceit (fraud). Adobe is acting on behalf of its suppliers for the purpose of disclaiming, excluding and/or limiting obligations, warranties and liability as provided in this Agreement, but in no other respects and for no other purpose.
6. **TRADEMARKS** Adobe and the Adobe logo are the registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe in the United States and other countries. With the exception of referential use, you will not use such trademarks or any other Adobe trademark or logo without separate prior written permission granted by Adobe.
7. **TERM** This Agreement is effective until terminated. Adobe has the right to terminate this Agreement immediately if you fail to comply with any term hereof. Upon any such termination, you must return to Adobe all full and partial copies of the Software in your possession or control.
8. **GOVERNMENT REGULATIONS** If any part of the Software is identified as an export controlled item under the United States Export Administration Act or any other export law, restriction or regulation (the “Export Laws”), you represent and warrant that you are not a citizen, or otherwise located within, an embargoed nation (including without limitation Iran, Iraq, Syria, Sudan, Libya, Cuba, North Korea, and Serbia) and that you are not otherwise prohibited under the Export Laws from receiving the Software. All rights to use the Software are granted on condition that such rights are forfeited if you fail to comply with the terms of this Agreement.

9. **GOVERNING LAW** This Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the substantive laws in force in the State of California as such laws are applied to agreements entered into and to be performed entirely within California between California residents. This Agreement will not be governed by the conflict of law rules of any jurisdiction or the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded. All disputes arising out of, under or related to this Agreement will be brought exclusively in the state Santa Clara County, California, USA.
10. **GENERAL** You may not assign your rights or obligations granted under this Agreement without the prior written consent of Adobe. None of the provisions of this Agreement shall be deemed to have been waived by any act or acquiescence on the part of Adobe, its agents, or employees, but only by an instrument in writing signed by an authorized signatory of Adobe. When conflicting language exists between this Agreement and any other agreement included in the Software, the terms of such included agreement shall apply. If either you or Adobe employs attorneys to enforce any rights arising out of or relating to this Agreement, the prevailing party shall be entitled to recover reasonable attorneys' fees. You acknowledge that you have read this Agreement, understand it, and that it is the complete and exclusive statement of your agreement with Adobe which supersedes any prior agreement, oral or written, between Adobe and you with respect to the licensing to you of the Software. No variation of the terms of this Agreement will be enforceable against Adobe unless Adobe gives its express consent, in writing, signed by an authorized signatory of Adobe.

## **ICC Profile for TOYO INK Standard Color on Coated paper (TOYO Offset Coated 2.1)**

This ICC Profile (TOYO Offset Coated 2.1) characterizes Japanese offset press on Coated paper and is fully compatible with ICC profile format.

About "TOYO INK Standard Color on Coated paper"

This is the standard for color reproduction of sheet-fed offset press on Coated paper made by TOYO INK MFG.CO., LTD. ("TOYO INK").

This standard is made from printing test with using TOYO INK's sheet-fed offset printing inks and TOYO INK's own printing conditions.

"TOYO INK Standard Color on Coated paper" is compatible with "JAPAN COLOR".

### **Agreement**

1. The reproduction of images on a printer or a monitor using this ICC Profile do not completely match the TOYO INK Standard Color on Coated paper.
2. Any and all copyrights of this ICC Profile shall remain in TOYO INK; therefore you shall not transfer, provide, rent, distribute, disclose, or grant any rights in this ICC Profile to any third party without the prior written consent of TOYO INK.
3. In no event will TOYO INK its directors, officers, employees or agents be liable to you for any consequential or incidental, either direct or indirect, damages (including damages for loss of business profits, business interruption, loss of business information, and the like) arising out of the use or inability to use this ICC Profile.
4. TOYO INK shall not be responsible for answering any question related to this ICC Profile.

5. All company names and product names used in this document is the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holder.

This ICC Profile made by GretagMacbeth ProfileMaker and granted TOYO INK certain license to distribute by GretagMacbeth AG.

TOYO Offset Coated 2.1 © TOYO INK MFG. CO., LTD. 2004

## **DIC STANDARD COLOR PROFILE LICENSE AGREEMENT**

IMPORTANT: PLEASE READ THIS STANDARD COLOR PROFILE LICENSE AGREEMENT ("LICENSE AGREEMENT") CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE DIC STANDARD COLOR PROFILE, INCLUDING THE DIC STANDARD SFC\_AM2.0, DIC STANDARD SFM\_AM2.0, DIC STANDARD SFU\_AM2.0, DIC STANDARD SFC\_FM2.0, DIC WAKIMIZU SFC\_AM2.0, DIC WAKIMIZU SFC\_FM2.0, DIC ABILIO SFC\_AM1.0, DIC HY-BRYTE SFC\_AM1.0, DIC STANDARD WEBC\_AM2.1, DIC STANDARD WEBC\_FM2.1, DIC NEWSCOLOR\_AM1.0, DIC NEWSCOLOR\_FM1.0, PROVIDED BY DIC HEREWITH, AND ANY CORRESPONDING ONLINE OR ELECTRONIC DOCUMENTATION AND ALL UPDATES OR UPGRADES OF THE ABOVE THAT ARE PROVIDED TO YOU (COLLECTIVELY, THE "PROFILE").

THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT IS A LEGAL AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU (EITHER AN INDIVIDUAL OR, IF ACQUIRED BY OR FOR AN ENTITY, AN ENTITY) AND DIC CORPORATION, A JAPANESE COMPANY ("DIC"). THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT PROVIDES A LICENSE TO USE THE PROFILE AND CONTAINS WARRANTY INFORMATION AND LIABILITY DISCLAIMERS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ALL OF THESE TERMS, YOU MAY NOT USE THE PROFILE.

1. License Grant

DIC grants you a gratis non-exclusive and non-transferable license to use the Profile and to allow your employees and authorized agents, if any, to use the Profile, solely in connection with their work for you, subject to all of the limitations and restrictions in this License Agreement.

2. Ownership

The foregoing license gives you limited license to use the Profile. You will own the rights in the media containing the recorded Profile, but DIC retains all right, title and interest, including all copyright and intellectual property rights, in and to, the Profile and all copies thereof. All rights not specifically granted in this License Agreement, including all copyrights, are reserved by DIC.

3. Term

- a. This License Agreement is effective until terminated.
- b. You may terminate this License Agreement by notifying DIC in writing of your intention to terminate this License Agreement and by destroying, all copies of the Profile in your possession or control.
- c. DIC may terminate this License Agreement without prior notice to you if you fail to comply with any of the terms and conditions of this License Agreement (either directly or through your employees or agents), retroactive to the time of such failure to comply. In such event, you must immediately stop using the Profile and destroy all copies of the Profile in your possession or control.
- d. All provisions in this License Agreement relating to warranty disclaimers (Section 5) and the limitation of liability (Section 6) shall survive any termination of this License Agreement.

4. License Method and Restrictions
  - a. You may install and use the Profile on a single desktop computer; provided, however, that, notwithstanding anything contrary contained herein, you may not use the Profile on any network system or share, install or use the Profile concurrently on different computers, or electronically transfer the Profile from one computer to another or over a network.
  - b. You may not make or distribute copies, fix, alter, merge, modify, adapt, sublicense, transfer, sell, rent, lease, gift or distribute all or a portion of the Profile, or modify the Profile or create derivative works based upon the Profile.
  - c. You acknowledge that the Profile is not intended for any usage which may cause death or physical injury or environmental damage and agree not to use the Profile for such usage.
  - d. You shall not use the Profile to develop any software or other technology having the same primary function as the Profile, including but not limited to using the Profile in any development or test procedure that seeks to develop like software or other technology, or to determine if such software or other technology performs in a similar manner as the Profile.
  - e. DIC and other trademarks contained in the Profile are trademarks or registered trademarks of DIC in Japan and/or other countries. You may not remove or alter any trademark, trade names, product names, logo, copyright or other proprietary notices, legends, symbols or labels in the Profile. This License Agreement does not authorize you to use DIC's or its licensors' names or any of their respective trademarks.
5. WARRANTY DISCLAIMER
  - a. THE PROFILE IS PROVIDED TO YOU FREE OF CHARGE, AND ON AN "AS-IS" BASIS, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE TERMS AND COONDITIONS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. DIC PROVIDES NO TECHNICAL SUPPORT, WARRANTIES OR REMEDIES FOR THE PROFILE.
  - b. DIC DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND REPRESENTATIONS, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, TITLE AND QUIET ENJOYMENT. YOU SHALL ASSUME AND BE FULLY LIABLE AND RESPONSIBLE FOR ALL RISKS IN CONNECTION WITH YOUR USE OF THE PROFILE. DIC DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE PROFILE IS FREE OF DEFECTS OR FLAWS OR WILL OPERATE WITHOUT INTERRUPTION, AND IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR CORRECTING OR REPAIRING ANY DEFECTS OR FLAWS, FOR FEE OR GRATIS. NO RIGHTS OR REMEDIES WILL BE CONFERRED ON YOU UNLESS EXPRESSLY GRANTED HEREIN.
6. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

DIC SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, COVER OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE), ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF, OR INABILITY TO USE, THE PROFILE AND BASED ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY INCLUDING BREACH OF CONTRACT, BREACH OF WARRANTY, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), PRODUCT LIABILITY OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF DIC OR ITS REPRESENTATIVES HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY SHALL APPLY TO ALL ASPECTS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT.

## 7. General

- a. This License Agreement shall be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of Japan, without giving effect to principles of conflict of laws. If any provision of this License Agreement shall be held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be contrary to law, that provision will be enforced to the maximum extent permissible, and the remaining provisions of this License Agreement will remain in full force and effect. You hereby consent to the exclusive jurisdiction and venue of Tokyo District Court to resolve any disputes arising under this License Agreement.
- b. This License Agreement contains the complete agreement between the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous agreements or understandings, whether oral or written. You agree that any varying or additional terms contained in any written notification or document issued by you in relation to the Profile licensed hereunder shall be of no effect.
- c. The failure or delay of DIC to exercise any of its rights under this License Agreement or upon any breach of this License Agreement shall not be deemed a waiver of those rights or of the breach.

# OpenSSL Statement

## LICENSE ISSUES

The OpenSSL toolkit stays under a dual license, i.e. both the conditions of the OpenSSL License and the original SSLeay license apply to the toolkit. See below for the actual license texts. Actually both licenses are BSD-style Open Source licenses. In case of any license issues related to OpenSSL please contact [openssl-core@openssl.org](mailto:openssl-core@openssl.org).

### OpenSSL License

Copyright © 1998-2005 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact [openssl-core@openssl.org](mailto:openssl-core@openssl.org).
5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.

6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young ([eyay@cryptsoft.com](mailto:eyay@cryptsoft.com)). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson ([tjh@cryptsoft.com](mailto:tjh@cryptsoft.com)).

## Original SSLeay License

Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young ([eyay@cryptsoft.com](mailto:eyay@cryptsoft.com)) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young ([eyay@cryptsoft.com](mailto:eyay@cryptsoft.com)). The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson ([tjh@cryptsoft.com](mailto:tjh@cryptsoft.com)).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

"This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young ([eyay@cryptsoft.com](mailto:eyay@cryptsoft.com))"  
The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).

4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement:

"This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

# NetSNMP License

## Part 1: CMU/UCD copyright notice: (BSD like)

Copyright 1989, 1991, 1992 by Carnegie Mellon University Derivative Work - 1996, 1998-2000 Copyright 1996, 1998-2000 The Regents of the University of California All Rights Reserved Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appears in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of CMU and The Regents of the University of California not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific written permission.

CMU AND THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL CMU OR THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

## Part 2: Networks Associates Technology, Inc copyright notice (BSD)

Copyright © 2001-2003, Networks Associates Technology, Inc All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Networks Associates Technology, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Part 3: Cambridge Broadband Ltd. copyright notice (BSD)

Portions of this code are copyright © 2001-2003, Cambridge Broadband Ltd. All rights reserved.



Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- The name of Cambridge Broadband Ltd. may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### **Part 4: Sun Microsystems, Inc. copyright notice (BSD)**

Copyright © 2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc., 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, California 95054, U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Use is subject to license terms below.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Sun Microsystems, Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS;

OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

### **Part 5: Sparta, Inc copyright notice (BSD)**

Copyright © 2003-2004, Sparta, Inc All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of Sparta, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

### **Part 6: Cisco/BUPTNIC copyright notice (BSD)**

Copyright © 2004, Cisco, Inc and Information Network Center of Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of Cisco, Inc, Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications, nor the names of their contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Kerberos

Copyright © 1985-2007 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.  
All rights reserved.

Export of this software from the United States of America may require a specific license from the United States Government. It is the responsibility of any person or organization contemplating export to obtain such a license before exporting.

WITHIN THAT CONSTRAINT, permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of M.I.T. not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. Furthermore if you modify this software you must label your software as modified software and not distribute it in such a fashion that it might be confused with the original MIT software. M.I.T. makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Individual source code files are copyright MIT, Cygnus Support, Novell, OpenVision Technologies, Oracle, Red Hat, Sun Microsystems, FundsXpress, and others.

Project Athena, Athena, Athena MUSE, Discuss, Hesiod, Kerberos, Moira, and Zephyr are trademarks of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). No commercial use of these trademarks may be made without prior written permission of MIT.

"Commercial use" means use of a name in a product or other for-profit manner. It does NOT prevent a commercial firm from referring to the MIT trademarks in order to convey information (although in doing so, recognition of their trademark status should be given).

Portions of src/lib/crypto have the following copyright:

Copyright © 1998 by the FundsXpress, INC.

All rights reserved.

Export of this software from the United States of America may require a specific license from the United States Government. It is the responsibility of any person or organization contemplating export to obtain such a license before exporting.

WITHIN THAT CONSTRAINT, permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of FundsXpress. not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. FundsXpress makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

The implementation of the Yarrow pseudo-random number generator in src/lib/crypto/yarrow has the following copyright:

Copyright 2000 by Zero-Knowledge Systems, Inc.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of Zero-Knowledge Systems, Inc. not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. Zero-Knowledge Systems, Inc. makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

ZERO-KNOWLEDGE SYSTEMS, INC. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS, IN NO EVENT SHALL ZERO-KNOWLEDGE SYSTEMS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTUOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

The implementation of the AES encryption algorithm in src/lib/crypto/aes has the following copyright:

Copyright © 2001, Dr Brian Gladman <brg@gladman.uk.net>, Worcester, UK.

All rights reserved.

#### LICENSE TERMS

The free distribution and use of this software in both source and binary form is allowed (with or without changes) provided that:

1. distributions of this source code include the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer;
2. distributions in binary form include the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other associated materials;
3. the copyright holder's name is not used to endorse products built using this software without specific written permission.

#### DISCLAIMER

This software is provided 'as is' with no explicit or implied warranties in respect of any properties, including, but not limited to, correctness and fitness for purpose.

Portions contributed by Red Hat, including the pre-authentication plug-ins framework, contain the following copyright:

Copyright © 2006 Red Hat, Inc.

Portions copyright © 2006 Massachusetts Institute of Technology

All Rights Reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

- \* Neither the name of Red Hat, Inc., nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions funded by Sandia National Laboratory and developed by the University of Michigan's Center for Information Technology Integration, including the PKINIT implementation, are subject to the following license:

COPYRIGHT © 2006-2007

THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

Permission is granted to use, copy, create derivative works and redistribute this software and such derivative works for any purpose, so long as the name of The University of Michigan is not used in any advertising or publicity pertaining to the use of distribution of this software without specific, written prior authorization. If the above copyright notice or any other identification of the University of Michigan is included in any copy of any portion of this software, then the disclaimer below must also be included.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED AS IS, WITHOUT REPRESENTATION FROM THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN AS TO ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE, AND WITHOUT WARRANTY BY THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES, INCLUDING SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, WITH RESPECT TO ANY CLAIM ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF IT HAS BEEN OR IS HEREAFTER ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

The pkcs11.h file included in the PKINIT code has the following license:

Copyright 2006 g10 Code GmbH

Copyright 2006 Andreas Jellinghaus

This file is free software; as a special exception the author gives unlimited permission to copy and/or distribute it, with or without modifications, as long as this notice is preserved.

This file is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

## **WPA Supplicant**

Copyright © 2003-2005, Jouni Malinen <jkmaline@cc.hut.fi> and contributors  
All Rights Reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name(s) of the above-listed copyright holder(s) nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---

# Contents

---

|          |   |             |
|----------|---|-------------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>Operation on Mac OS X .....</b>                          | <b>1-1</b>  |
|          | <b>System Requirements for the Printer Driver .....</b>     | <b>1-2</b>  |
|          | <b>Installing the Printer Driver .....</b>                  | <b>1-3</b>  |
|          | Installing the Printer Driver.....                          | 1-3         |
|          | <b>Uninstalling the printer driver .....</b>                | <b>1-8</b>  |
|          | For Mac OS X 10.2 .....                                     | 1-8         |
|          | For Mac OS X 10.3/10.4 .....                                | 1-8         |
|          | For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6 .....                                | 1-9         |
|          | <b>Print Center Settings (Mac OS X 10.2.8) .....</b>        | <b>1-10</b> |
|          | When Using a USB Connection.....                            | 1-10        |
|          | When Using a Network Connection .....                       | 1-11        |
|          | AppleTalk Setting.....                                      | 1-11        |
|          | Rendezvous Setting.....                                     | 1-13        |
|          | IP Printing Setting .....                                   | 1-16        |
|          | IPP Setting .....   | 1-18        |
|          | Specifying Port 9100.....                                   | 1-21        |
|          | <b>Printer Setup Utility Settings (Mac OS X 10.3) .....</b> | <b>1-25</b> |
|          | When Using a USB Connection .....                           | 1-25        |
|          | When Using a Network Connection .....                       | 1-27        |
|          | AppleTalk Setting.....                                      | 1-27        |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| Rendezvous Setting .....  | 1-29        |
| IP Printing Setting .....   | 1-30        |
| <b>Printer Setup Utility Settings (Mac OS X 10.4) .....</b>                     | <b>1-34</b> |
| When Using a USB Connection .....   | 1-34        |
| When Using a Network Connection .....   | 1-36        |
| Bonjour Setting .....   | 1-36        |
| AppleTalk Setting .....   | 1-38        |
| IP Printing Setting .....   | 1-41        |
| <b>Printer Settings (Mac OS X 10.5/10.6) .....</b>                              | <b>1-45</b> |
| When Using a USB Connection .....   | 1-45        |
| When Using a Network Connection .....   | 1-49        |
| Bonjour Setting .....   | 1-49        |
| AppleTalk Setting .....   | 1-52        |
| IP Printing Setting .....   | 1-55        |
| <b>Selecting Print Options .....</b>  | <b>1-59</b> |
| For Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4 .....   | 1-59        |
| For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6 .....  | 1-61        |
| <b>Specifying Page Setup Settings (Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6) .....</b> | <b>1-63</b> |
| Page Attributes Options .....   | 1-64        |
| Specifying Custom Paper Size.....   | 1-65        |
| <b>Specifying Print Settings (Mac OS X 10.4) .....</b>                          | <b>1-67</b> |
| Print Dialog Box .....  | 1-67        |
| Common buttons.....   | 1-68        |
| Copies & Pages .....  | 1-69        |
| Layout .....  | 1-70        |
| Scheduler.....  | 1-71        |
| Paper Handling .....  | 1-72        |
| ColorSync.....  | 1-73        |
| Cover Page .....  | 1-73        |
| Error Handling.....   | 1-74        |
| Paper Feed .....  | 1-75        |
| Color Options .....   | 1-76        |
| Advanced Color Options/Image .....  | 1-77        |
| Advanced Color Options/Text .....   | 1-78        |
| Advanced Color Options/Graphics.....  | 1-80        |
| Advanced Color Options/Simulation .....   | 1-81        |
| Printer Features .....  | 1-82        |
| Supply Levels.....  | 1-83        |
| Summary.....  | 1-84        |
| <b>Specifying Print Settings (Mac OS X 10.5/10.6) .....</b>                     | <b>1-85</b> |
| Print Dialog Box .....  | 1-85        |
| Common buttons.....   | 1-86        |
| Layout .....  | 1-87        |
| Color Matching .....  | 1-88        |
| Paper Handling .....  | 1-89        |
| Paper Feed .....  | 1-90        |



|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| Cover Page .....  | 1-91           |
| Scheduler .....   | 1-92           |
| Color Options .....   | 1-93           |
| Advanced Color Options/Image .....  | 1-94           |
| Advanced Color Options/Text .....   | 1-95           |
| Advanced Color Options/Graphics .....   | 1-97           |
| Advanced Color Options/Simulation .....                                       | 1-98           |
| Printer Features .....  | 1-99           |
| Supply Levels .....   | 1-100          |
| Summary .....   | 1-101          |
| <b>Specifying the Color Profile .....</b>                                     | <b>1-102</b>   |
| Preparation .....   | 1-102          |
| Downloading Color Profiles .....  | 1-102          |
| Specifying Printer Driver Settings .....                                      | 1-104          |
| <b>Troubleshooting .....</b>  | <b>1-109</b>   |
| <br><b>2 Operation on Linux .....</b>   | <br><b>2-1</b> |
| <b>System Requirements for the Printer Driver .....</b>                       | <b>2-2</b>     |
| <b>Installing PPD File From the Command Line .....</b>                        | <b>2-2</b>     |
| <b>Adding the Printer Using Printer configuration .....</b>                   | <b>2-3</b>     |
| <b>Adding the Printer on the CUPS Administration Web page .....</b>           | <b>2-7</b>     |
| <b>Specifying Printer Driver Settings .....</b>                               | <b>2-10</b>    |
| Displaying the Settings Page .....  | 2-10           |
| Printer Driver Settings .....   | 2-11           |
| Options Installed .....   | 2-11           |
| General .....   | 2-11           |
| Image Options .....   | 2-13           |
| Text Options .....  | 2-14           |
| Graphics Options .....  | 2-14           |
| Simulation .....  | 2-15           |
| Banners .....   | 2-15           |
| <b>Printing a Document .....</b>  | <b>2-16</b>    |
| Example Using OpenOffice .....  | 2-16           |
| <b>Checking Print Jobs .....</b>  | <b>2-18</b>    |
| <b>Troubleshooting .....</b>  | <b>2-19</b>    |
| <br><b>3 Operation on NetWare .....</b>                                       | <br><b>3-1</b> |
| <b>Printing With NetWare .....</b>  | <b>3-2</b>     |
| Network Printing in a NetWare Environment .....                               | 3-2            |
| For Remote Printer Mode With NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation .....              | 3-2            |
| For Print Server Mode With NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation .....                | 3-4            |
| For NetWare 4.x Remote Printer Mode (NDS) .....                               | 3-5            |
| For NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 Print Server Mode (NDS) .....                           | 3-7            |
| For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS) .....               | 3-9            |
| Setting Up a Client (Windows) Settings When Using<br>the NetWare Server ..... | 3-10           |

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
| <b>4</b> | <b>Printer Utilities .....</b>                              | <b>4-1</b> |
|          | <b>Installing Printer Utilities on Windows .....</b>        | <b>4-2</b> |
| <b>5</b> | <b>Understanding the Ethernet Configuration Menus .....</b> | <b>5-1</b> |
|          | <b>Ethernet Menu .....</b>                                  | <b>5-2</b> |
|          | Location within the Configuration Menu .....                | 5-2        |
|          | Accessing the Ethernet Menu .....                           | 5-4        |
|          | Using the Network Menu Options .....                        | 5-5        |
|          | TCP/IP .....  | 5-5        |
|          | NETWARE .....   | 5-11       |
|          | APPLETALK .....   | 5-12       |
|          | SPEED/DUPLEX .....  | 5-12       |
|          | IEEE802.1X .....  | 5-12       |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Network Printing .....</b>                               | <b>6-1</b> |
|          | <b>Network Connection .....</b>                             | <b>6-2</b> |
|          | Theory .....  | 6-2        |
|          | Making the Connection .....                                 | 6-3        |
|          | Ethernet Interface .....                                    | 6-3        |
|          | Using DHCP .....  | 6-3        |
|          | Setting the Address Manually .....                          | 6-5        |
|          | <b>Network Printing .....</b>                               | <b>6-9</b> |
|          | AppleTalk .....   | 6-9        |
|          | Bonjour .....   | 6-9        |
|          | BOOTP .....   | 6-10       |
|          | DDNS (Dynamic DNS) .....                                    | 6-10       |
|          | DHCP .....  | 6-10       |
|          | FTP .....   | 6-10       |
|          | HTTP .....  | 6-10       |
|          | IEEE802.1x .....  | 6-11       |
|          | IPP .....   | 6-11       |
|          | IPsec .....   | 6-11       |
|          | IPv6 .....  | 6-11       |
|          | IPX/SPX .....   | 6-11       |
|          | LLMNR .....   | 6-11       |
|          | LLTD .....  | 6-12       |
|          | LPD/LPR .....   | 6-12       |
|          | SLP .....   | 6-12       |
|          | SMTP .....  | 6-13       |
|          | SNMP .....  | 6-13       |
|          | Port 9100 .....   | 6-13       |
|          | WSD print .....   | 6-13       |
|          | Printing via IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) .....         | 6-14       |
|          | With Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008 .....               | 6-14       |
|          | Adding an IPP Port using the Printer Driver CD/DVD .....    | 6-14       |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| Adding an IPP Port using Add Printer Wizard -<br>Windows Server 2003/XP/2000 .....  | 6-16        |
| Adding an IPP Port using Add Printer Wizard -<br>Windows 7/Vista/Server 2008 R2/Server 2008 .....   | 6-21        |
| Printing via Web Service Print Function .....   | 6-25        |
| With Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008 .....   | 6-25        |
| Adding a printer from the Network window -<br>Windows 7/Server 2008 R2 .....  | 6-25        |
| Adding a printer from the Network window -<br>Windows Vista/Server 2008 .....   | 6-26        |
| Adding a printer using Add Printer Wizard .....   | 6-30        |
| Installing the Driver When the Operating Systems of the Server and<br>Client Use a Different Number of Bits (With Windows Server 2008 R2/<br>Server 2008) ..... | 6-36        |
| Installing the Additional Driver .....  | 6-36        |
| <b>Troubleshooting .....</b>  | <b>6-40</b> |
| <b>7 Using PageScope Web Connection .....</b>   | <b>7-1</b>  |
| <b>About PageScope Web Connection .....</b>   | <b>7-2</b>  |
| Display Language .....  | 7-2         |
| Requirements .....  | 7-3         |
| <b>Setting Up the Printer Web Page .....</b>  | <b>7-4</b>  |
| Determining the Printer Name .....  | 7-4         |
| Setting Up Your Browser Software .....  | 7-5         |
| Internet Explorer (version 6.0 for Windows) .....   | 7-5         |
| Mozilla Firefox (version 2.0 for Mac OS X 10.5) .....   | 7-6         |
| <b>Understanding the PageScope Web Connection Window .....</b>  | <b>7-7</b>  |
| Navigation .....  | 7-7         |
| Current Status .....  | 7-8         |
| <b>Logging on to PageScope Web Connection .....</b>   | <b>7-9</b>  |
| Login Page .....  | 7-9         |
| Language Setting .....  | 7-10        |
| Public User Mode .....  | 7-10        |
| Registered User Mode .....  | 7-10        |
| User Authentication Mode .....  | 7-10        |
| Account Track Mode .....  | 7-11        |
| Administrator Mode .....  | 7-12        |
| <b>Viewing Printer Status .....</b>   | <b>7-13</b> |
| System Page .....   | 7-13        |
| Device Information .....  | 7-14        |
| Counter .....   | 7-23        |
| Online Assistance .....   | 7-24        |
| User Authentication .....   | 7-25        |
| Job Page .....  | 7-28        |
| Active Job List (shown above) .....   | 7-28        |
| Done Job List .....   | 7-29        |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| Done Job List (Detail) .....                                | 7-30        |
| Print Page .....  | 7-31        |
| Default Settings.....                                       | 7-31        |
| Font/Form .....   | 7-42        |
| Report Types .....  | 7-46        |
| Direct Print .....  | 7-47        |
| <b>Configuring the Printer .....</b>                        | <b>7-48</b> |
| System Page.....  | 7-48        |
| Device Information .....                                    | 7-49        |
| Counter .....   | 7-58        |
| Online Assistance .....                                     | 7-59        |
| Import/Export .....   | 7-61        |
| Authentication .....  | 7-63        |
| Date/Time .....   | 7-70        |
| Admin Password .....  | 7-74        |
| Machine Settings .....                                      | 7-76        |
| ROM Version .....   | 7-79        |
| Maintenance .....   | 7-80        |
| Status Notification Settings .....                          | 7-82        |
| Job Page .....  | 7-86        |
| Active Job List (show above) .....                          | 7-86        |
| Done Job List .....   | 7-87        |
| Done Job List (Detail) .....                                | 7-88        |
| Print Page .....  | 7-89        |
| Local Interface .....                                       | 7-89        |
| Default Settings.....                                       | 7-90        |
| Download Font/Form .....                                    | 7-112       |
| Network Page.....   | 7-116       |
| TCP/IP .....  | 7-117       |
| Bonjour.....  | 7-138       |
| WSD.....  | 7-140       |
| LLTD .....  | 7-142       |
| NetWare.....  | 7-143       |
| IPP .....   | 7-147       |
| FTP .....   | 7-151       |
| SNMP.....   | 7-152       |
| AppleTalk .....   | 7-156       |
| Email .....   | 7-157       |
| SSL/TLS.....  | 7-159       |
| SSL/TLS Information.....                                    | 7-159       |
| SSL/TLS Setting (When a certificate is not installed) ..... | 7-160       |
| SSL/TLS Setting (When a certificate is installed) .....     | 7-161       |
| Self-signed Certificate Setting.....                        | 7-162       |
| Request a certificate .....                                 | 7-164       |
| Certificate Request .....                                   | 7-166       |
| Install a Certificate .....                                 | 7-167       |

|                                   |            |
|-----------------------------------|------------|
| Encryption Strength Setting ..... | 7-168      |
| Remove a Certificate .....        | 7-169      |
| Mode Using SSL/TLS .....          | 7-170      |
| Authentication .....              | 7-171      |
| <b>A Appendix .....</b>           | <b>A-1</b> |

***Operation on  
Mac OS X***

**1**

# System Requirements for the Printer Driver

Before installing the printer driver, make sure that your system meets the following system requirements.

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Computer                            | Apple Macintosh computer installed with the following processor: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- PowerPC G3 or later processor (PowerPC G4 or later is recommended)</li><li>- Intel processor</li></ul> |
| Connecting the computer and printer | USB connection, Network connection (10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T)   |
| Operating system                    | Mac OS X (10.2.8/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6)   |
| RAM                                 | 128 MB or more  |
| Available disk space                | 256 MB or more (for storing images)   |
| Supported languages                 | English, French, German, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Czech, Dutch   |

# Installing the Printer Driver



*You must have administrator privileges in order to install the printer driver.*



*Before proceeding with the installation, be sure to exit all running applications.*

## Installing the Printer Driver



*The procedure for installing the printer driver on Mac OS X 10.5 is described below. The following procedure or some steps may be different depending on the version of the operating system being used. Complete the installation according to the instructions in the dialog boxes that appear.*

- 1 Insert the Printer Driver CD/DVD in the CD/DVD drive of your Macintosh.
- 2 Double-click the CD/DVD icon on the desktop, **english** folder, and then double-click the **bizhub\_C35P\_105.pkg**.

*The installer for the printer driver starts up.*



*For OS X 10.5/10.6, the driver folder varies depending on the paper size. Select the appropriate driver folder for your environment.*

- To use inch-based paper size (8 1/2 x 11 in letter size): Select **english** folder.
- To use metric-based paper size (A4 and the like): Select a file in **other** folder.

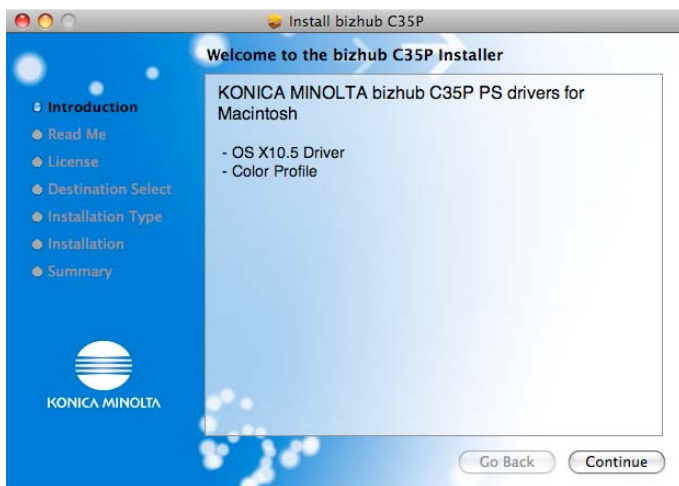


*Double-click the package file appropriate for the application and version of operating system being used.*

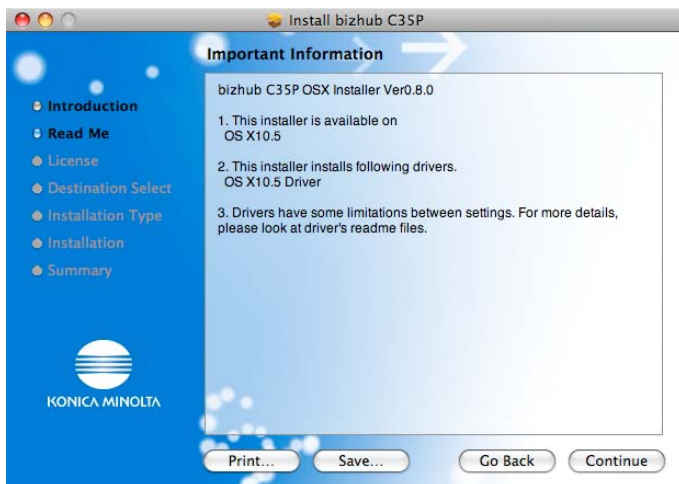
- **bizhub\_C35P\_102.pkg** (for Mac OS X 10.2)
- **bizhub\_C35P\_103104.pkg** (for Mac OS X 10.3/10.4)
- **bizhub\_C35P\_106.pkg** (for Mac OS X 10.6)



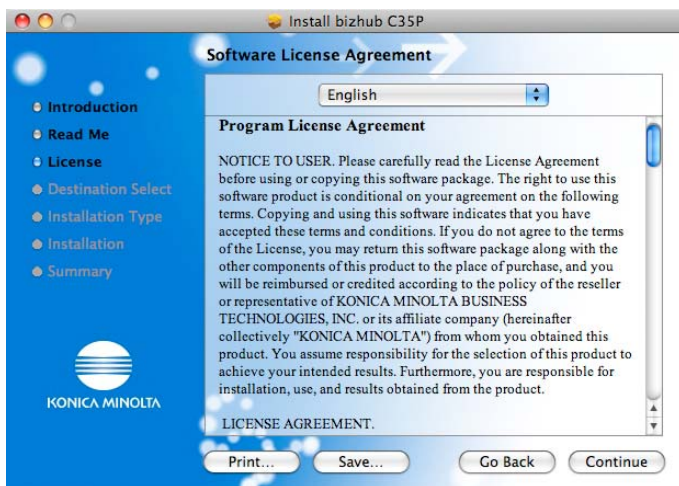
### 3 Click **Continue**.



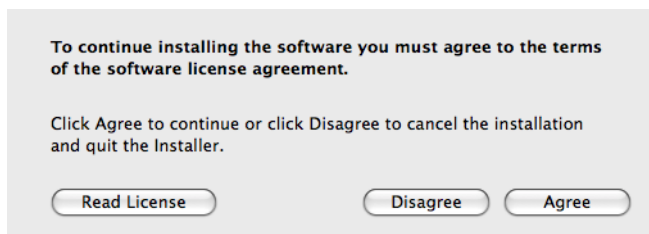
### 4 Click **Continue**.



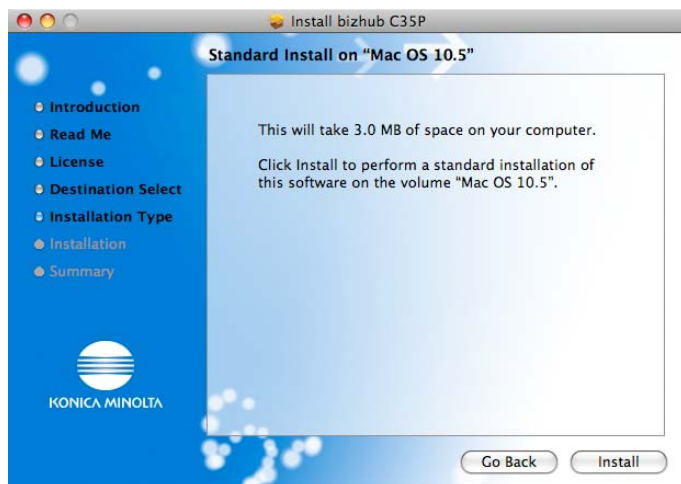
## 5 Click **Continue**.



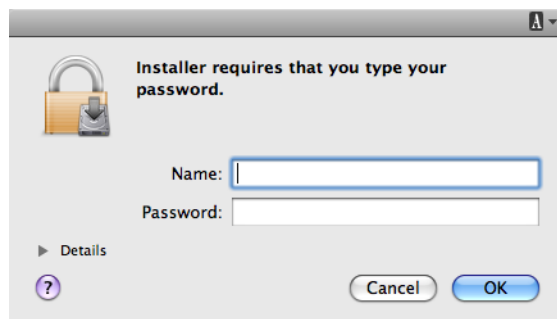
## 6 Click **Agree** in the confirmation dialog box if you agree to the terms of the license.



- 7 Click **Install** in the **Standard Install** page.

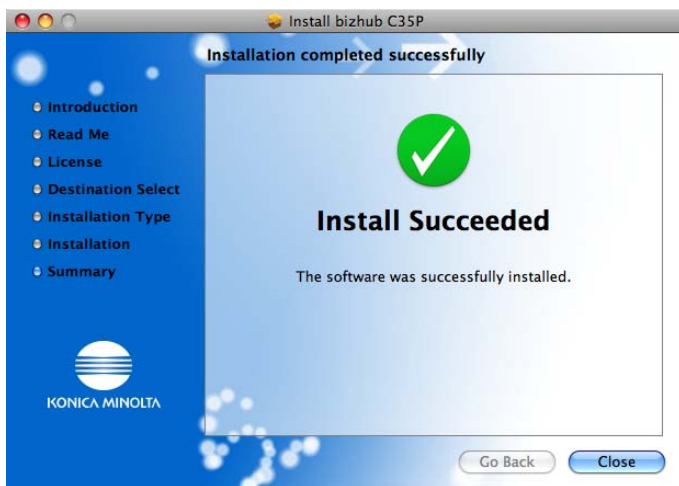


- 8 Enter the administrator user name and password in the Authenticate dialog box, and then click **OK**.



*Installation starts.*

- 9 After the installation has been completed, click **Close**.



*This completes the installation of the printer driver.*

# Uninstalling the printer driver

If it becomes necessary to delete the printer driver, for example, when you want to reinstall it, delete the driver according to the following procedure.

## For Mac OS X 10.2

- 1 Open **Print Center**, which is located in **Applications - Utilities** on the hard disk.
- 2 Select the name of the printer to be deleted, and then click **Delete**.  
The selected printer is deleted.
- 3 Close the **Printer List**.
- 4 Drag the following file, which is located in **Library - Printers - PPDs - Contents - Resources - en.lproj** on the hard disk, to the **Trash** icon.
  - **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P.gz**
- 5 Delete the unnecessary files from **Library - Printers**.
  - Drag the **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P Color.plugin** file, which is located in **Library - Printers - PPD Plugins**, to the **Trash** icon.
  - Drag the **pstobzC35PPS** file, which is located in **Library - Printers - KONICAMINOLTA - filter**, to the **Trash** icon.
  - Drag the **fileExistbzC35P.icns** file, which is located in **Library - Printers - KONICAMINOLTA - Icons**, to the **Trash** icon.
  - Drag the **bzC35Pps.icc** file, which is located in **Library - Printers - KONICAMINOLTA - Profiles**, to the **Trash** icon.
- 6 Drag the **bizhub\_C35P\_102.pkg** file, which is located in the **Library - Receipts**, to the **Trash** icon.
- 7 Restart the computer.

This completes uninstallation of the printer driver.

## For Mac OS X 10.3/10.4

- 1 Open **Printer Setup Utility**, which is located in **Applications - Utilities** on the hard disk.
- 2 Select the name of the printer to be deleted, and then click **Delete**.  
The selected printer is deleted.
- 3 Close the **Printer List**.
- 4 Drag the following file, which is located in **Library - Printers - PPDs - Contents - Resources - en.lproj** on the hard disk, to the **Trash** icon.
  - **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P.gz**

- 5 Delete the unnecessary files from **Library - Printers**.
  - Drag the **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P Color.plugin** file, which is located in **Library - Printers - KONICAMINOLTA - PDEs**, to the **Trash** icon.
  - Drag the **pstobzC35PPS** file, which is located in **Library - Printers - KONICAMINOLTA - filter**, to the **Trash** icon.
  - Drag the **fileExistbzC35P.icns** and **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P.icns** file, which is located in **Library - Printers - KONICAMINOLTA - Icons**, to the **Trash** icon.
  - Drag the **bzC35Pps.icc** file, which is located in **Library - Printers - KONICAMINOLTA - Profiles**, to the **Trash** icon.
- 6 Drag the **bizhub\_C35P\_103104.pkg** file, which is located in the **Library - Receipts**, to the **Trash** icon.
- 7 Restart the computer.

This completes uninstallation of the printer driver.

## For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6

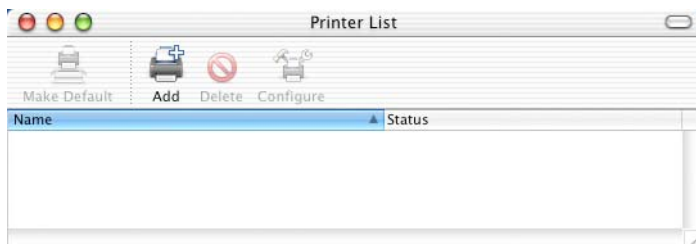
- 1 On the **Apple** menu, select **System Preferences**.
- 2 Click **Print & Fax**.
- 3 Select the name of the printer to be deleted, and then click the delete button (-) on the left below the list.
- 4 When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.  
The selected printer is deleted.
- 5 Click the close button (x) in the upper-left corner of **Print & Fax**.
  - The following procedure is not necessary; it is only for users who would like to delete unnecessary files.
- 6 Drag the **KONICA MINOLTA bzC35PPS.gz** file, which is located in **Library - Printers - PPDs - Contents - Resources** on the hard disk, to the **Trash** icon.
- 7 Drag the **C35P** folder, which is located in **Library - Printers - KONICAMINOLTA**, to the **Trash** icon.
- 8 Drag the following files, which is located in the **Library - Receipts**, to the **Trash** icon.
  - **bizhub\_C35P\_105.pkg** (for Mac OS X 10.5)
  - **bizhub\_C35P\_106.pkg** (for Mac OS X 10.6)
- 9 Restart the computer.

This completes uninstallation of the printer driver.

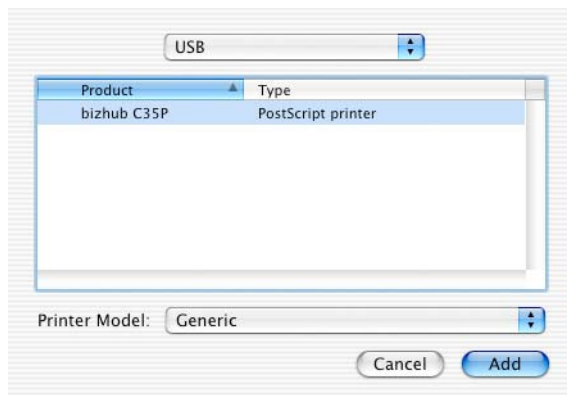
# Print Center Settings (Mac OS X 10.2.8)

## When Using a USB Connection

- 1 Use a USB cable to connect the printer to your computer.
- 2 Check that the printer is turned on, and then restart the computer.
- 3 Open **Print Center**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 4 In the **Printer List**, click **Add**.



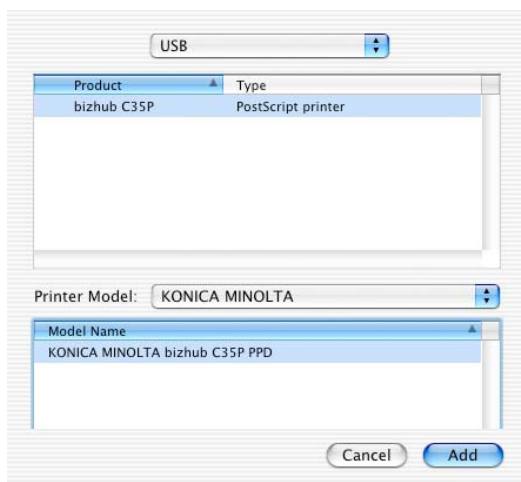
- 5 Select **bizhub C35P** in the **Product** list.



*If **bizhub C35P** does not appear, check that the printer is turned on and the USB cable is connected, and then restart the computer.*

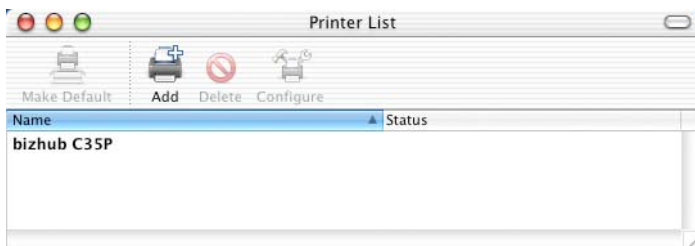
- 6 Select **KONICA MINOLTA** from the **Printer Model** pop-up menu.

- 7 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** in the **Model Name** list.



- 8 Click **Add**.

*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*



*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to “Selecting Print Options” on page 1-59.*

## When Using a Network Connection

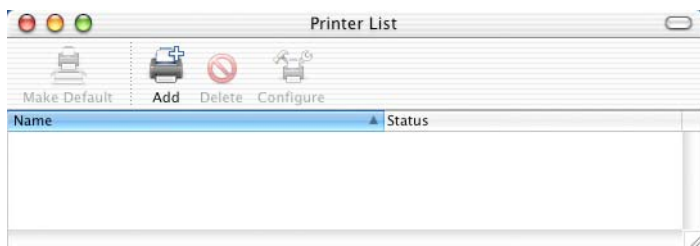
The network connection settings can be specified in one of five ways: AppleTalk setting, Rendezvous setting, IP printing setting, IPP setting and Specifying Port 9100.

### AppleTalk Setting

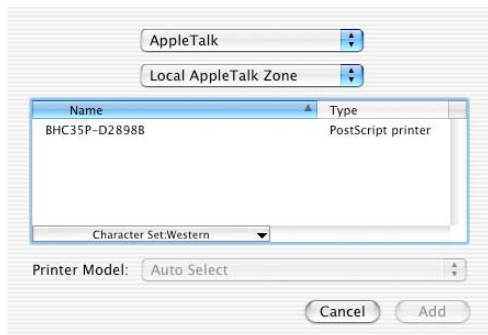
- 1 Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Print Center**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.



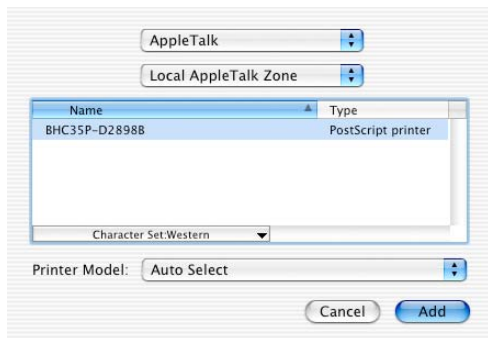
3 Click **Add** in the **Printer List**.



4 Select **AppleTalk** from the pop-up menu.



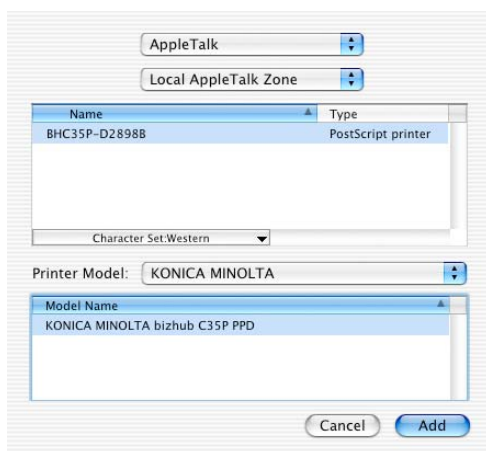
5 Select **BHC35P-xxxxxx**.



"xxxxxxx" refers to the last six digits of the MAC address (in hexadecimal).

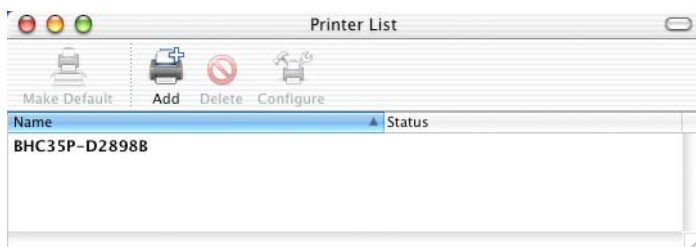
6 Select **KONICA MINOLTA** from the **Printer Model** pop-up menu.

- 7 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** in the **Name** list.



- 8 Click **Add**.

*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*

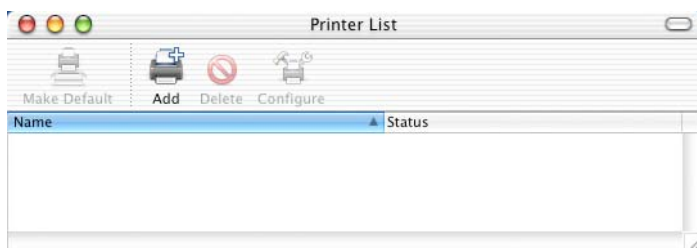


*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to "Selecting Print Options" on page 1-59.*

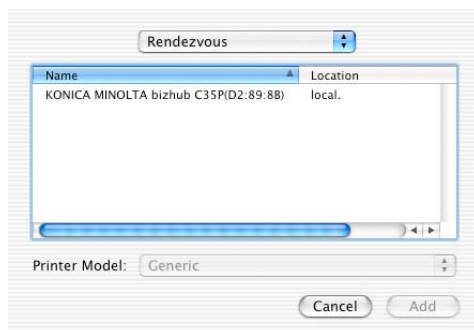
## Rendezvous Setting

- 1 Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Print Center**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.

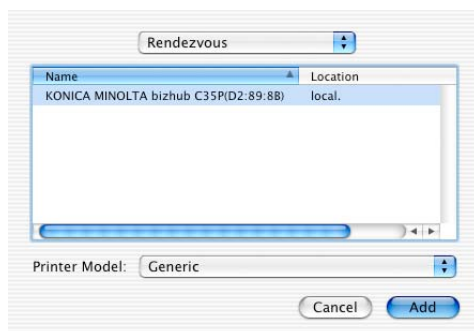
- 3 Click **Add** in the **Printer List**.



- 4 Select **Rendezvous** from the pop-up menu.



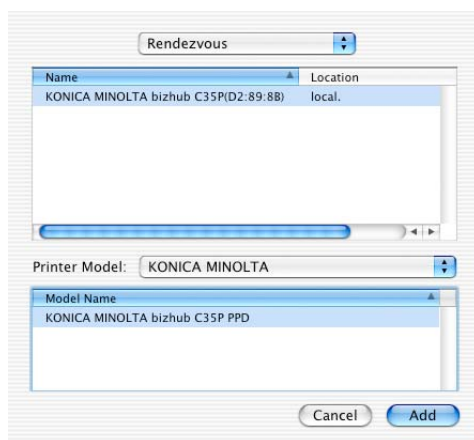
- 5 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P(xx:xx:xx)**.



"xx:xx:xx" refers to the last six digits of the MAC address (in hexadecimal).

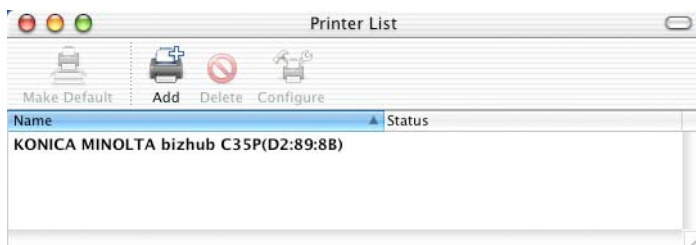
- 6 Select **KONICA MINOLTA** from the **Printer Model** pop-up menu.

- 7 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** in the **Model Name** list.



- 8 Click **Add**.

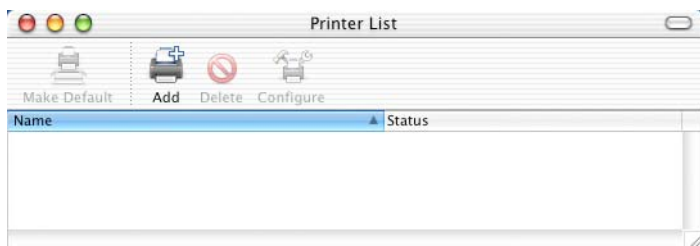
*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*



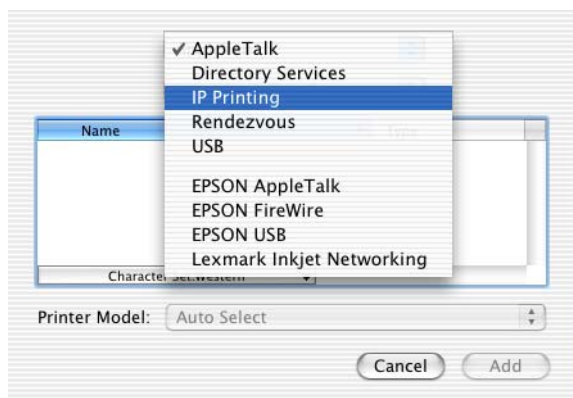
*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to “Selecting Print Options” on page 1-59.*

## IP Printing Setting

- 1 Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Print Center**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 3 Click **Add** in the **Printer List**.



- 4 Select **IP Printing** from the pop-up menu.



- 5 Enter the IP address for the printer in the **Printer's Address** text box.

IP Printing

Printer's Address: 192.168.1.2  
Internet address or DNS name

Complete and valid address.

☒ Use default queue on server

Queue Name:

Printer Model: Generic

Cancel Add

- 6 Select **KONICA MINOLTA** from the **Printer Model** pop-up menu.
- 7 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** in the **Model Name** list.

IP Printing

Printer's Address: 192.168.1.2  
Internet address or DNS name

Complete and valid address.

☒ Use default queue on server

Queue Name:

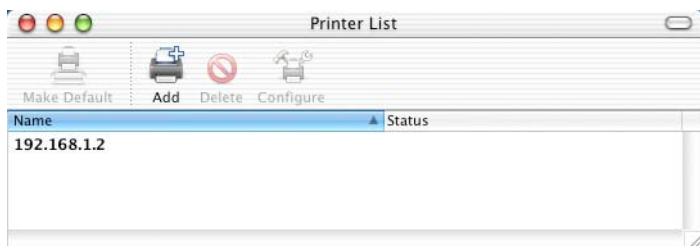
Printer Model: KONICA MINOLTA

Model Name  
KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD

Cancel Add

## 8 Click **Add**.

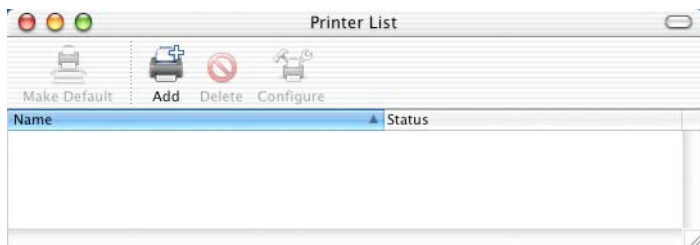
The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.



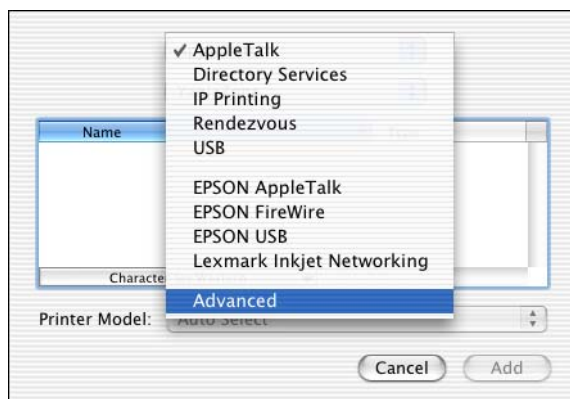
*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to “Selecting Print Options” on page 1-59.*

## IPP Setting

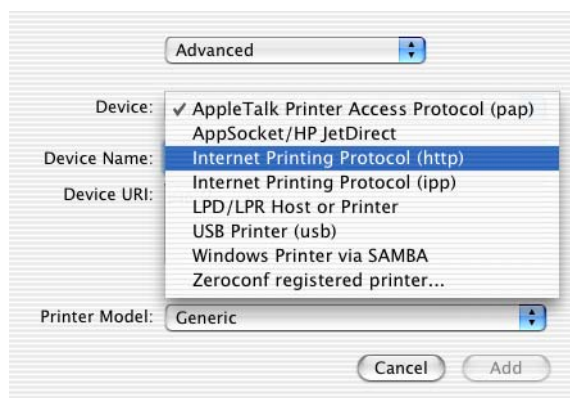
- 1 Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Print Center**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 3 In the **Printer List**, click **Add** while pressing the Option key in the keyboard.



- 4 Select **Advanced** from the pop-up menu.



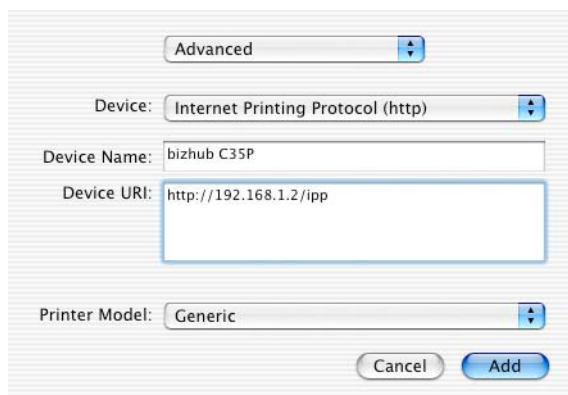
- 5 Select **Internet Printing Protocol (http)** from the **Device** pop-up menu.



- 6 Enter the name for the printer in the **Device Name** text box.



- 7 In the **Device URI** text box, enter "http://<IP address>/ipp".



Advanced

Device: Internet Printing Protocol (http)

Device Name: bizhub C35P

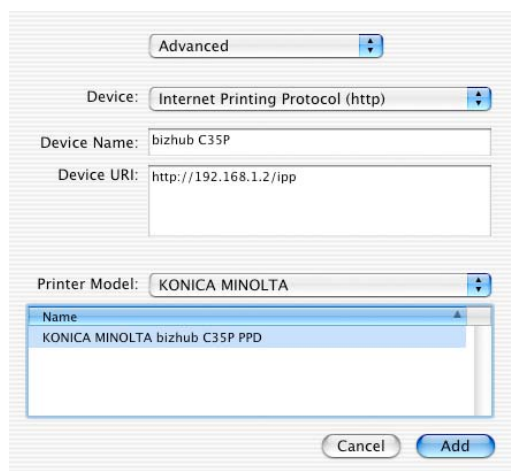
Device URI: http://192.168.1.2/ipp

Printer Model: Generic

Cancel Add

- 8 Select **KONICA MINOLTA** from the **Printer Model** pop-up menu.

- 9 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** in the **Name** list.



Advanced

Device: Internet Printing Protocol (http)

Device Name: bizhub C35P

Device URI: http://192.168.1.2/ipp

Printer Model: KONICA MINOLTA

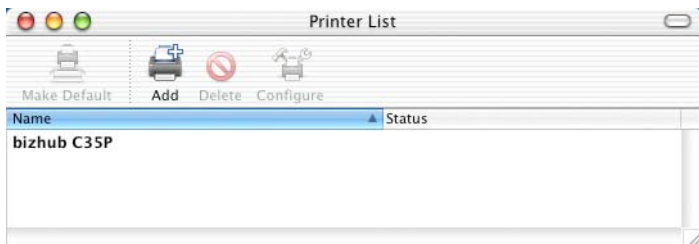
Name

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD

Cancel Add

## 10 Click **Add**.

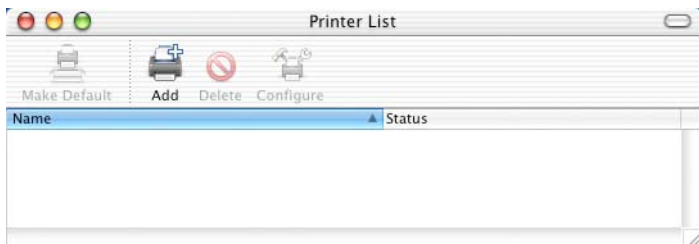
The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.



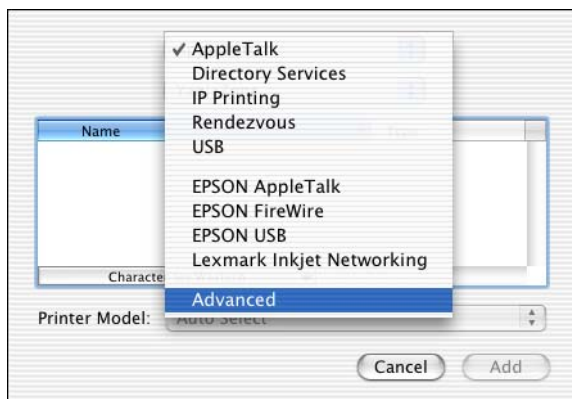
*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to “Selecting Print Options” on page 1-59.*

## Specifying Port 9100

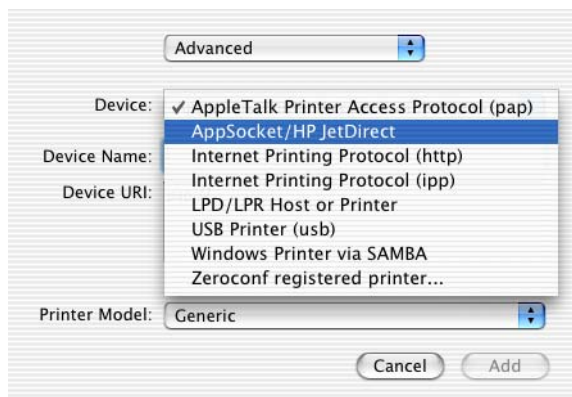
- 1 Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Print Center**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 3 In the **Printer List**, click **Add** while pressing the Option key in the keyboard.



- 4 Select **Advanced** from the pop-up menu.

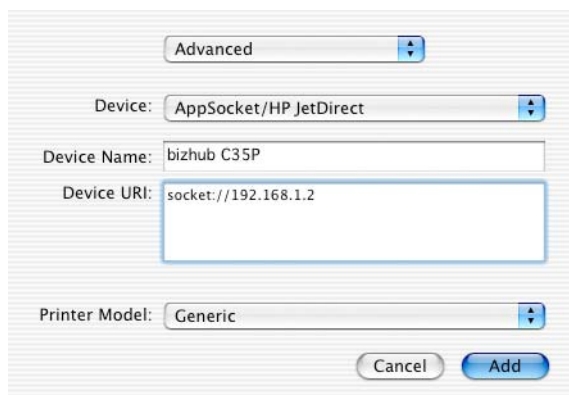


- 5 Select **AppSocket/HP JetDirect** from the **Device** pop-up menu.



- 6 Enter the name for the printer in the **Device Name** text box.

- 7 In the **Device URI** text box, enter "socket://<IP address>".



Advanced

Device: AppSocket/HP JetDirect

Device Name: bizhub C35P

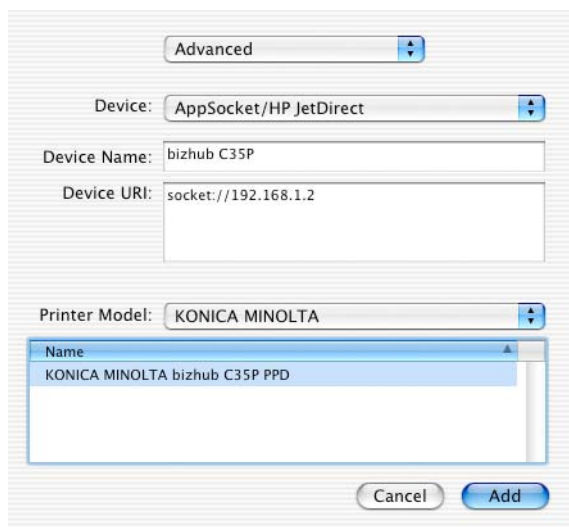
Device URI: socket://192.168.1.2

Printer Model: Generic

Cancel Add

- 8 Select **KONICA MINOLTA** from the **Printer Model** pop-up menu.

- 9 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** in the **Name** list.



Advanced

Device: AppSocket/HP JetDirect

Device Name: bizhub C35P

Device URI: socket://192.168.1.2

Printer Model: KONICA MINOLTA

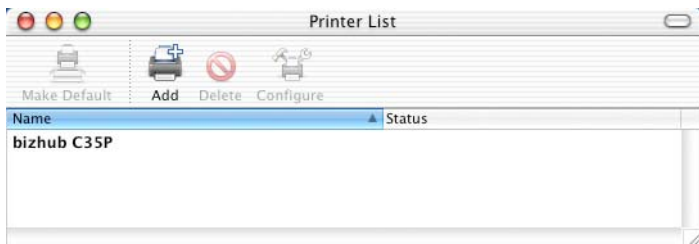
Name

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD

Cancel Add

## 10 Click **Add**.

The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.

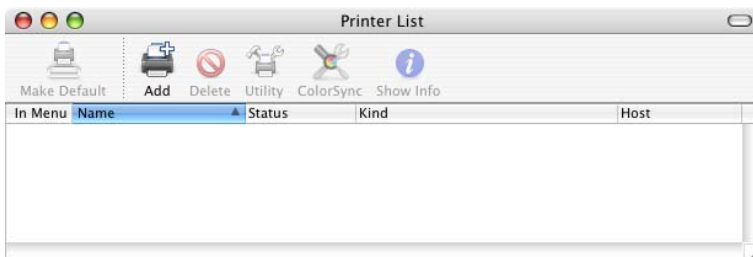


*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to “Selecting Print Options” on page 1-59.*

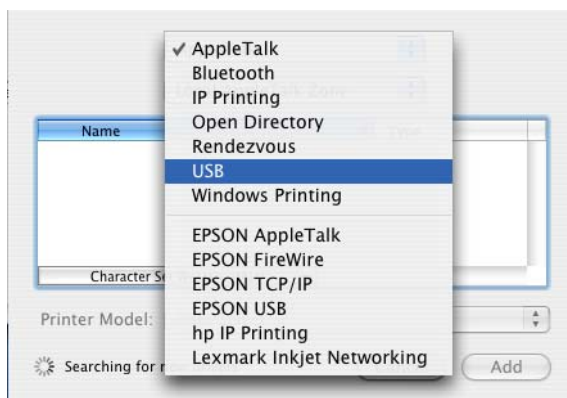
# Printer Setup Utility Settings (Mac OS X 10.3)

## When Using a USB Connection

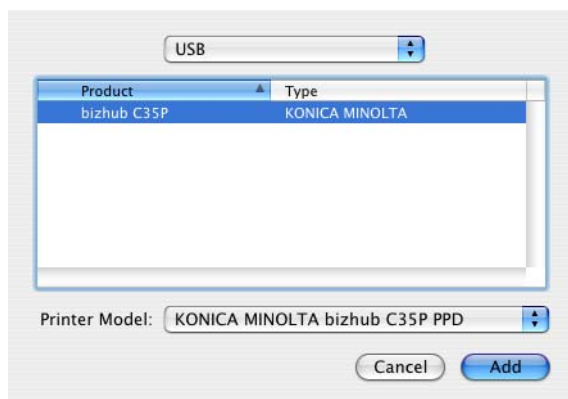
- 1 Use a USB cable to connect the printer to your computer.
- 2 Check that the printer is turned on, and then restart the computer.
- 3 Open **Printer Setup Utility**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 4 In the **Printer List**, click **Add**.



- 5 Select **USB** from the pop-up menu.



- 6 Select **bizhub C35P** in the **Product** list.

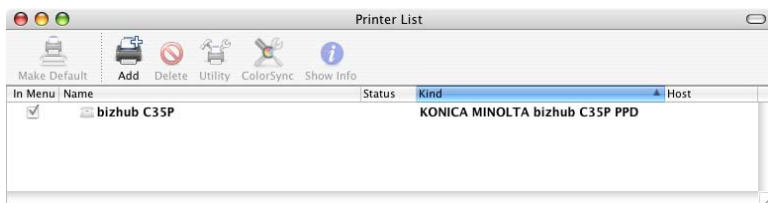


*If **bizhub C35P** does not appear, check that the printer is turned on and the USB cable is connected, and then restart the computer.*

- 7 Check that **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** is selected in the **Printer Model** list.

- 8 Click **Add**.

*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*



*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to “Selecting Print Options” on page 1-59.*

## When Using a Network Connection

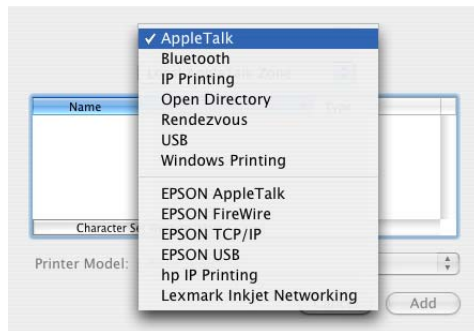
The network connection settings can be specified IP printing Setting (IPP, LPD or Socket).

### AppleTalk Setting

- 1 Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Printer Setup Utility**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 3 Click **Add** in the **Printer List**.

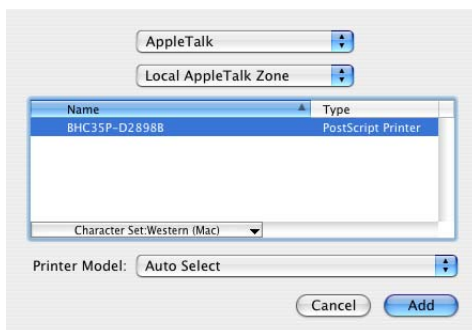



- 4 Select **AppleTalk** from the pop-up menu.





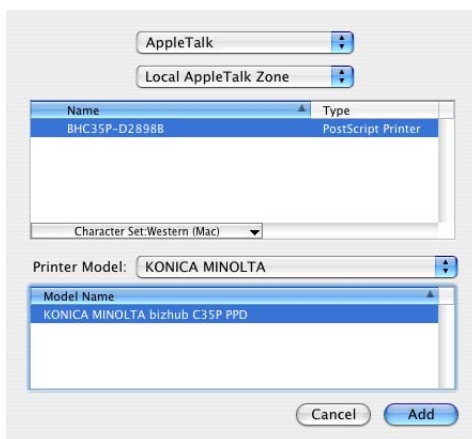
- 5 Select **BHC35P-xxxxxx** in the **Name** list.



 "xxxxxxx" refers to the last six digits of the MAC address (in hexadecimal).

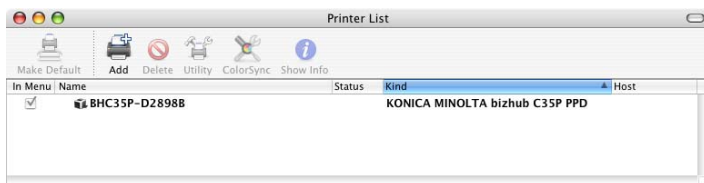
- 6 Select **KONICA MINOLTA** from the **Printer Model** pop-up menu.


- 7 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** in the **Model Name** list.



- 8 Click **Add**.

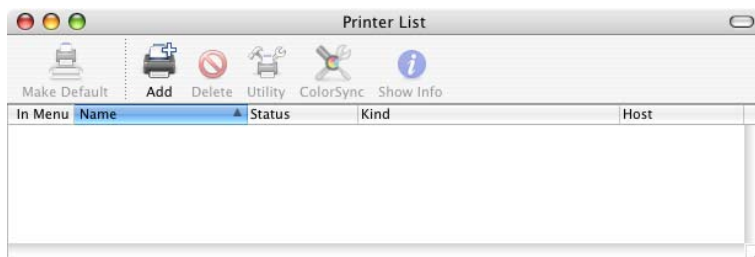
*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*



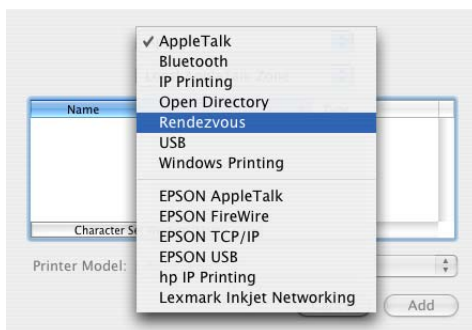
 If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to "Selecting Print Options" on page 1-59.

## Rendezvous Setting

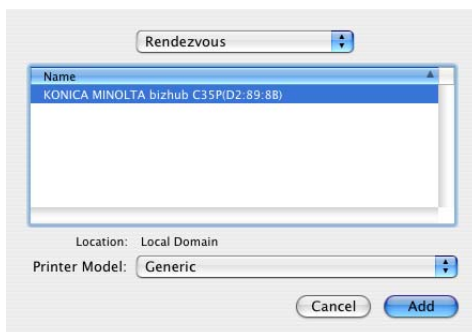
- 1 Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Printer Setup Utility**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 3 Click **Add** in the **Printer List**.



- 4 Select **Rendezvous** from the pop-up menu.

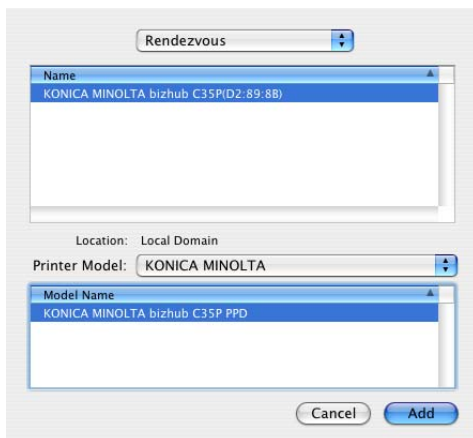


- 5 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P(xx:xx:xx)** in the **Name** list.



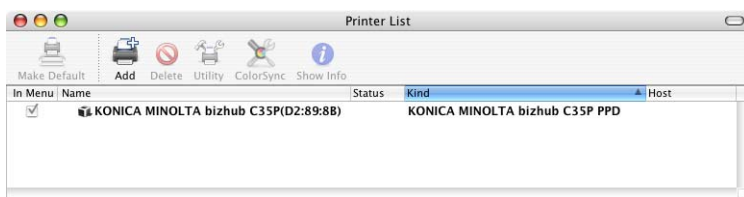
"xx:xx:xx" refers to the last six digits of the MAC address (in hexadecimal).

- 6 Select **KONICA MINOLTA** from the **Printer Model** pop-up menu.
- 7 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** in the **Model Name** list.



- 8 Click **Add**.

*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*

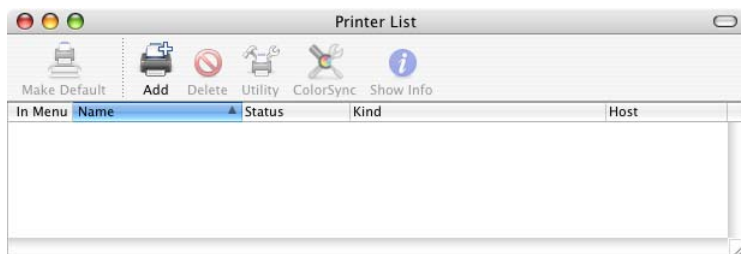


*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to “Selecting Print Options” on page 1-59.*

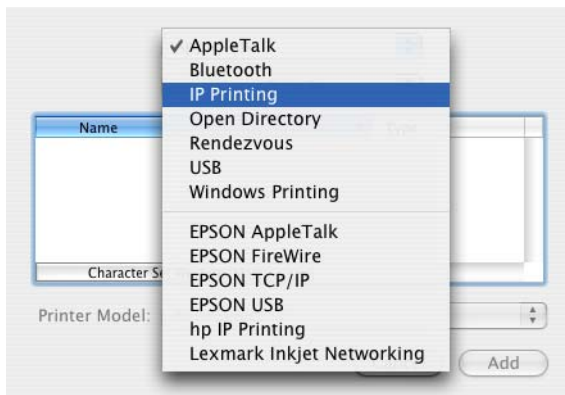
## IP Printing Setting

- 1 Connect the machine to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Printer Setup Utility**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.

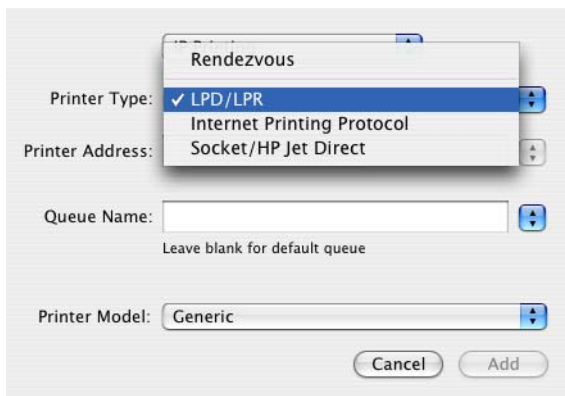
3 Click **Add** in the **Printer List**.



4 Select **IP Printing** from the pop-up menu.

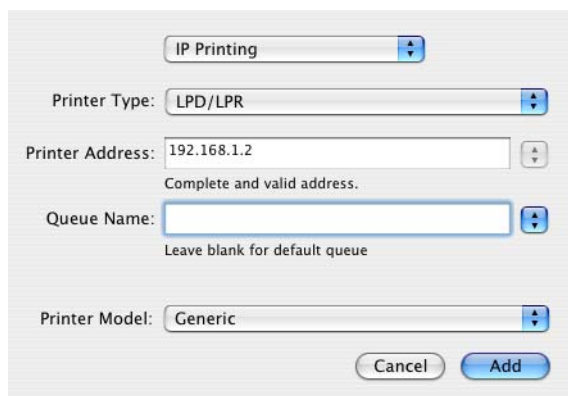


5 Select desired print protocol from the **Printer Type** pop-up menu.



- For an **LPD** setup, select **LPD/LPR**.
- For an **IPP** setup, select **Internet Printing Protocol**.
- For a port 9100 setup, select **Socket/HP Jet Direct**.

- 6 Enter the IP address for the machine in the **Printer Address** text box.



IP Printing

Printer Type: LPD/LPR

Printer Address: 192.168.1.2  
Complete and valid address.

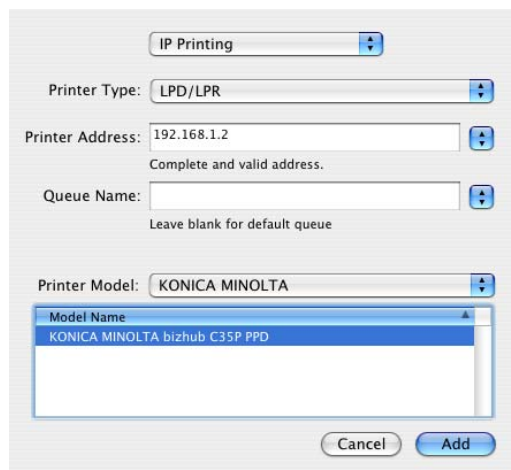
Queue Name:   
Leave blank for default queue

Printer Model: Generic

Cancel Add

- 7 Select **KONICA MINOLTA** from the **Printer Model** pop-up menu.

- 8 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** in the **Model Name** list.



IP Printing

Printer Type: LPD/LPR

Printer Address: 192.168.1.2  
Complete and valid address.

Queue Name:   
Leave blank for default queue

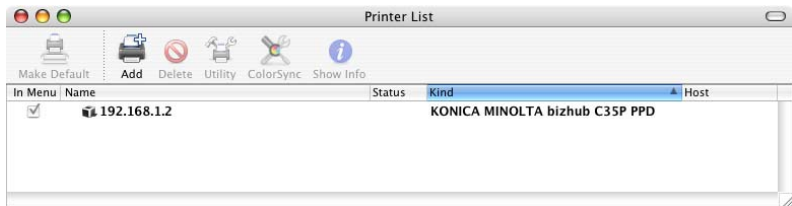
Printer Model: KONICA MINOLTA

Model Name  
KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD

Cancel Add

- 9 Click **Add**.

*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*

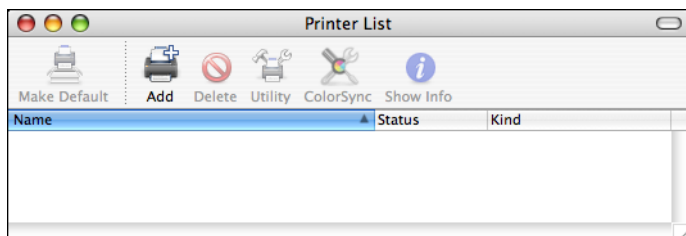


*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to “Selecting Print Options” on page 1-59.*

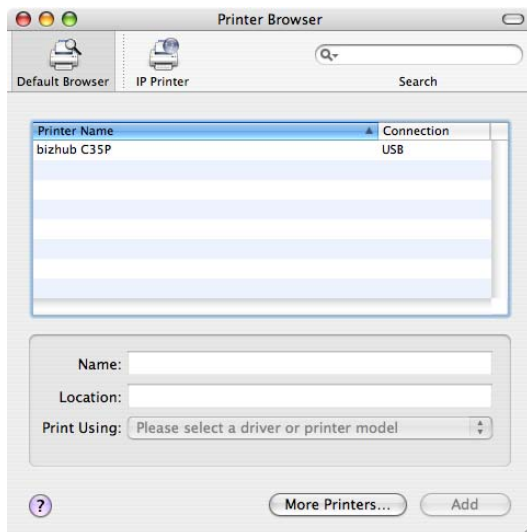
# Printer Setup Utility Settings (Mac OS X 10.4)

## When Using a USB Connection

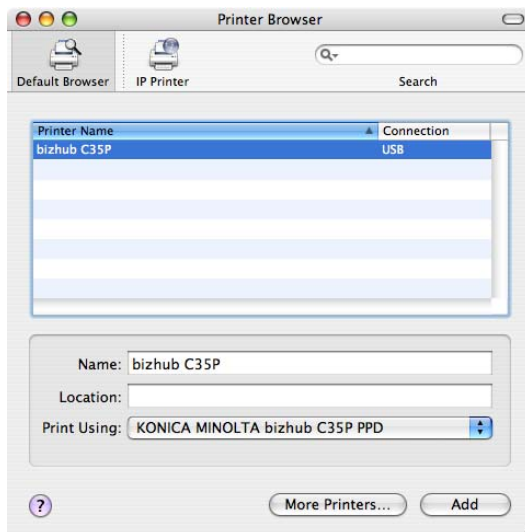
- 1 Use a USB cable to connect the machine to your computer.
- 2 Open **Printer Setup Utility**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 3 In the **Printer List**, click **Add**.



*The detected printer appears in the **Printer Browser**.*



#### 4 Select **bizhub C35P** in the **Printer Name**.

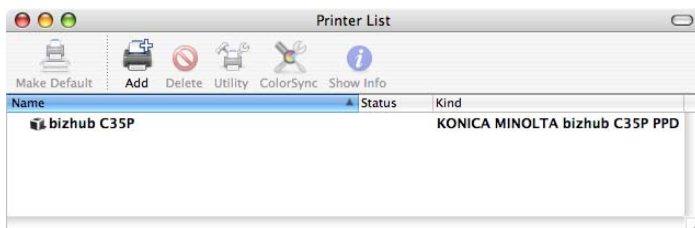


*If **bizhub C35P** does not appear, check that the machine is turned on and the USB cable is connected, and then restart the computer.*

#### 5 Check that **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** is selected in the **Print Using** list.

#### 6 Click **Add**.

*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*



*If any options are installed, select them. For details, refer to "Selecting Print Options" on page 1-59.*

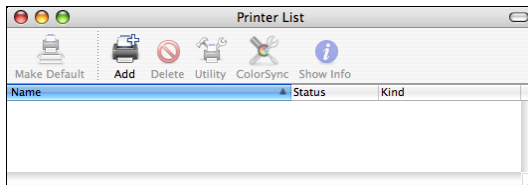


## When Using a Network Connection

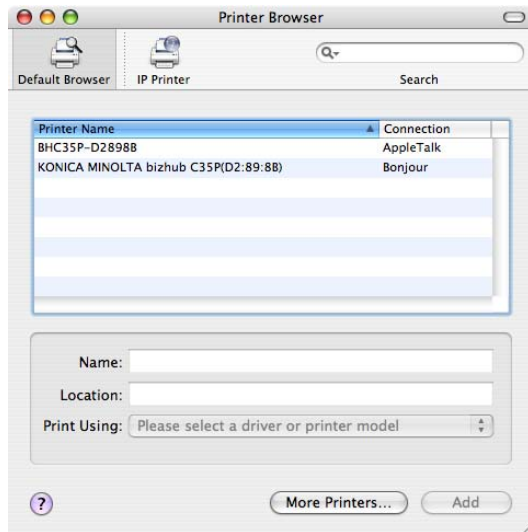
The network connection settings can be specified in one of three ways: Bonjour Setting, AppleTalk setting and IP printing Setting (IPP, LPD or Socket).

### Bonjour Setting

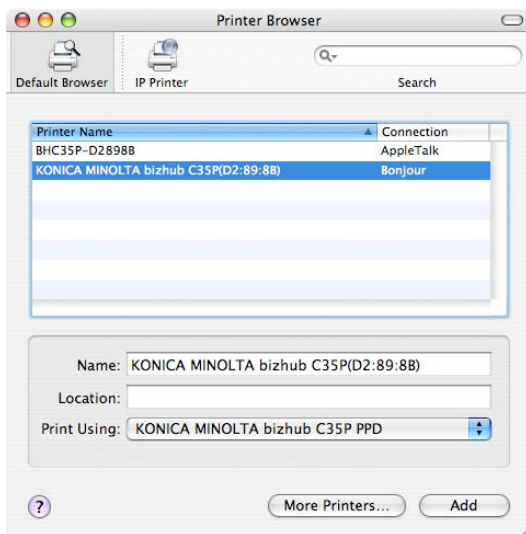
- 1 Connect the machine to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Printer Setup Utility**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 3 In the **Printer List**, click **Add**.



*The detected printer appears in the **Printer Browser**.*



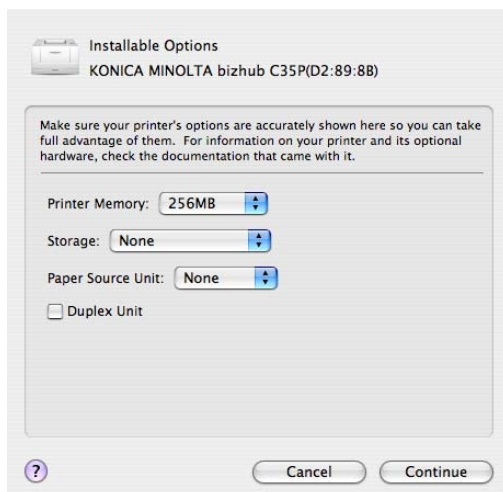
- 4 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P(xx:xx:xx)** in the **Printer Browser**.



*“xx:xx:xx” refers to the last six digits of the MAC address (in hexadecimal).*

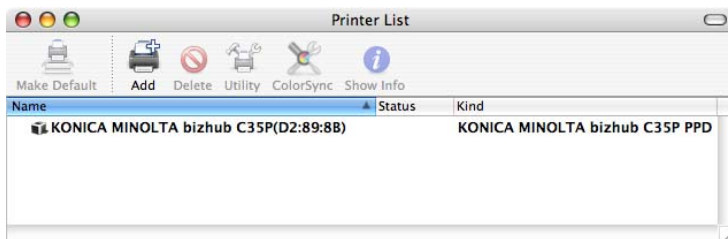
- 5 Check that **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** is selected in the **Print Using** list.
- 6 Click **Add**.

- 7 Select the appropriate settings in the **Printer Memory, Storage, Paper Source Unit** and **Duplex Unit** according to your printer setup.



- 8 Click **Continue**.

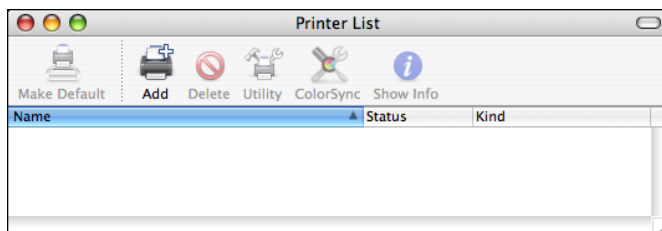
*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*



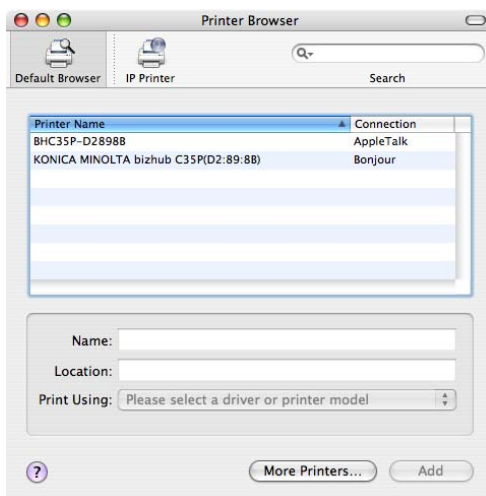
## AppleTalk Setting

- 1 Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Printer Setup Utility**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.

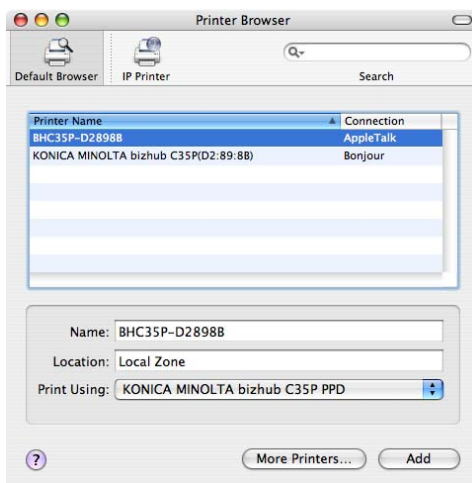
3 In the **Printer List**, click **Add**.



*The detected printer appears in the **Printer Browser**.*



4 Select **BHC35P-xxxxxx** in the **Printer Browser**.

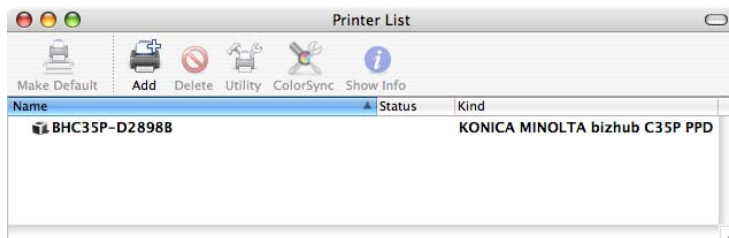




"XXXXXX" refers to the last six digits of the MAC address (in hexadecimal).

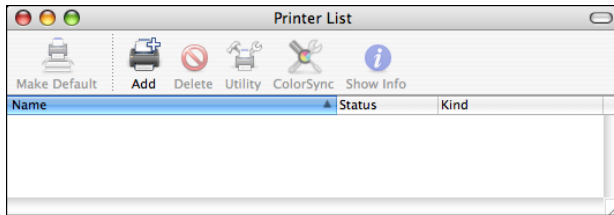
- 5 Check that **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** is selected in the **Print Using** list.
- 6 Click **Add**.

*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*

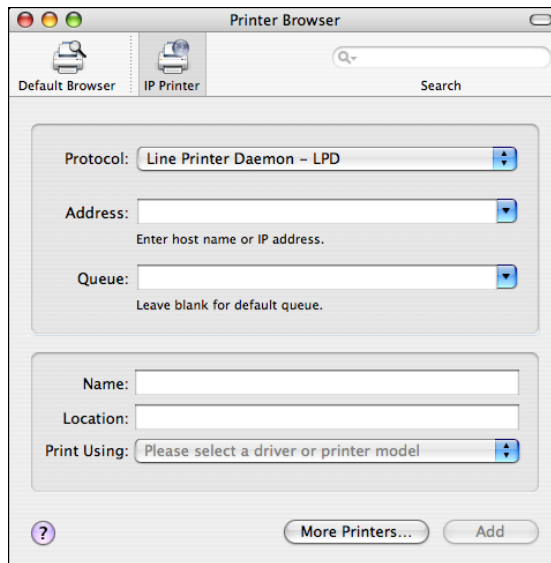


## IP Printing Setting

- 1 Connect the machine to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Open **Printer Setup Utility**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup Disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 3 Click **Add** in the **Printer List**.



- 4 Click **IP Printer**.

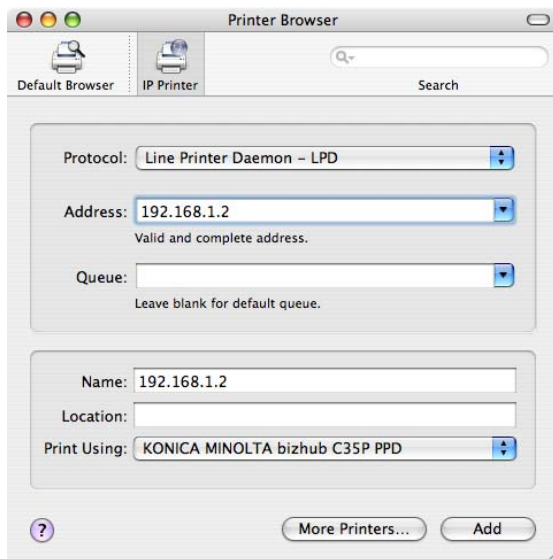


- 5 Select desired print protocol from the **Protocol** pop-up menu.



- For an IPP setup, select **Internet Printing Protocol - IPP**.
- For an LPD setup, select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD**.
- For a port 9100 setup, select **HP Jet Direct - Socket**.

- 6 Enter the IP address for the machine in the **Address** text box.

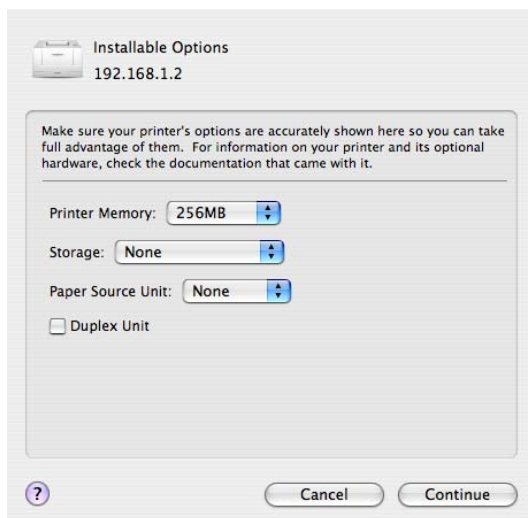


- For an IPP setup, "ipp" in the **Queue** text box.

- 7 Check that **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** is selected in the **Print Using** list.
- 8 Click **Add**.

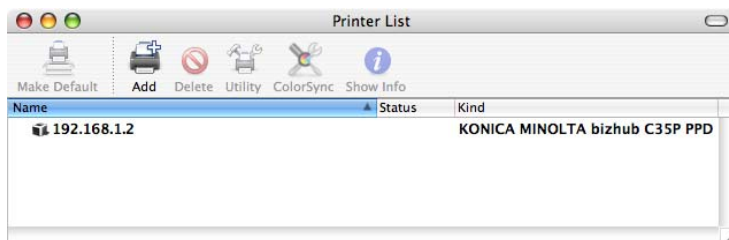


- 9 Select the appropriate settings in the **Printer Memory, Storage, Paper Source Unit** and **Duplex Unit** according to your printer setup.



- 10 Click **Continue**.

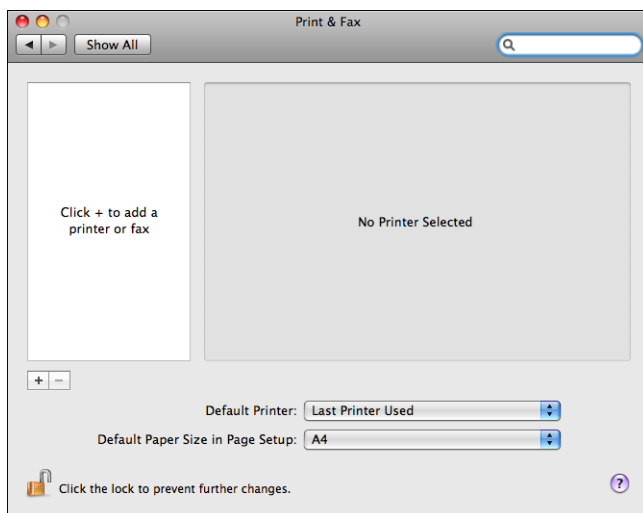
*The new printer appears in the **Printer List** screen.*



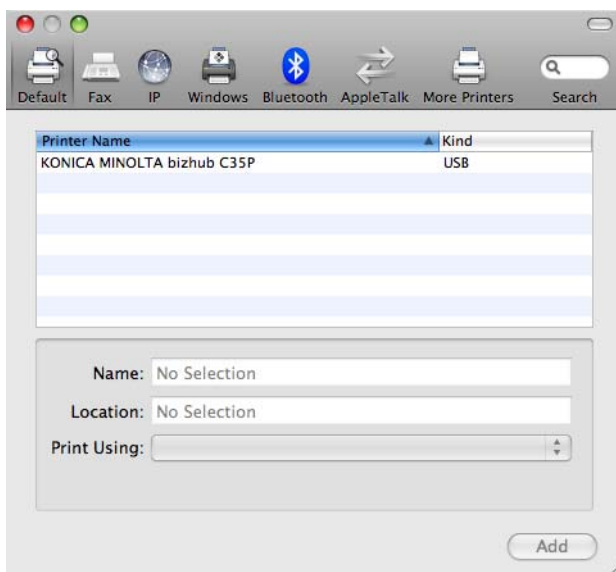
# Printer Settings (Mac OS X 10.5/10.6)

## When Using a USB Connection

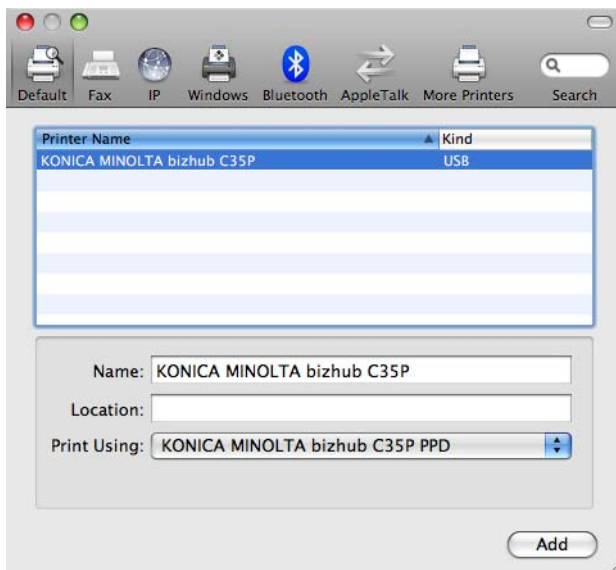
- 1 Use a USB cable to connect the printer to your computer.
- 2 Select **System Preferences** from the Apple menu.
- 3 Click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 In the **Print & Fax**, click + button.



*The detected printer appears in the Printer Browser.*



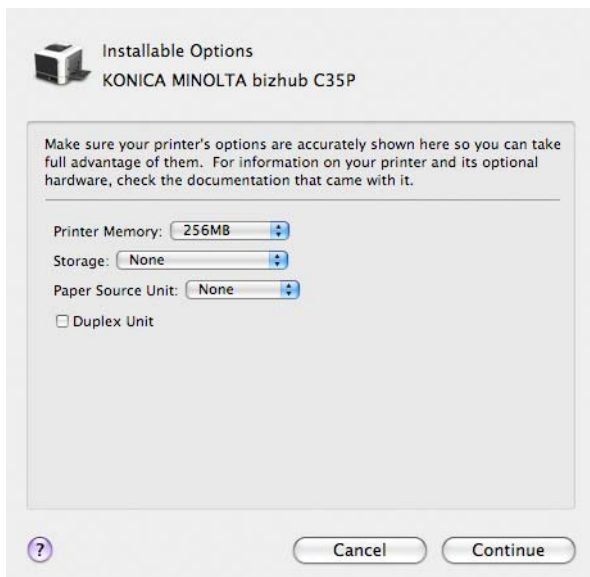
**5** Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P** in the **Printer Name** list.





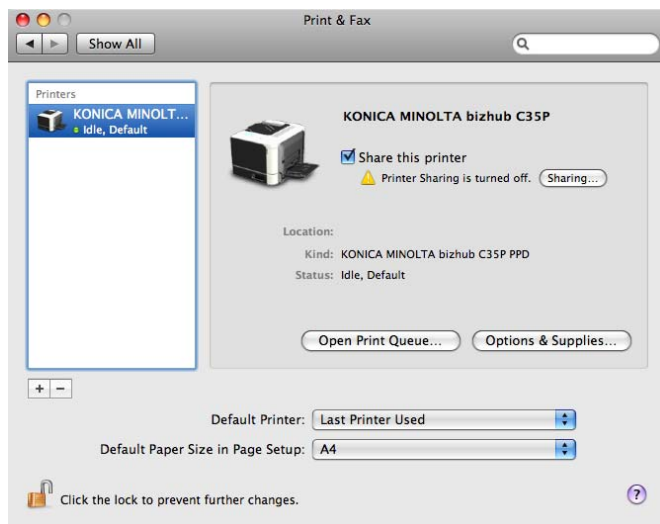
If **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P** does not appear, check that the printer is turned on and the USB cable is connected, and then restart the computer.

- 6 Check that **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** is selected in the **Print Using** list.
- 7 Click **Add**.
- 8 Select the appropriate settings in the **Printer Memory**, **Storage**, **Paper Source Unit** and **Duplex Unit** according to your printer setup.



9 Click **Continue**.

The new printer appears in the **Print & Fax** screen.

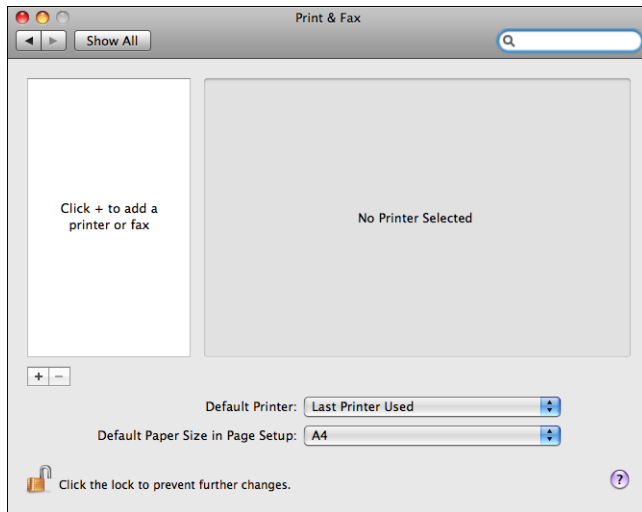


## When Using a Network Connection

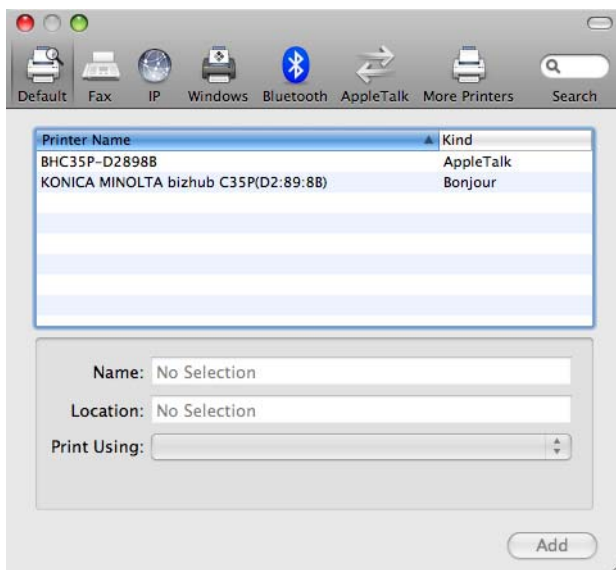
The network connection settings can be specified in one of three ways: Bonjour Setting, AppleTalk setting and IP printing setting (IPP, LPD or Socket).

### Bonjour Setting

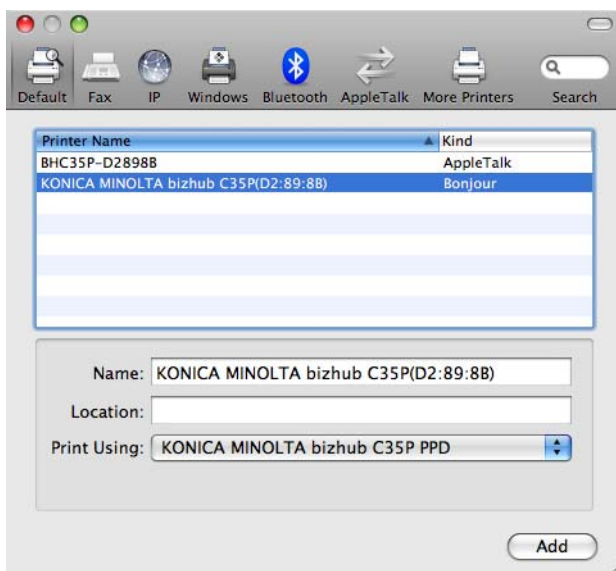
- 1 Connect the machine to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Select **System Preferences** from the Apple menu.
- 3 Click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 In the **Print & Fax**, click + button.



*The detected printer appears in the Printer Browser.*

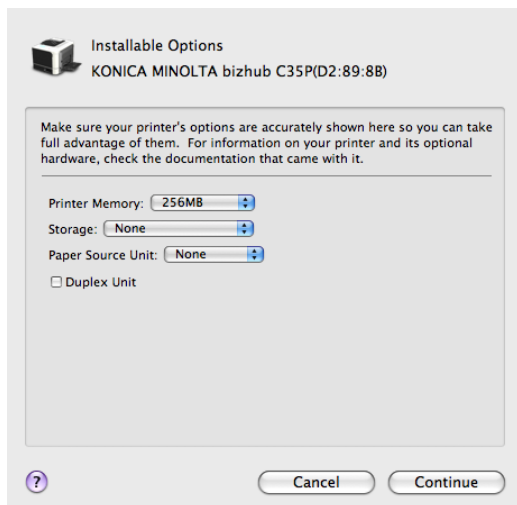


- 5 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P(xx:xx:xx)** in the **Printer Name** list.



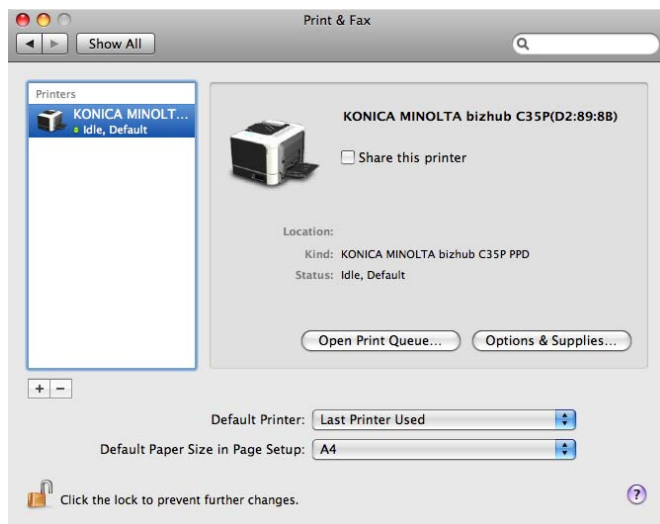
*“xx:xx:xx” refers to the last six digits of the MAC address (in hexadecimal).*

- 6 Check that **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** is selected in the **Print Using** list.
- 7 Click **Add**.
- 8 Select the appropriate settings in the **Printer Memory**, **Storage**, **Paper Source Unit** and **Duplex Unit** according to your printer setup.



- 9 Click **Continue**.

*The new printer appears in the **Print & Fax** screen.*



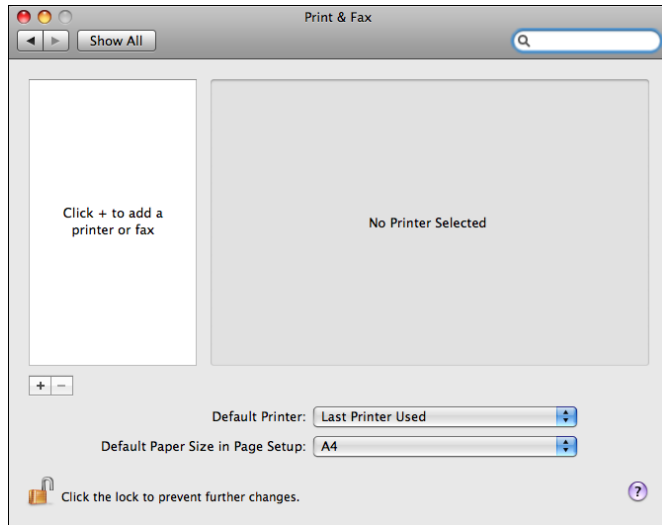


## AppleTalk Setting

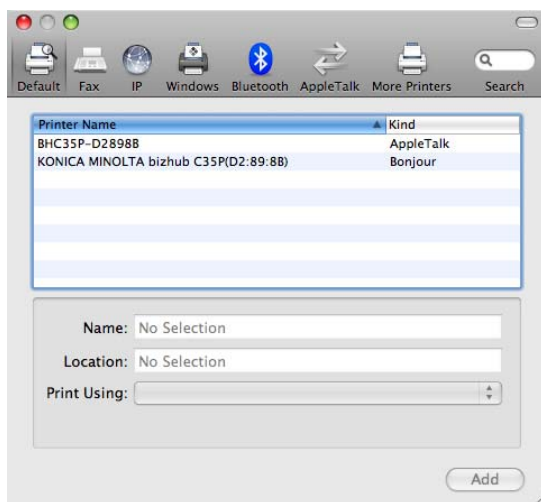


*Mac OS X 10.6 does not support AppleTalk.*

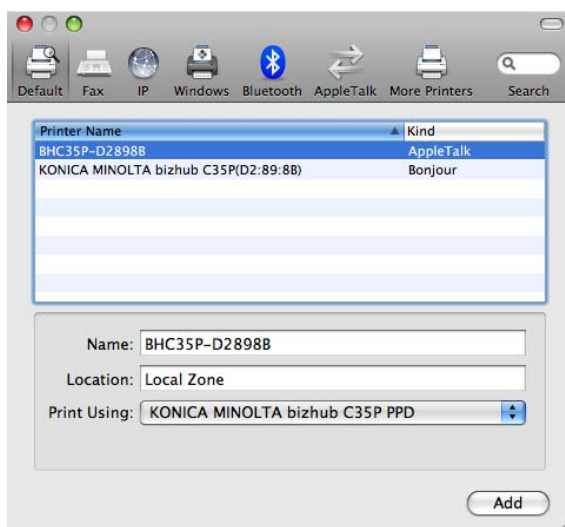
- 1 Connect the machine to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Select **System Preferences** from the Apple menu.
- 3 Click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 In the **Print & Fax**, click + button.



*The detected printer appears in the Printer Browser.*



**5** Select **BHC35P-xxxxxx** in the **Printer Name** list.

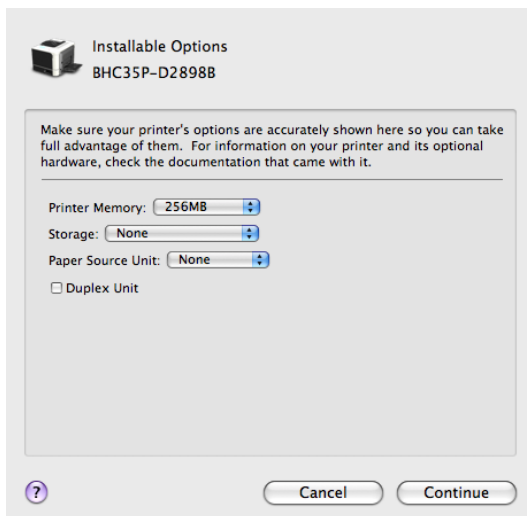


"XXXXXXX" refers to the last six digits of the MAC address (in hexadecimal).

**6** Check that **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** is selected in the **Print Using** list.

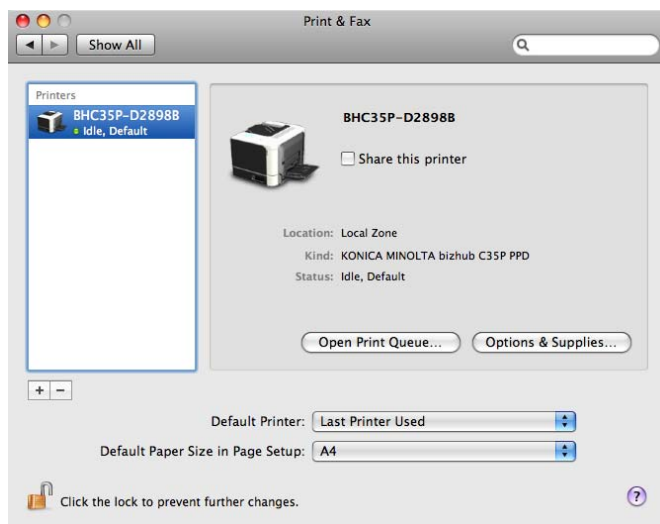
**7** Click **Add**.

- 8 Select the appropriate settings in the **Printer Memory, Storage, Paper Source Unit** and **Duplex Unit** according to your printer setup.



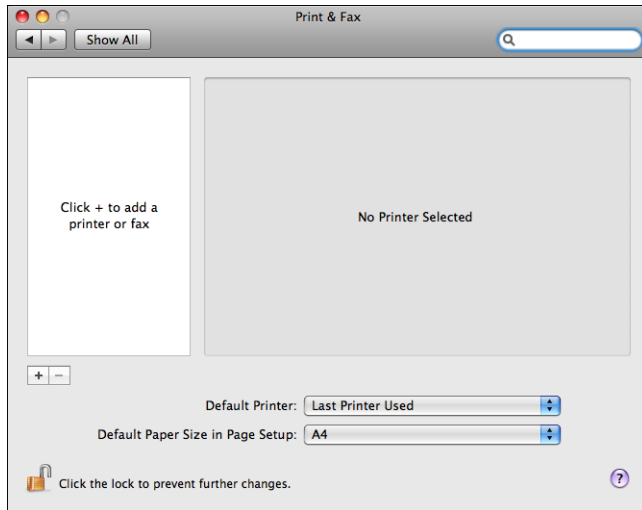
- 9 Click **Continue**.

*The new printer appears in the **Print & Fax** screen.*

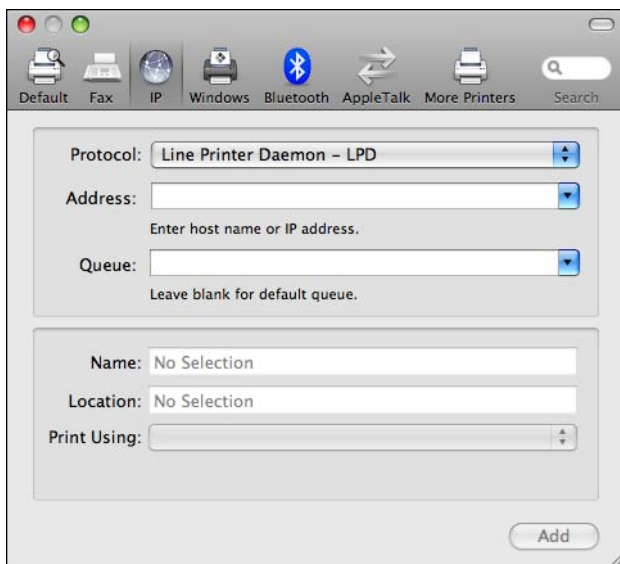


## IP Printing Setting

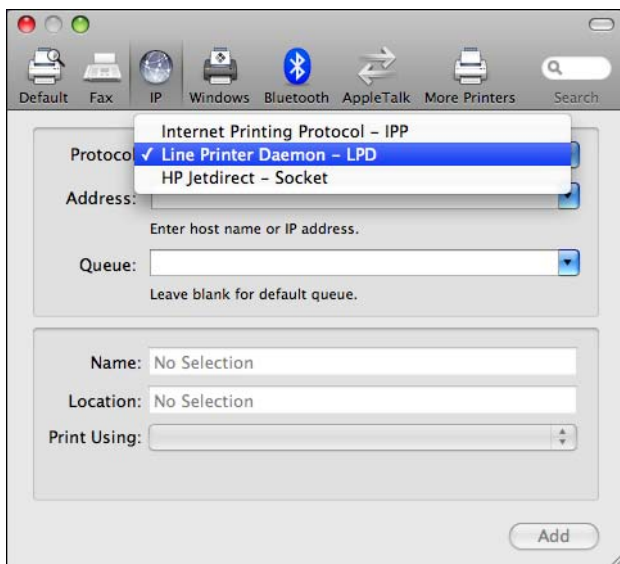
- 1 Connect the machine to an Ethernet network.
- 2 Select **System Preferences** from the Apple menu.
- 3 Click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 In the **Print & Fax**, click **+** button.



## 5 Click IP.

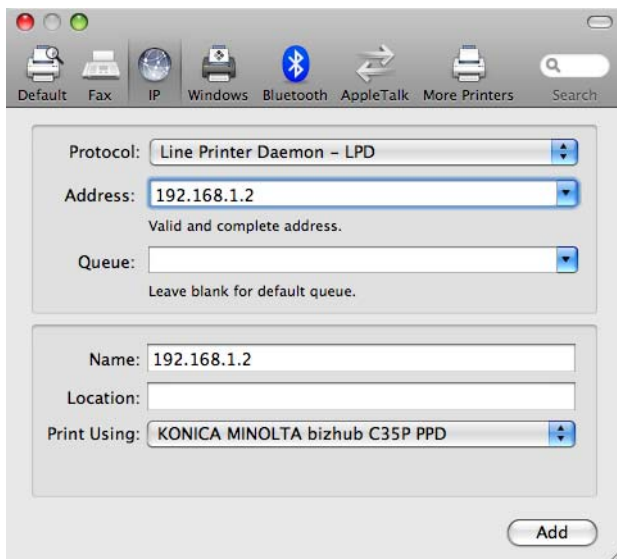


## 6 Select desired print protocol from the **Protocol** pop-up menu.



- For an IPP setup, select **Internet Printing Protocol - IPP**.
- For an LPD setup, select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD**.
- For a port 9100 setup, select **HP Jetdirect - Socket**.

- 7 Enter the IP address for the machine in the **Address** text box.



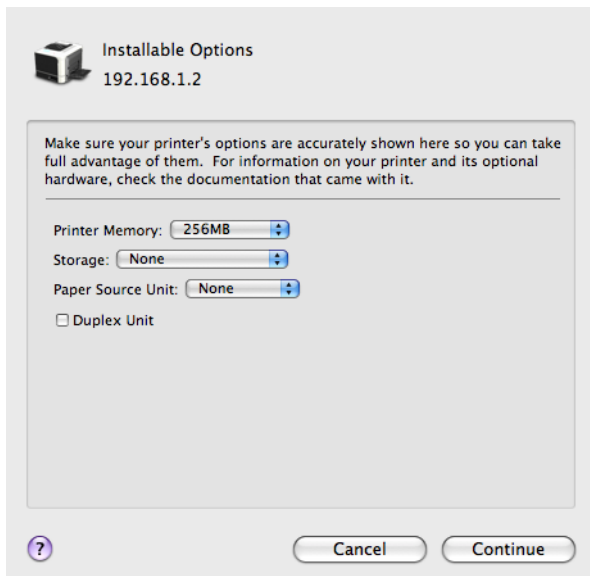
The screenshot shows the 'Add Printer' window in Mac OS X, with the 'IP' tab selected. The window has a title bar with standard Mac OS X window controls (red, yellow, green buttons) and a toolbar with icons for Default, Fax, IP, Windows, Bluetooth, AppleTalk, More Printers, and a Search field. The main content area is divided into two sections. The top section contains three fields: 'Protocol' set to 'Line Printer Daemon - LPD', 'Address' set to '192.168.1.2' with a dropdown arrow, and 'Queue' which is empty with a dropdown arrow. Below the 'Address' field is the text 'Valid and complete address.' and below the 'Queue' field is the text 'Leave blank for default queue.' The bottom section contains three fields: 'Name' set to '192.168.1.2', 'Location' which is empty, and 'Print Using' set to 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD' with a dropdown arrow. At the bottom right of the window is an 'Add' button.



- For an IPP setup, "ipp" in the **Queue** text box.

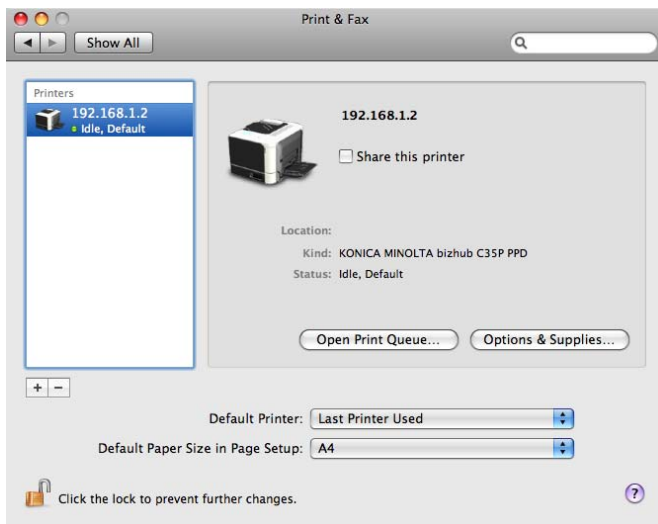
- 8 Check that **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P PPD** is selected in the **Print Using** list.
- 9 Click **Add**.

- 10 Select the appropriate settings in the **Printer Memory, Storage, Paper Source Unit** and **Duplex Unit** according to your printer setup.



- 11 Click **Continue**.

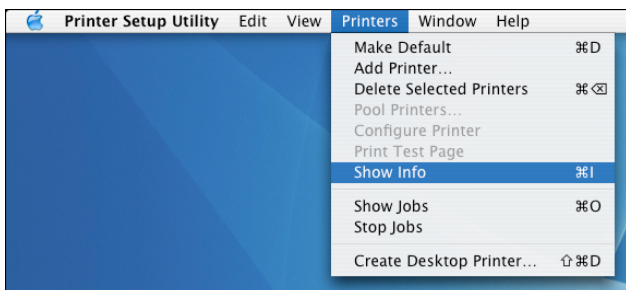
*The new printer appears in the **Print & Fax** screen.*



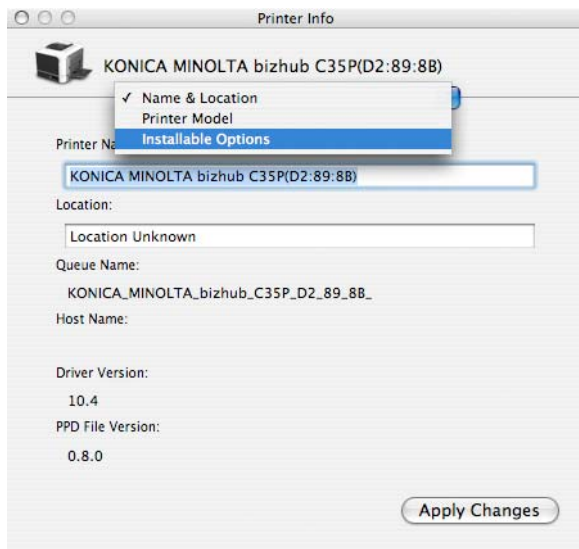
# Selecting Print Options

## For Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4

- 1 Open **Printer Setup Utility (Print Center)**, which can be accessed by clicking Startup disk, then **Applications**, then **Utilities**.
- 2 Select this printer in the **Printer List**, and then select **Show Info** from the **Printers** menu.

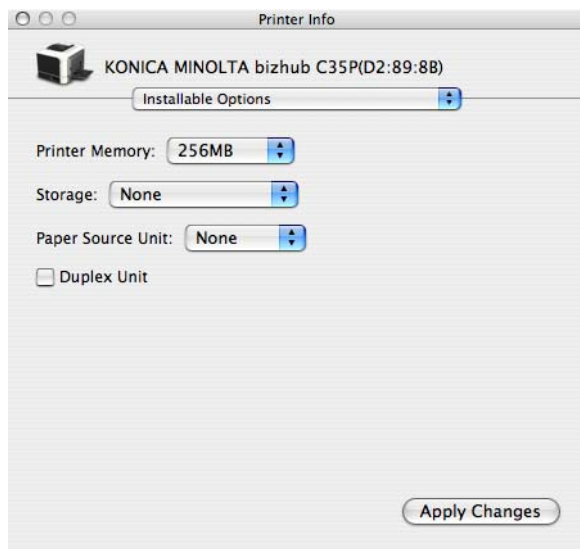


- 3 Select **Installable Options** from the pop-up menu.





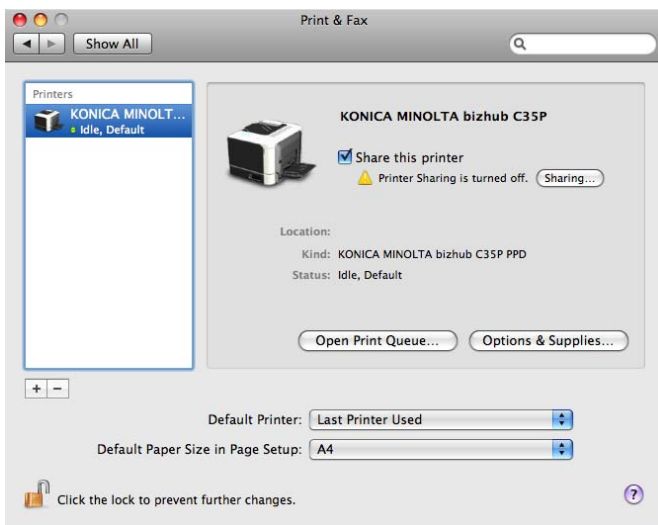
- 4 Select the appropriate settings in the **Printer Memory**, **Storage**, **Paper Source Unit** and **Duplex Unit** according to your printer setup.



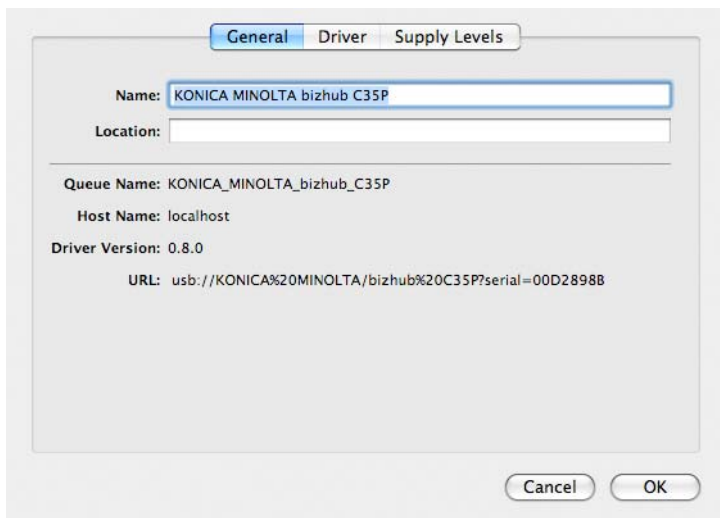
- 5 Click **Apply Changes**.
- 6 Close the **Printer Info** dialog box.

## For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6

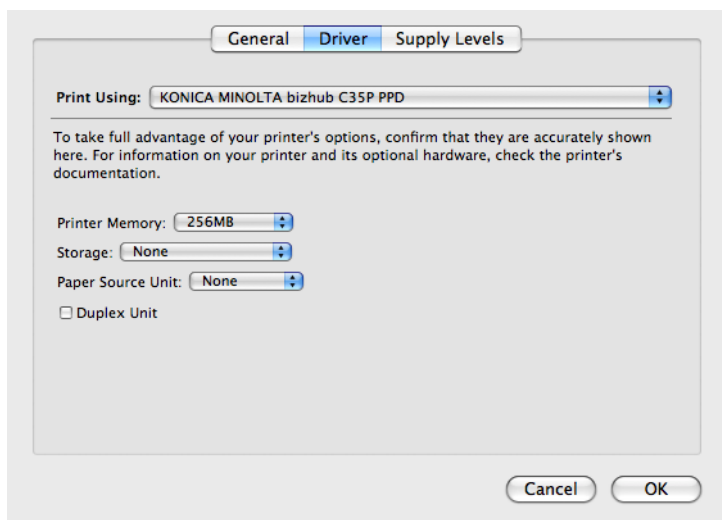
- 1 Select **System Preferences** from the Apple menu.
- 2 Click **Print & Fax**.
- 3 Select this printer in the **Printers List**, and then click **Options & Supplies**.



- 4 Select **Driver** tab.



- 5 Select the appropriate settings in the **Printer Memory**, **Storage**, **Paper Source Unit** and **Duplex Unit** according to your printer setup.

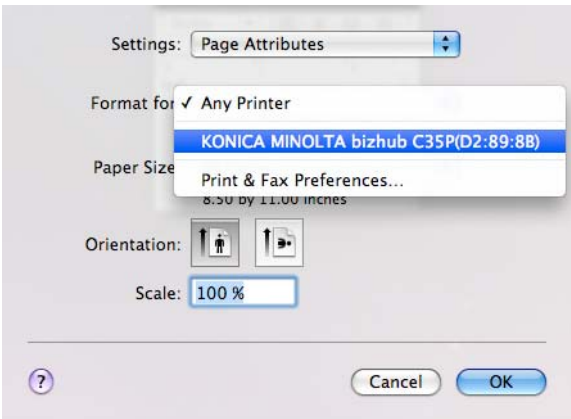


- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Close the **Print & Fax** screen.

# Specifying Page Setup Settings (Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6)

The following dialog box appears when **Page Setup...** is selected from the **File** menu in the application being used.

- 1 Select **Page Setup...** from the **File** menu.  
The **Page Setup** dialog box appears.
- 2 Select this printer in the **Format for** pop-up menu.

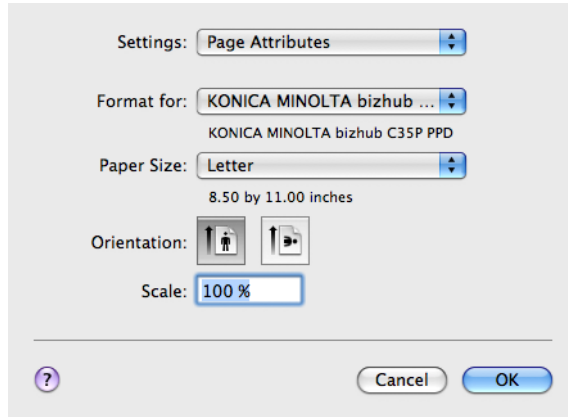


You can select the following sections from the **Settings** pop-up menu.

| Section         | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Page Attributes | This is used to specify the settings for the paper size, scaling, and print orientation. |
| Save As Default | This is used to save the new settings as the defaults.                                   |

## Page Attributes Options

The **Page Attributes** section is used to specify the settings for the paper size, scaling, and print orientation.



- **Paper Size**  
Select the desired paper size from the Paper Size pop-up menu.
- **Orientation**  
Select either a vertical or horizontal page orientation for printouts.
- **Scale**  
If you want to enlarge or reduce the size of the printout, enter the scale ratio here (25-400%).



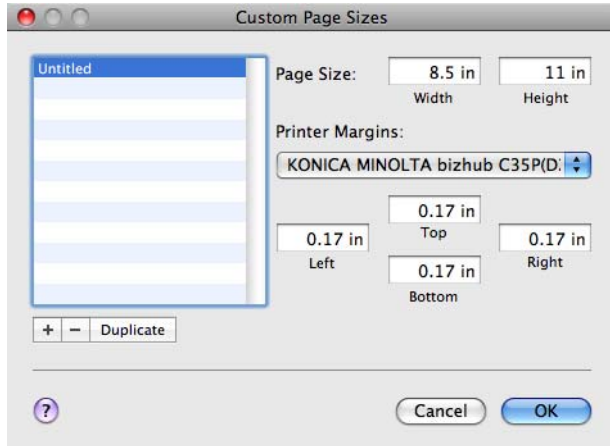
*Regardless of which paper size is selected, the machine does not print within 0.165" (4.2 mm) of the edge of the paper.*

## Specifying Custom Paper Size

You can also specify a paper size that is not listed in the **Paper Size** pop-up menu.

- 1 Select **Manage Custom Sizes** from the pop-up menu, in the **Page Setup** dialog box.

The **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box appears.



- +  
Click this button to create a new custom page size.
- -  
Click this button to delete a custom page size.
- Duplicate  
Click this button to duplicate (copy) the settings of an existing custom page size and create a new custom page size based on those settings.
- Page Size  
Enter the dimensions of the paper height and width for the custom page size.  
**Single-sided**  
**Width:** 3.63 - 8.50" (92 - 216 mm)  
**Height (Tray 1):** 5.83 - 14.00" (148 - 356 mm)  
**Height (Tray 2):** 5.83 - 11.69" (148 - 297 mm)  
**Double-sided**  
**Width:** 7.17 - 8.50" (182 - 216 mm)  
**Height (Tray 1):** 10.00 - 14.00" (254 - 356 mm)
- Printer Margins  
Enter the dimensions for the top, left, right, and bottom margins.

**2** After you have finished entering the settings, click **OK**.



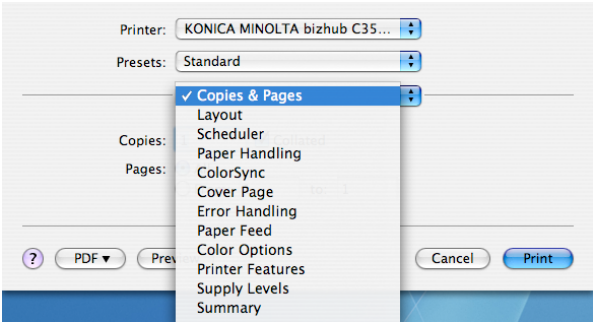
*Regardless of which paper is selected, the printer does not print within 0.165" (4.2 mm) of the edge of the paper.*

# Specifying Print Settings (Mac OS X 10.4)

The following dialog box appears when **Print...** is selected from the **File** menu in the application being used.

- 1 Select **Print...** from the **File** menu.  
The **Print** dialog box appears.
- 2 Select this printer in the **Printer** pop-up menu.  
The Print dialog box is used to specify the following print options.

## Print Dialog Box



| Section        | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Copies & Pages | This section contains options for the number of copies to be printed and the range of pages to print.                 |
| Layout         | This section contains options for specifying the page layout when printing and the setting for double-sided printing. |
| Scheduler      | This section contains options for specifying the print timing and priority of jobs.                                   |
| Paper Handling | This section contains options for specifying the pages to be printed and their printing order.                        |
| ColorSync      | This section contains options for specifying ColorSync settings.  |
| Cover Page     | This section contains options for specifying cover page settings.   |
| Error Handling | This section contains options for specifying how an error is reported.  |
| Paper Feed     | This section contains paper feed options.   |



| Section          | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Color Options    | This section contains options for color printing.   |
| Printer Features | This section contains options for specifying paper type and resolution settings.                        |
| Supply Levels    | This section provides information for checking the amount of service life remaining on each consumable. |
| Summary          | This is used to check the current settings.   |



*No warning message will be displayed if options cannot be used together are selected.*

## Common buttons

- ? (Help button)  
Click this button to display help information about the Print dialog box.
- PDF  
Click this button to select the PDF menu. The print output can be saved as a PDF file or faxed.
- Preview  
Click this button to view a preview image of the printout, to check that the print options are set correctly.
- Cancel  
Click this button to close the Print dialog box without applying any of the settings.
- Print  
Click this button to print using the selected print options.

## Copies & Pages

The **Copies & Pages** section is used to specify the number of copies to print and the range of pages to print.

Printer: KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35...

Presets: Standard

---

Copies & Pages

---

Copies: 1 ☒ Collated

Pages: ☒ All

☐ From: 1 to: 1

---

? PDF Preview Cancel Print

### ■ Copies

This specifies the number of copies to be printed. If the **Collated** checkbox is selected, all pages in the documents are printed as sets of print-outs.

For example, if 5 is entered for **Copies** and **Collated** is selected, the document is printed five times from the first page to the last page.

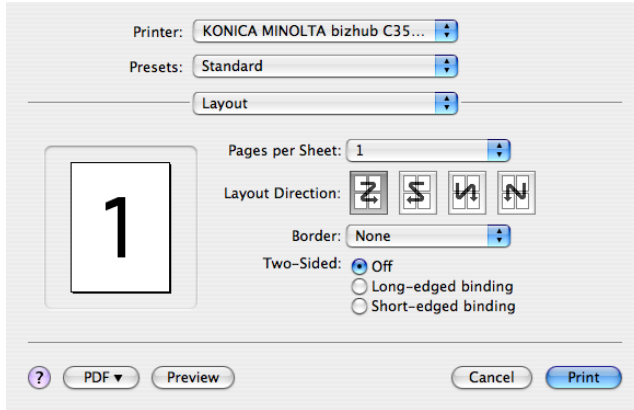
### ■ Pages

**All:** Prints all pages in the document.

**From, to:** Specifies the range of pages to be printed.

## Layout

The **Layout** section is used to specify the page layout when printing and the setting for double-sided printing.



### ■ Pages per Sheet

Specifies the number of pages to be printed on one sheet of paper. For example, if **2** is selected, two pages are printed on one sheet of paper.

### ■ Layout Direction

If you are printing more than one page per sheet, this specifies the direction and order the pages should be arranged on each sheet of paper.

### ■ Border

This prints a border around the image for each of the pages printed on one sheet of paper when more than one page is printed on one sheet of paper.

### ■ Two-Sided

Select the desired setting for double-sided printing.

**Off:** Double-sided printing is not performed.

**Long-edged binding:** Double-sided printing is performed with the binding along the long edge of the paper.

**Short-edged binding:** Double-sided printing is performed with the binding along the short edge of the paper.

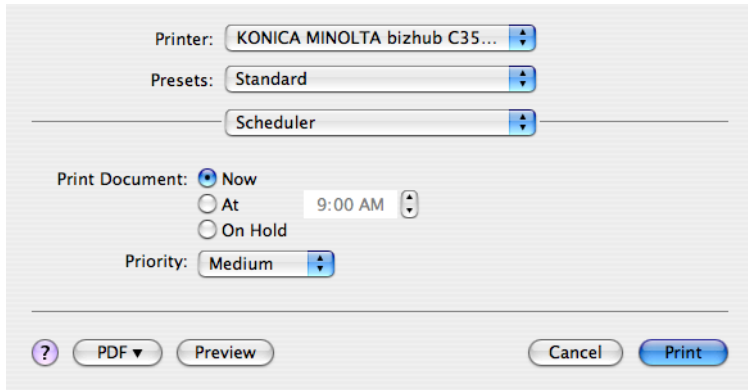


*In order to print on both sides of the paper, the **Duplex Unit** check box must be selected under **Installable Options** (p. 1-60)*

*The **Long-edged binding** check box or **Short-edged binding** check box can be selected even when the **Duplex Unit** is not installed. However, in this case, the print job will be cancelled.*

## Scheduler

The **Scheduler** section is used to specify the timing and priority for printing jobs.



The screenshot shows a 'Scheduler' dialog box with the following elements:

- Printer:** A dropdown menu showing 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35...'.
- Presets:** A dropdown menu showing 'Standard'.
- Scheduler:** A dropdown menu showing 'Scheduler'.
- Print Document:** Three radio button options: 'Now' (selected), 'At', and 'On Hold'. The 'At' option has a time field set to '9:00 AM'.
- Priority:** A dropdown menu showing 'Medium'.
- Buttons:** A help button (question mark), a 'PDF' button with a dropdown arrow, a 'Preview' button, a 'Cancel' button, and a 'Print' button.

### ■ Print Document

**Now:** Select this option to begin printing immediately.

**At:** Specify the time to begin printing.

**On Hold:** Select this option to hold the print job.

### ■ Priority

Select the priority for printing jobs that are being held.

## Paper Handling

The **Paper Handling** section is used to specify the pages that are to be printed and the order in which the pages are printed.

Printer: KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35...  
Presets: Standard  
Paper Handling  
Page Order: ☒ Automatic  
☐ Normal  
☐ Reverse  
Print: ☒ All Pages  
☐ Odd numbered pages  
☐ Even numbered pages  
Destination Paper Size:  
☒ Use documents paper size: Letter  
☐ Scale to fit paper size: Letter  
☒ Scale down only  
PDF Preview Cancel Print

### ■ Page Order

**Automatic:** Select this option to print in the original page order of the document.

**Normal:** Select this option to print in the normal page order.

**Reverse:** Select this option to print in the reverse page order.

### ■ Print

**All Pages:** Select this option to print all pages.

**Odd numbered pages:** Select this option to print only the pages with odd page numbers.

**Even numbered pages:** Select this option to print only the pages with even page numbers.

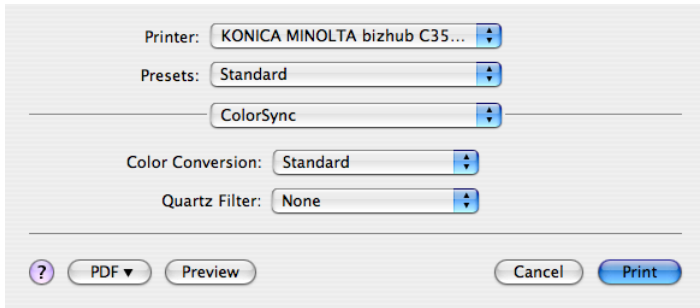
### ■ Destination Paper Size

**Use documents paper size:** Select this option to use the document size as created by software applications.

**Scale to fit paper size:** Select this option to fit the document size to the size of paper used by the machine. Specify the size of paper used by the machine.

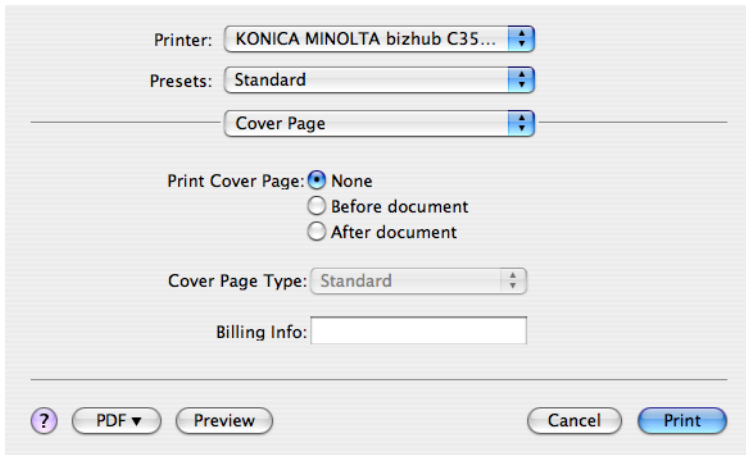
**Scale down only:** Select this option to reduce the printing size.

## ColorSync

A screenshot of the ColorSync print settings dialog. It features a light gray background with a horizontal line separating the top section from the bottom section. In the top section, there are three dropdown menus: 'Printer:' set to 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35...', 'Presets:' set to 'Standard', and 'ColorSync' (highlighted). In the bottom section, there are two more dropdown menus: 'Color Conversion:' set to 'Standard' and 'Quartz Filter:' set to 'None'. At the bottom of the dialog, there is a row of buttons: a help button (question mark in a circle), a 'PDF' button with a dropdown arrow, a 'Preview' button, a 'Cancel' button, and a 'Print' button.

- **Color Conversion**  
Allows you to select host-based color matching or printer-based color matching.
- **Quartz Filter**  
Allows you to select Quartz Filter.

## Cover Page

A screenshot of the Cover Page print settings dialog. It features a light gray background with a horizontal line separating the top section from the bottom section. In the top section, there are three dropdown menus: 'Printer:' set to 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35...', 'Presets:' set to 'Standard', and 'Cover Page' (highlighted). In the bottom section, there is a 'Print Cover Page:' label followed by three radio buttons: 'None' (selected), 'Before document', and 'After document'. Below this is a 'Cover Page Type:' dropdown menu set to 'Standard'. At the bottom, there is a 'Billing Info:' label followed by a text input field. At the very bottom of the dialog, there is a row of buttons: a help button (question mark in a circle), a 'PDF' button with a dropdown arrow, a 'Preview' button, a 'Cancel' button, and a 'Print' button.

- **Print Cover Page**  
Allows you to set cover page before or after document.
- **Cover Page Type**  
Allows you to select cover page type.
- **Billing Info**  
Allows you to set billing information printed on cover page.

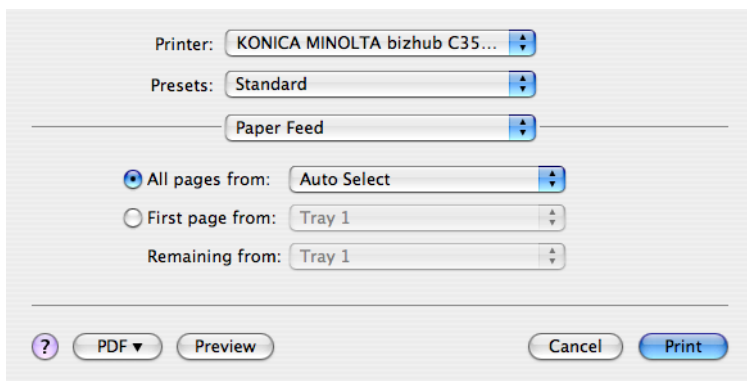
## Error Handling

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Error Handling" for a KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35 printer. At the top, "Printer:" is set to "KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35..." and "Presets:" is set to "Standard". The "Error Handling" section contains two sub-sections: "PostScript Errors" with radio buttons for "No special reporting" (selected) and "Print detailed report"; and "Tray Switching" with radio buttons for "Use printer's default", "Switch to another cassette with the same paper size", and "Display alert" (selected). At the bottom, there are buttons for "?", "PDF", "Preview", "Cancel", and "Print".

- **PostScript Errors**  
Allows you to select whether or not a report is outputted when a PostScript error occurs.
- **Tray Switching**  
This feature is not available with this printer.

## Paper Feed

The **Paper Feed** section is used to specify the paper feed setting.



The screenshot shows a 'Paper Feed' settings window. At the top, 'Printer:' is set to 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35...' and 'Presets:' is set to 'Standard'. Below these, the 'Paper Feed' section is highlighted. It contains three radio button options: 'All pages from:' (selected) with a dropdown set to 'Auto Select'; 'First page from:' with a dropdown set to 'Tray 1'; and 'Remaining from:' with a dropdown set to 'Tray 1'. At the bottom, there are buttons for '?', 'PDF', 'Preview', 'Cancel', and 'Print'.

- **All pages from**  
All pages in the document are printed using the paper in the specified paper tray.
- **First page from**  
The first page of the document is printed on paper from a paper tray different from the tray used to print the rest of the document.
- **Remaining from**  
The rest of the document is printed from the specified paper tray when the first page is to be printed on paper from a different tray.



*If an optional tray is installed, select an **Paper Source Unit** under **Installable Options** (p. 1-60). If an **Paper Source Unit** is not selected, Tray 2 appears in gray and cannot be selected.*



## Color Options

Printer: KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35...

Presets: Standard

---

Color Options

Quick Color: Auto

Brightness: 0%

☐ Color as Grayscale

☐ Color Separation

☐ Economy Print

Edge Strength: Middle

☐ Auto Trapping

Black Over Print: Off

Advanced Color Options

---

? PDF Preview Cancel Print

- **Quick Color**  
Allows you to select a color preset.
- **Brightness**  
Allows you to set Brightness.
- **Color as Grayscale**  
Allows you to set Grayscale color.
- **Color Separation**  
Allows you to set Color Separation.
- **Economy Print**  
Allows you to set Economy Print Mode.
- **Edge Strength**  
Allows you to select Edge Strength.
- **Auto Trapping**  
Allows you to select whether or not neighboring colors are printed superimposed in order to prevent white space around images.
- **Black Over Print**  
Allows you to specify whether black objects are printed (superimposed) on a neighboring color in order to prevent white space around black characters or figures.

If **Text/Figure** is selected, superimposed printing is applied to text and graphics.

If **Text** is selected, superimposed printing is applied to text.

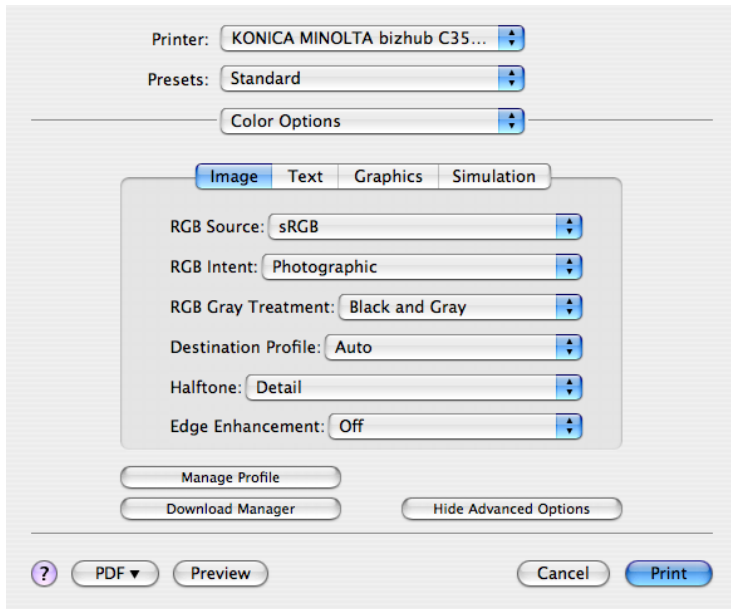
■ **Advanced Color Options**

Click this button to display the **Advanced Color Options** pane.



*This button enables when **Custom** is selected under **Quick Color**.*

## Advanced Color Options/Image



■ **RGB Source**

Allows you to select RGB color profiles for images.

■ **RGB Intent**

Allows you to select color intent for RGB images.

■ **RGB Gray Treatment**

Allows you to select RGB gray treatment for images.

■ **Destination Profile**

Allows you to select Destination Profile for images.

■ **Halftone**

Allows you to select halftone for images.

■ **Edge Enhancement**

Allows you to select Edge Enhancement for images.

- **Hide Advanced Options**

Click this button to hide the **Advanced Color Options** pane and display the **Color Options** pane.

- **Manage Profile**

Click this button to display the **Color Profile Management** dialog box.

From this dialog box, color profiles can be added or deleted to those available as settings for **RGB Source** and **Simulation Profile** of the **Advanced Color Options** pane.

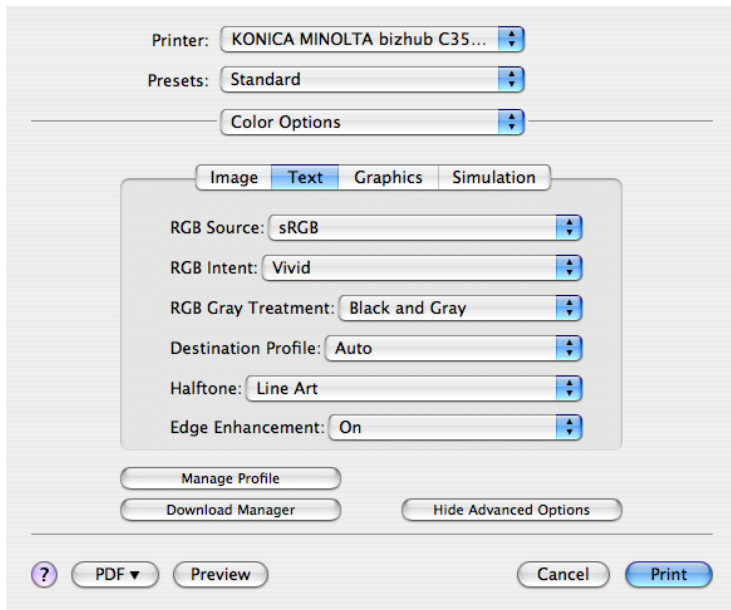
- **Download Manager**

Click this button to start up the installed Download Manager.



*In order to start up Download Manager from the **Advanced Color Options** pane, Download Manager must be copied into the folder at the path **Applications/Download Manager bizhub C35P**. After creating the folder **Download Manager bizhub C35P** in the **Applications** folder, copy Download manager into the created folder.*

## Advanced Color Options/Text



- **RGB Source**

Allows you to select RGB color profiles for text.

- **RGB Intent**

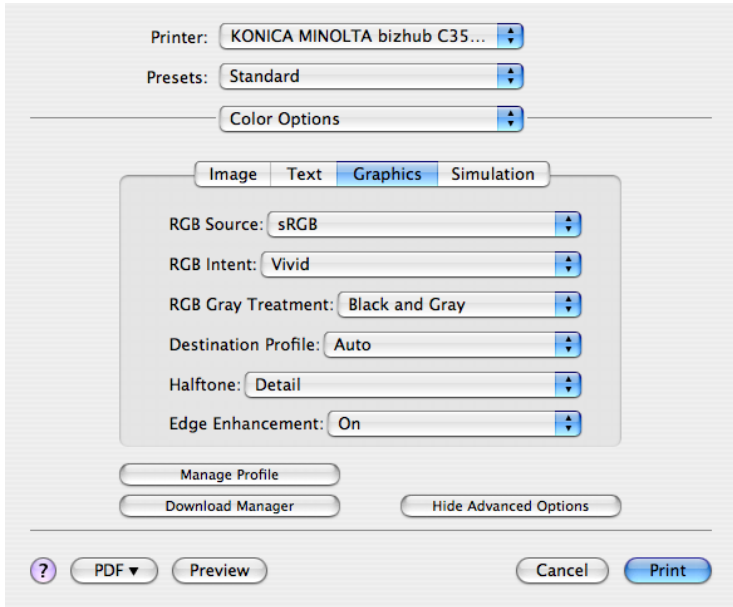
Allows you to select color intent for RGB text.

- **RGB Gray Treatment**  
Allows you to select RGB gray treatment for text.
- **Destination Profile**  
Allows you to select Destination Profile for text.
- **Halftone**  
Allows you to select halftone for text.
- **Edge Enhancement**  
Allows you to select Edge Enhancement for text.
- **Hide Advanced Options**  
Click this button to hide the **Advanced Color Options** pane and display the **Color Options** pane.
- **Manage Profile**  
Click this button to display the Color Profile Management dialog box. From this dialog box, color profiles can be added or deleted to those available as settings for **RGB Source** and **Simulation Profile** of the **Advanced Color Options** pane.
- **Download Manager**  
Click this button to start up the installed Download Manager.



*In order to start up Download Manager from the **Advanced Color Options** pane, Download Manager must be copied into the folder at the path **Applications/Download Manager bizhub C35P**. After creating the folder **Download Manager bizhub C35P** in the **Applications** folder, copy Download manager into the created folder.*

## Advanced Color Options/Graphics



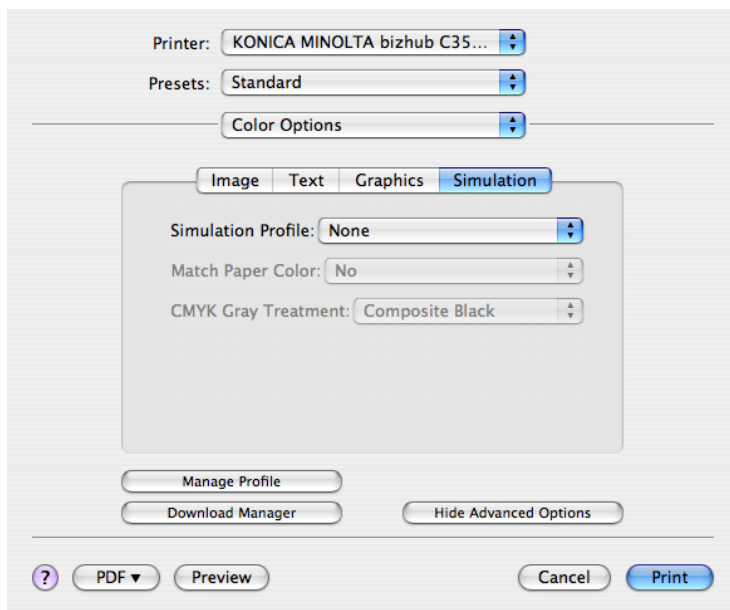
- **RGB Source**  
Allows you to select RGB color profiles for graphics.
- **RGB Intent**  
Allows you to select color intent for RGB graphics.
- **RGB Gray Treatment**  
Allows you to select RGB gray treatment for graphics.
- **Destination Profile**  
Allows you to select Destination Profile for graphics.
- **Halftone**  
Allows you to select halftone for graphics.
- **Edge Enhancement**  
Allows you to select Edge Enhancement for graphics.
- **Hide Advanced Options**  
Click this button to hide the **Advanced Color Options** pane and display the **Color Options** pane.
- **Manage Profile**  
Click this button to display the Color Profile Management dialog box. From this dialog box, color profiles can be added or deleted to those available as settings for **RGB Source** and **Simulation Profile** of the **Advanced Color Options** pane.

- **Download Manager**  
Click this button to start up the installed Download Manager.



*In order to start up Download Manager from the **Advanced Color Options** pane, Download Manager must be copied into the folder at the path **Applications/Download Manager bizhub C35P**. After creating the folder **Download Manager bizhub C35P** in the **Applications** folder, copy Download manager into the created folder.*

## Advanced Color Options/Simulation



- **Simulation Profile**  
Allows you to select color profiles for simulation.
- **Match Paper Color**  
Allows you to set Match Paper Color.
- **CMYK Gray Treatment**  
Allows you to select Simulation gray treatment.
- **Hide Advanced Options**  
Click this button to hide the **Advanced Color Options** pane and display the **Color Options** pane.
- **Manage Profile**  
Click this button to display the Color Profile Management dialog box.

From this dialog box, color profiles can be added or deleted to those available as settings for **RGB Source** and **Simulation Profile** of the **Advanced Color Options** pane.

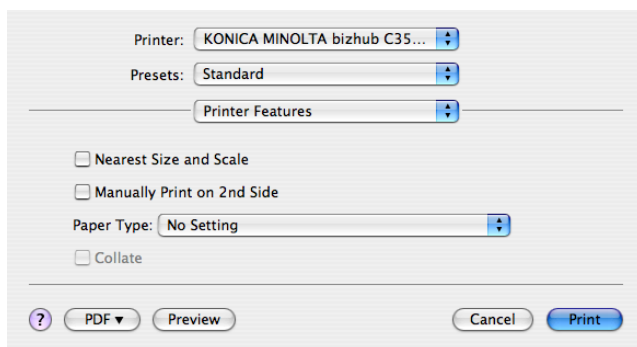
■ **Download Manager**

Click this button to start up the installed Download Manager.



*In order to start up Download Manager from the **Advanced Color Options** pane, Download Manager must be copied into the folder at the path **Applications/Download Manager bizhub C35P**. After creating the folder **Download Manager bizhub C35P** in the **Applications** folder, copy Download manager into the created folder.*

## Printer Features



■ **Nearest Size and Scale**

If no paper tray contains paper of the specified size, the page is automatically enlarged or reduced and paper of the most appropriate size is selected.

■ **Manually Print on 2nd Side**

This feature must be set when you set paper already printed on the front side.

■ **Paper Type**

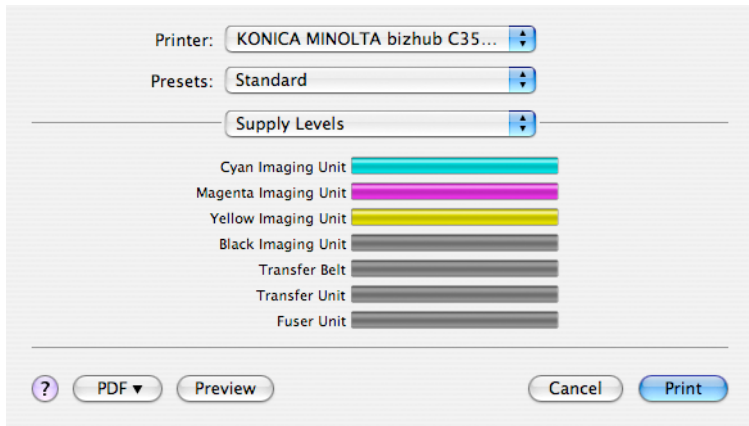
Select the desired paper type from the Paper Type pop-up menu.

■ **Collate**

Select whether or not to use the collate function.

## Supply Levels

The **Supply Levels** section provides information for checking the amount of service life remaining on each consumable.



The **Supply Levels** section appears when a printer is created on Mac OS X 10.4 with a Bonjour, IPP, LPD, Socket connection.

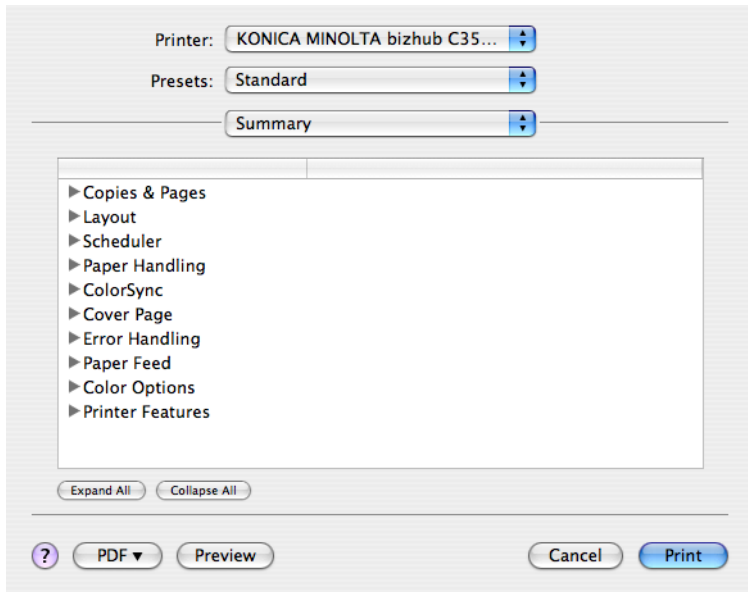


The **Supply Levels** section may not appear depending on the application you use.



## Summary

The **Summary** is used to check the currently selected print settings.



# Specifying Print Settings (Mac OS X 10.5/10.6)

The following dialog box appears when **Print...** is selected from the **File** menu in the application being used.

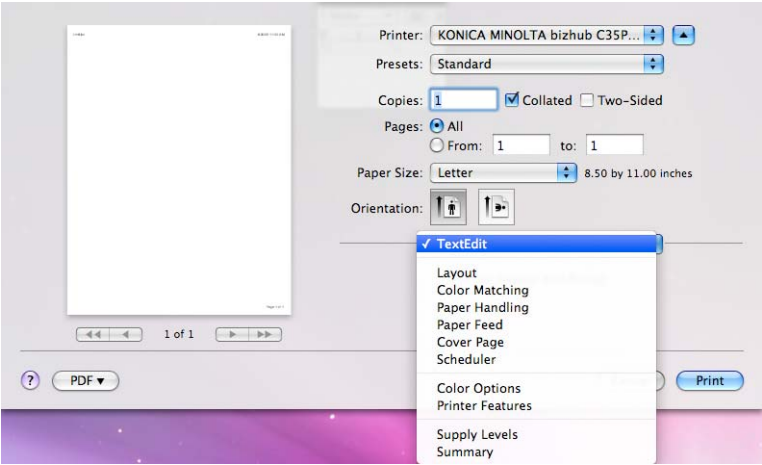
1 Select **Print...** from the **File** menu.

*The **Print** dialog box appears.*

2 Select this printer in the **Printer** pop-up menu.

*The **Print** dialog box is used to specify the following print options.*

## Print Dialog Box



| Section        | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Layout         | This section contains options for specifying the page layout when printing and the setting for double-sided printing. |
| Color Matching | This section contains options for specifying ColorSync settings.  |
| Paper Handling | This section contains options for specifying the pages to be printed and their printing order.                        |
| Paper Feed     | This section contains paper feed options.   |
| Cover Page     | This section contains options for specifying cover page settings.   |

| Section          | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Scheduler        | This section contains options for specifying the print timing and priority of jobs.                     |
| Color Options    | This section contains options for color printing.   |
| Printer Features | This section contains options for specifying paper type and resolution settings.                        |
| Supply Levels    | This section provides information for checking the amount of service life remaining on each consumable. |
| Summary          | This is used to check the current settings.   |



*No warning message will be displayed if options cannot be used together are selected.*

## Common buttons

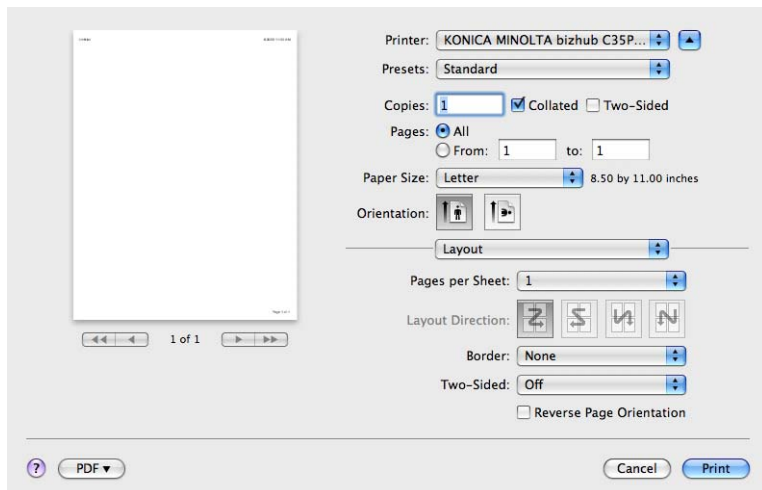
- ? (Help button)  
This displays help information about the Print dialog box.
- PDF  
Click this button to select the PDF menu. The print output can be saved as a PDF file or faxed.
- Cancel  
Click this button to close the Print dialog box without applying any of the settings.
- Print  
Click this button to print using the selected print options.
- Copies  
This specifies the number of copies to be printed. If the **Collated** checkbox is selected, all pages in the documents are printed as sets of print-outs. For example, if 5 is entered for **Copies** and **Collated** is selected, the document is printed five times from the first page to the last page. If **Two-Sided** checkbox is selected, the document is printed on both sides of the paper.
- Pages  
**All:** Prints all pages in the document.  
**From, to:** Specifies the range of pages to be printed.
- Paper Size  
Select the desired paper size from the **Paper Size** pop-up menu.

- Orientation

Select either a vertical or horizontal page orientation for printouts.

## Layout

The **Layout** section is used to specify the page layout when printing and the setting for double-sided printing.



- Pages per Sheet

Specifies the number of pages to be printed on one sheet of paper. For example, if **2** is selected, two pages are printed on one sheet of paper.

- Layout Direction

If you are printing more than one page per sheet, this specifies the direction and order the pages should be arranged on each sheet of paper.

- Border

This prints a border around the image for each of the pages printed on one sheet of paper when more than one page is printed on one sheet of paper.

- Flip horizontally (OS X 10.6 only)

Select whether or not to print the page flipped horizontally.

## ■ Two-Sided

Select the desired setting for double-sided printing.

**Off:** Double-sided printing is not performed.

**Long-edge binding:** Double-sided printing is performed with the binding along the long edge of the paper.

**Short-edge binding:** Double-sided printing is performed with the binding along the short edge of the paper.



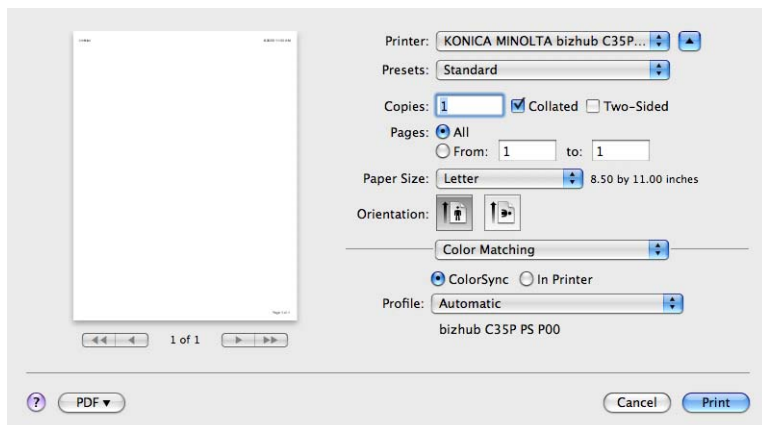
*In order to print on both sides of the paper, the **Duplex Unit** check box must be selected under **Installable Options** (p. 1-60).*

*If **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** is selected although the **Duplex Unit** check box has not been selected, a message appears, indicating that double-sided printing cannot be performed.*

## ■ Reverse Page Orientation

The printing direction is inverted vertically.

## Color Matching



## ■ Color Matching

**ColorSync:** Allows you to select host-based color matching.

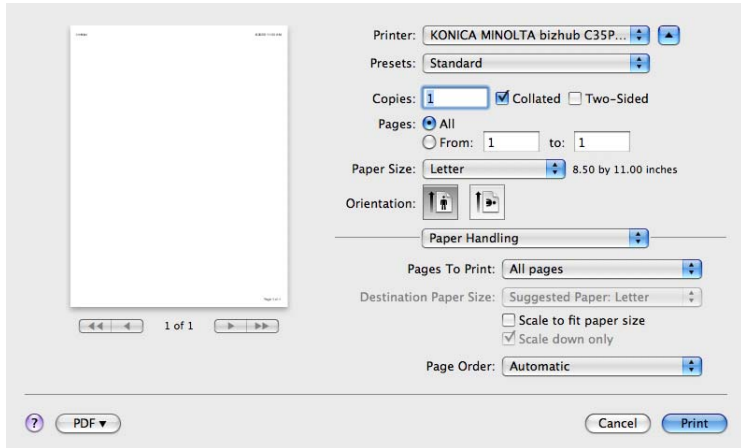
**In Printer:** Allows you to select printer-based color matching.

## ■ Profile

Allows you to select ColorSync Profile.

## Paper Handling

The **Paper Handling** section is used to specify the pages that are to be printed and the order in which the pages are printed.



### ■ Pages To Print

**All pages:** Select this option to print all pages.

**Odd Only:** Select this option to print only the pages with odd page numbers.

**Even Only:** Select this option to print only the pages with even page numbers.

### ■ Destination Paper Size

Select this option to use the document size as created by software applications.

**Scale to fit paper size:** Select this option to fit the document size to the size of paper used by the printer.

Specify the size of paper used by the printer.

**Scale down only:** Select this option to reduce the printing size.

### ■ Page Order

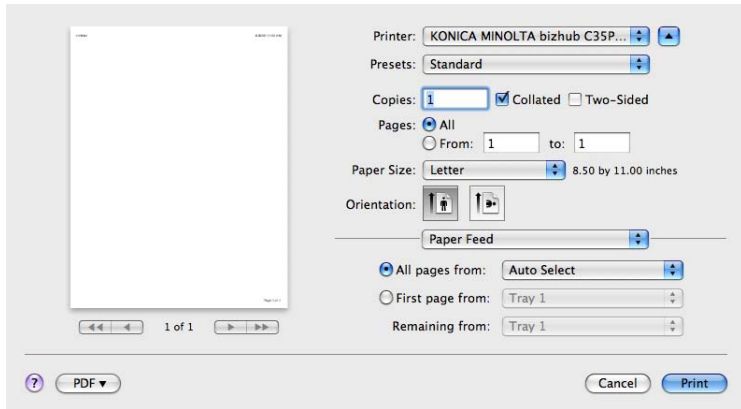
**Automatic:** Select this option to print in the original page order of the document.

**Normal:** Select this option to print in the normal page order.

**Reverse:** Select this option to print in the reverse page order.

## Paper Feed

The **Paper Feed** section is used to specify the paper feed setting.



- All pages from

All pages in the document are printed using the paper in the specified paper tray.

- First page from

The first page of the document is printed on paper from a paper tray different from the tray used to print the rest of the document.

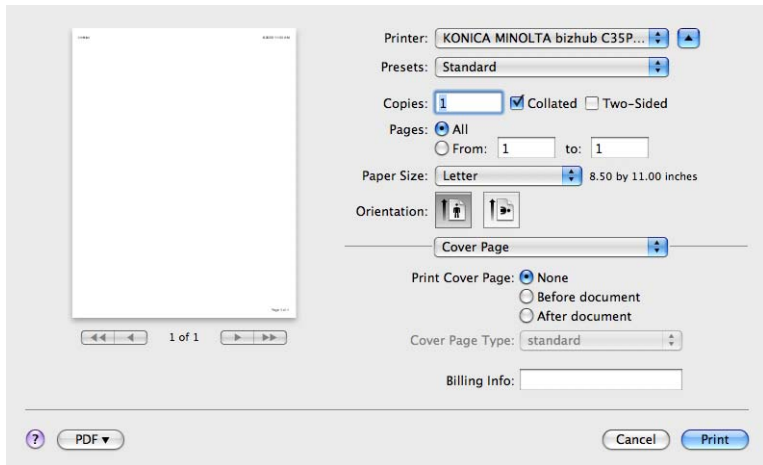
- Remaining from

The rest of the document is printed from the specified paper tray when the first page is to be printed on paper from a different tray.



*If an optional tray is installed, select an **Paper Source Unit** under **Installable Options** (p. 1-60). If an **Paper Source Unit** is not selected, Tray 2 appears in gray and cannot be selected.*

## Cover Page

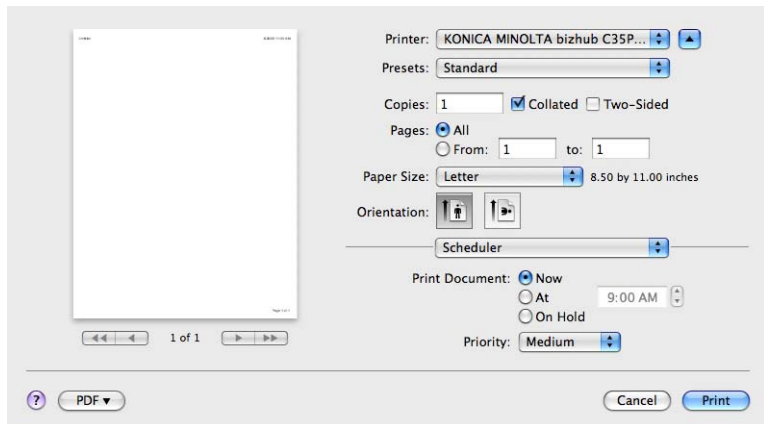


- **Print Cover Page**  
Allows you to set cover page before or after document.
- **Cover Page Type**  
Allows you to select cover page type.
- **Billing Info**  
Allows you to set billing information printed on cover page.



## Scheduler

The **Scheduler** section is used to specify the timing and priority for printing jobs.



### ■ Print Document

**Now:** Select this option to begin printing immediately.

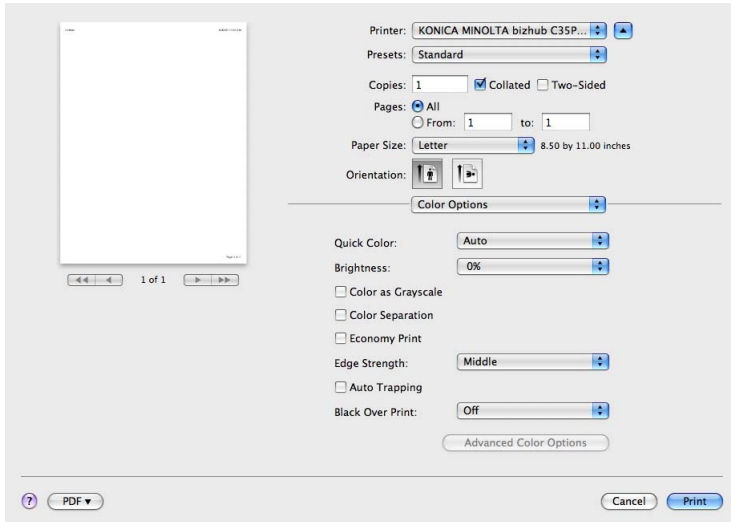
**At:** Specify the time to begin printing.

**On Hold:** Select this option to hold the print job.

### ■ Priority

Select the priority for printing jobs that are being held.

# Color Options



- **Quick Color**  
Allows you to select a color preset.
- **Brightness**  
Allows you to set Brightness.
- **Color as Grayscale**  
Allows you to set Grayscale color.
- **Color Separation**  
Allows you to set Color Separation.
- **Economy Print**  
Allows you to set Economy Print mode.
- **Edge Strength**  
Allows you to select Edge Strength.
- **Auto Trapping**  
Allows you to select whether or not neighboring colors are printed super-imposed in order to prevent white space around images.

## ■ Black Over Print

Allows you to specify whether black objects are printed (superimposed) on a neighboring color in order to prevent white space around black characters or figures.

If **Text/Figure** is selected, superimposed printing is applied to text and graphics.

If **Text** is selected, superimposed printing is applied to text.

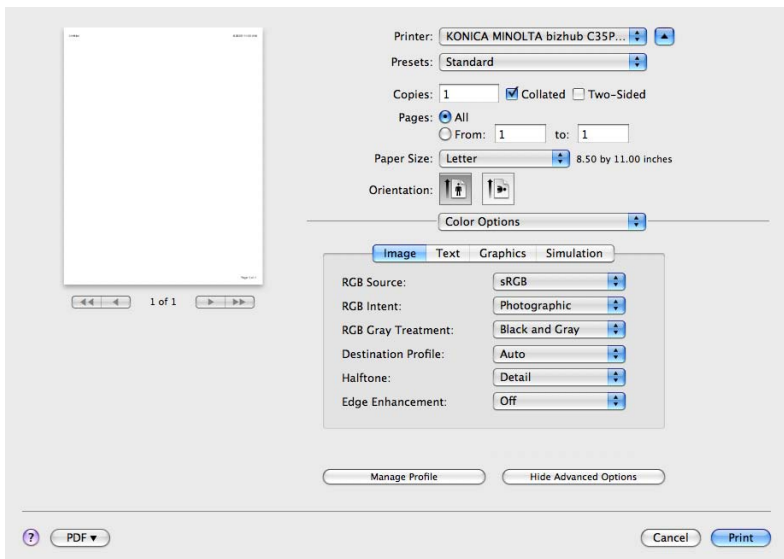
## ■ Advanced Color Options

Click this button to display the **Advanced Color Options** pane.



*This button enables when **Custom** is selected under **Quick Color**.*

## Advanced Color Options/Image



## ■ RGB Source

Allows you to select RGB color profiles for images.

## ■ RGB Intent

Allows you to select color intent for RGB images.

## ■ RGB Gray Treatment

Allows you to select RGB gray treatment for images.

## ■ Destination Profile

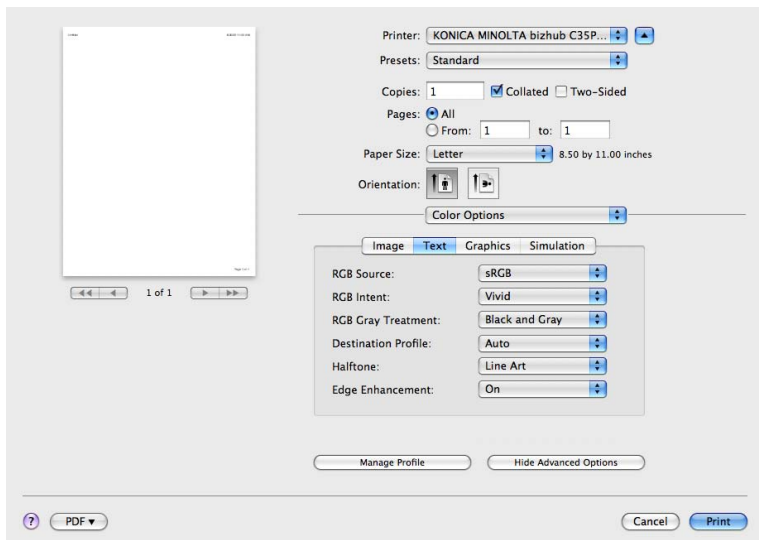
Allows you to select Destination Profile for images.

## ■ Halftone

Allows you to select halftone for images.

- **Edge Enhancement**  
Allows you to select Edge Enhancement for images.
- **Hide Advanced Options**  
Click this button to hide the **Advanced Color Options** pane and display the **Color Options** pane.
- **Manage Profile**  
Click this button to display the **Color Profile Management** dialog box. From this dialog box, color profiles can be added or deleted to those available as settings for **RGB Source** and **Simulation Profile** of the **Advanced Color Options** pane.

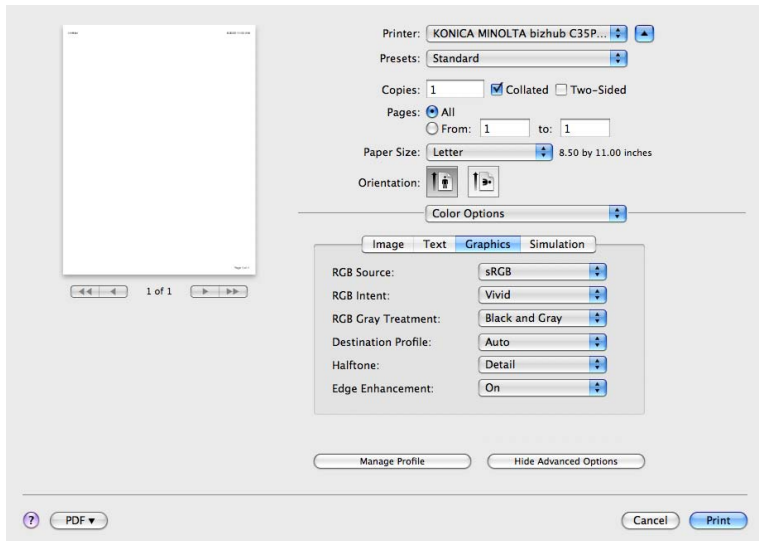
## Advanced Color Options/Text



- **RGB Source**  
Allows you to select RGB color profiles for text.
- **RGB Intent**  
Allows you to select color intent for RGB text.
- **RGB Gray Treatment**  
Allows you to select RGB gray treatment for text.
- **Destination Profile**  
Allows you to select Destination Profile for text.
- **Halftone**  
Allows you to select halftone for text.

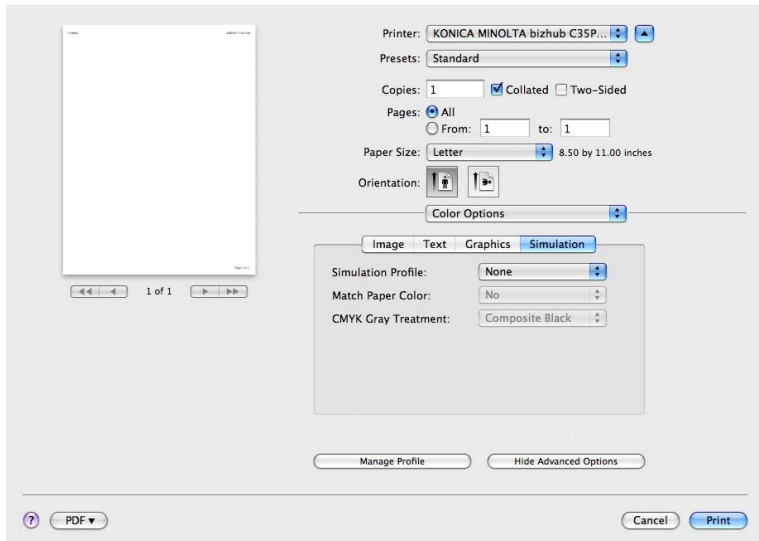
- **Edge Enhancement**  
Allows you to select Edge Enhancement for text.
- **Hide Advanced Options**  
Click this button to hide the **Advanced Color Options** pane and display the **Color Options** pane.
- **Manage Profile**  
Click this button to display the **Color Profile Management** dialog box. From this dialog box, color profiles can be added or deleted to those available as settings for **RGB Source** and **Simulation Profile** of the **Advanced Color Options** pane.

## Advanced Color Options/Graphics



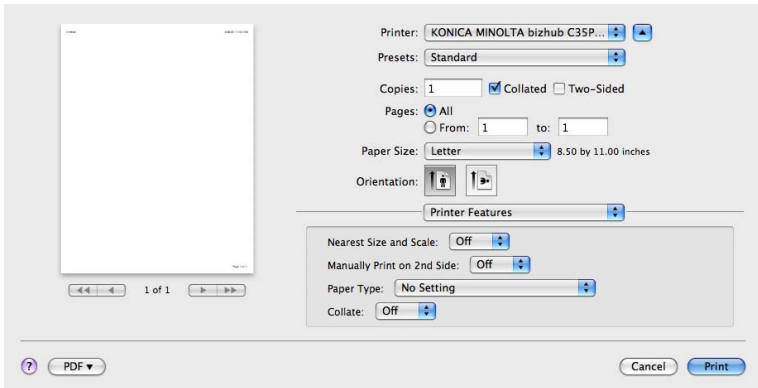
- **RGB Source**  
Allows you to select RGB color profiles for graphics.
- **RGB Intent**  
Allows you to select color intent for RGB graphics.
- **RGB Gray Treatment**  
Allows you to select RGB gray treatment for graphics.
- **Destination Profile**  
Allows you to select Destination Profile for graphics.
- **Halftone**  
Allows you to select halftone for graphics.
- **Edge Enhancement**  
Allows you to select Edge Enhancement for graphics.
- **Hide Advanced Options**  
Click this button to hide the **Advanced Color Options** pane and display the **Color Options** pane.
- **Manage Profile**  
Click this button to display the **Color Profile Management** dialog box. From this dialog box, color profiles can be added or deleted to those available as settings for **RGB Source** and **Simulation Profile** of the **Advanced Color Options** pane.

## Advanced Color Options/Simulation



- **Simulation Profiles**  
Allows you to select color profiles for simulation.
- **Match Paper Color**  
Allows you to set Match Paper Color.
- **CMYK Gray Treatment**  
Allows you to select Simulation gray treatment.
- **Hide Advanced Options**  
Click this button to hide the **Advanced Color Options** pane and display the **Color Options** pane.
- **Manage Profile**  
Click this button to display the **Color Profile Management** dialog box. From this dialog box, color profiles can be added or deleted to those available as settings for **RGB Source** and **Simulation Profile** of the **Advanced Color Options** pane.

# Printer Features



## ■ Nearest Size and Scale

If no paper tray contains paper of the specified size, the page is automatically enlarged or reduced and paper of the most appropriate size is selected.

## ■ Manually Print on 2nd Side

This feature must be set when you set paper already printed on the front side.

## ■ Paper Type

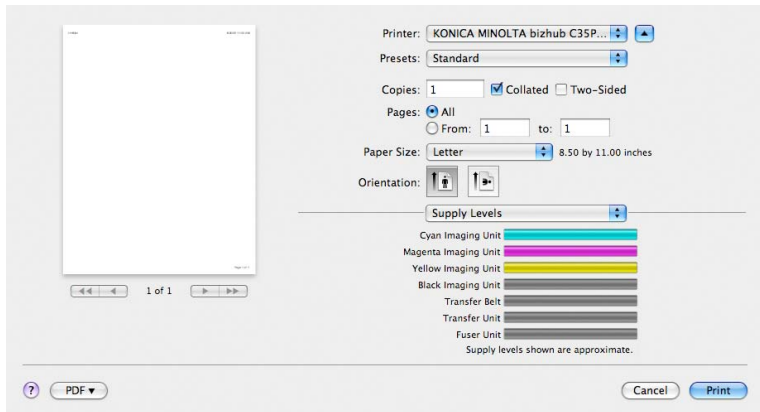
Select the desired paper type from the **Paper Type** pop-up menu.

## ■ Collate

Select whether or not to use the collate function.



# Supply Levels



The **Supply Levels** section provides information for checking the amount of service life remaining on each consumable.



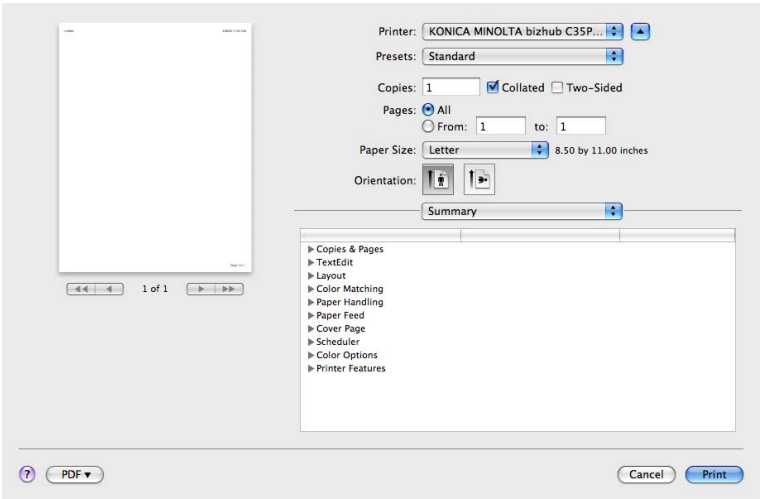
*The **Supply Levels** section appears when a printer is created on Mac OS X 10.5 with a Bonjour, IPP, LPD, Socket connection.*



*The **Supply Levels** section may not appear depending on the application you use.*

# Summary

The **Summary** is used to check the currently selected print settings.



# Specifying the Color Profile

Use Download Manager to download any color profile to the hard disk or the CompactFlash card of the machine. By adding color profiles to the printer driver, printing can be performed by specifying any color profile.



*The procedure for specifying the color profile on Mac OS X 10.5 is described below.*

## Preparation

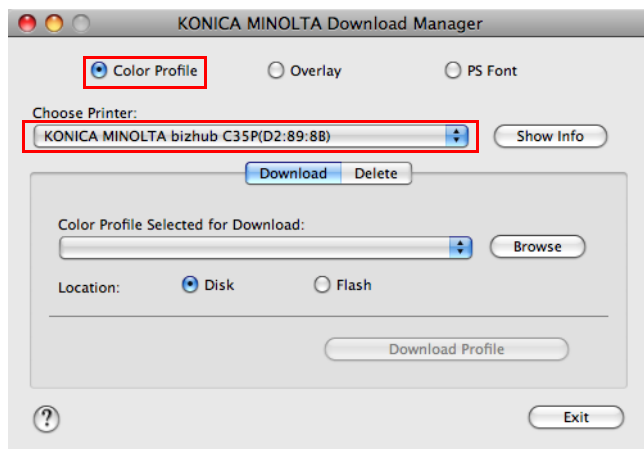
Install the printer driver, and then add the printer. For details on adding the printer, refer to "Printer Settings (Mac OS X 10.5/10.6)" on page 1-45.

## Downloading Color Profiles



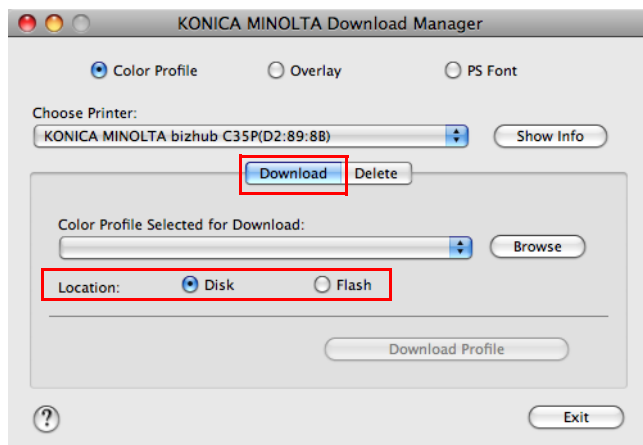
*For details on using Download Manager, refer to the Help for Download Manager.*

- 1 Start Download Manager.
- 2 In the Download Manager window, select **Color Profile**. Then, from the **Choose Printer** list, select the printer where the color profile is to be saved.




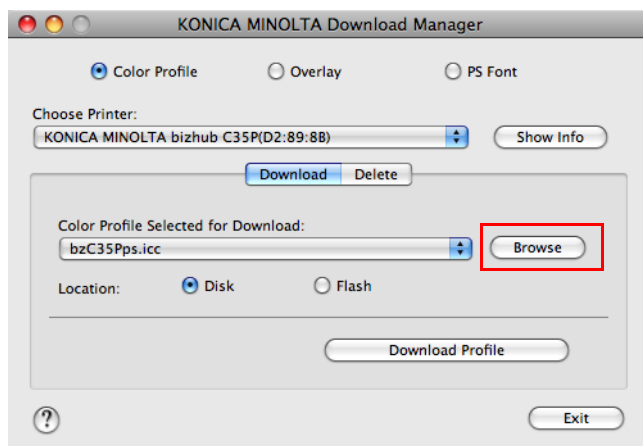
- 3 Click **Download**, and then select **Disk** or **Flash** beside **Location**.

 "Flash" means CompactFlash card.



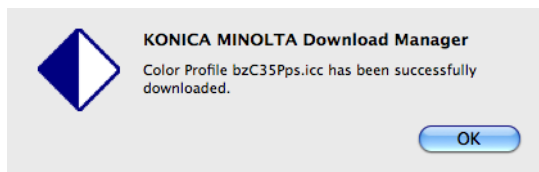
- 4 Click **Browse**, and then select the color profile to be downloaded.

 File names for color profiles should be in the following format: 8 or less ASCII characters + 3 or less ASCII extension characters.



- 5 Click **Download Profile**.  
Downloading of the color profile to the hard disk or the CompactFlash card of the machine.

6 Click **OK**.



7 Click **Exit**.



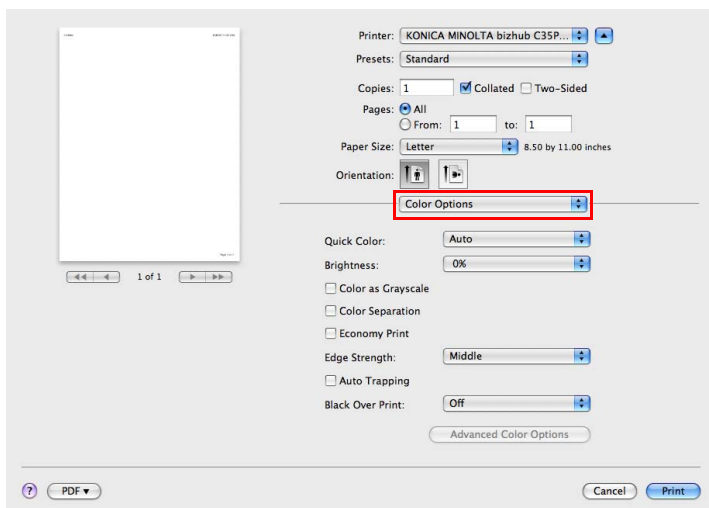
*Next, specify the printer driver settings.*

## Specifying Printer Driver Settings

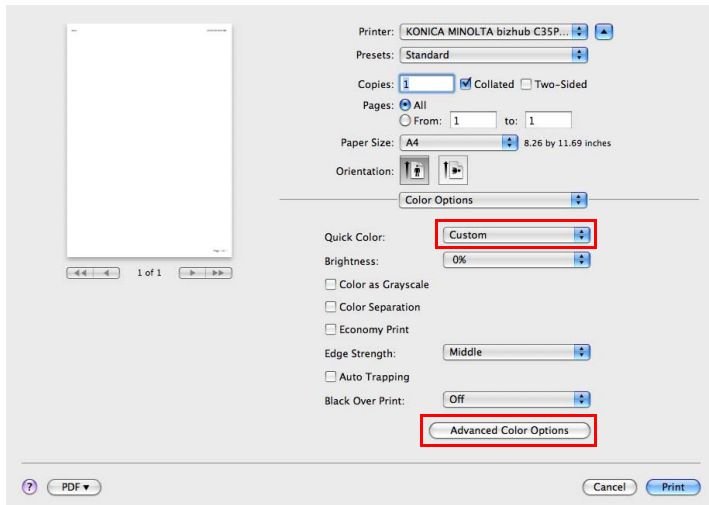
Add the color profile to the printer driver.

1 Display the Print dialog box for the application.

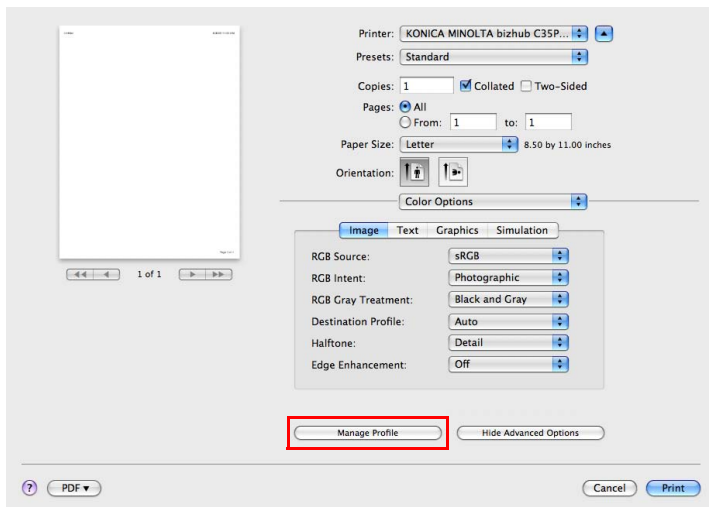
2 Select **Color Options**.



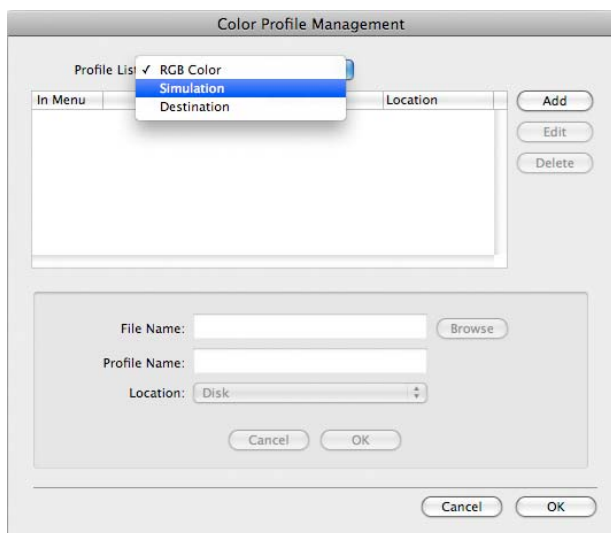
- 3 Select **Custom** beside **Quick Color**, and then click **Advanced Color Options**.



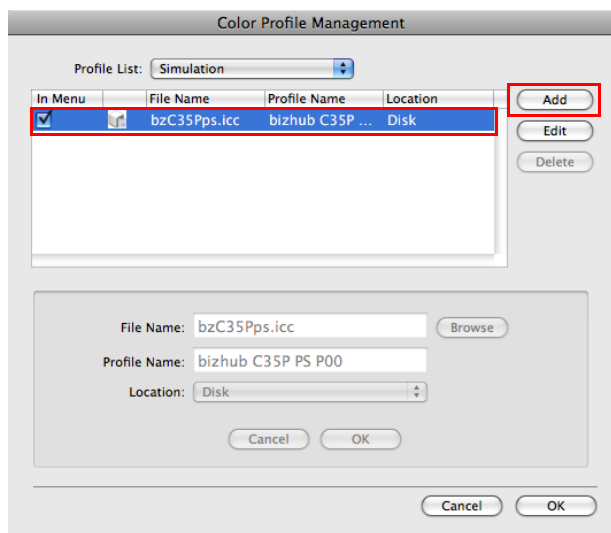
- 4 Click **Manage Profile**.



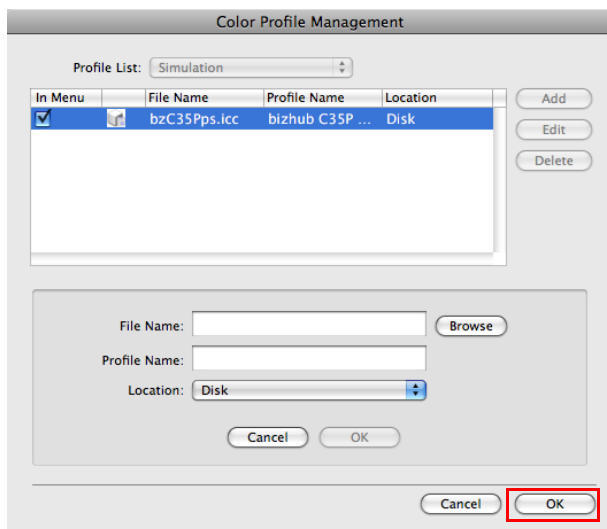
- 5 From **Profile List**, select the type of profile to use.



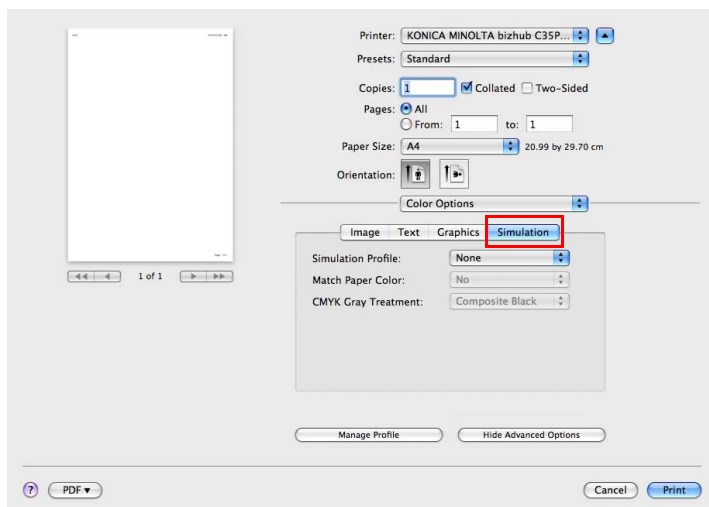
- 6 Select the color profile to use from the list, and then click **Add**.



7 Click **OK**.

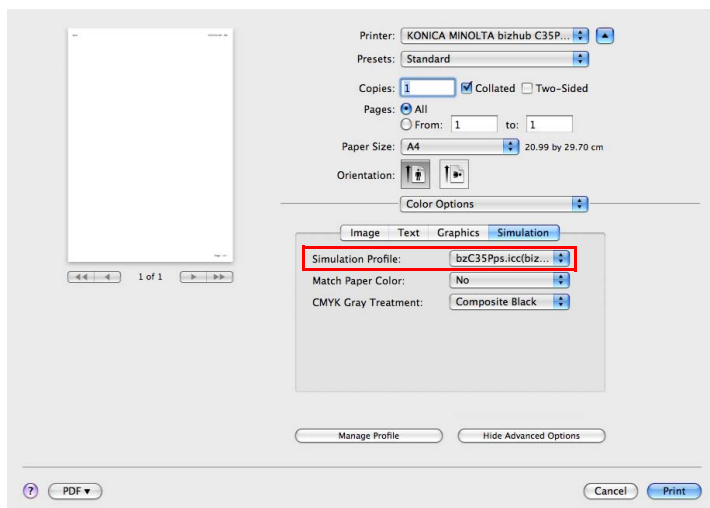


8 Select **Simulation**.





## 9 Select the added color profile before printing.



# Troubleshooting

| Symptom   | Solution  |
|---|---|
| The setting in the saved presets are not applied.   | Depending on the functions selected for the printer, some preset settings are not saved.  |
| Media type error appears.   | If a media type, such as "Thick paper", is specified for Tray 1 or Tray 2, a media type error appears and the printer stops. Be sure to specify a media type supported by Tray 1 or Tray 2.   |
| The printer stops responding.   | Depending on the operating system, some paper size and paper type combinations are not permitted. If the job was sent with an incorrect combination of settings, the printer stops responding. Be sure to print with the correct combination of paper size and paper type settings.   |
| The printer is not detected using Rendezvous/Bonjour.   | Using PageScope Web Connection, select the <b>Enable</b> on the <b>Bonjour</b> page. For details, refer to page 7-138.  |
| Checking the version number of the printer driver and PPD file.                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ For Mac OS X 10.4:<br/>Select the printer from Printer Setup Utility, and then click <b>Show Info</b> in the <b>Printers</b> menu. In the pop-up menu of the Printer Info dialog box, select <b>Name &amp; Location</b>.</li> <li>■ For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:<br/>Select the printer from <b>Print &amp; Fax</b>, and then click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>. Click <b>General</b> tab.</li> </ul> |
| The dialog box may appear unusual when selecting other manufacturer printer and back to bizhub. | Close the Print dialog box, and then open it again.   |
| The custom paper size is different from the size that was set.                                  | Depending on the operating system, the custom paper size settings may change slightly due to OS round of errors in unit conversion (for example, 5.80" may change to 5.79").  |

| Symptom  | Solution  |
|--|---|
| When printing 2 pages on a single sheet of paper, the pages are not centered on the paper.                                     | Depending on the operating system, the pages are not centered on the paper when printing two pages on a single sheet of paper with the following paper sizes.<br><br>Legal, Letter Plus, Foolscap, Government Legal, Statement, Folio |
| While printing from Acrobat Reader, the pages are not correctly collated or the print job is cancelled.                        | If a printing error occurs with Acrobat Reader, print using the preview feature provided by the operating system.   |
| When Mac OS X 10.4 is used to send a job with a custom paper size that has a width of 21.6 cm, Letter-size paper is requested. | Change the width of the custom paper size to 21.59 cm, and then try sending the job again.  |

# *Operation on Linux* 2

# System Requirements for the Printer Driver

Before installing the printer driver, make sure that your system meets the following system requirements.

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Operating systems                   | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop<br>SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 |
| Connecting the computer and printer | USB connection, Network connection (10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T)    |
| RAM                                 | More than OS recommendation (128 MB or more is recommended)            |
| Network                             | LPR  |
|                                     | AppSocket/HP JetDirect   |
|                                     | IPP  |
| Available hard disk space           | 256 MB or more   |



*As an example, the descriptions of the operations for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 are provided in this chapter.*

## Installing PPD File From the Command Line



*Before proceeding with the installation, be sure to exit all running applications.*



*Root privileges are required in order to install ppd file.*

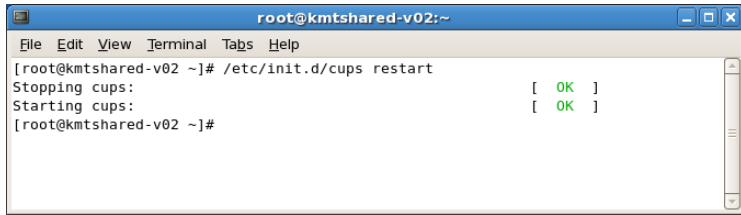
- 1 Copy the ppd file from the Printer Driver CD/DVD to the “/usr/share/cups/model” on the computer.



*A ppd file for each language is available in the corresponding “Drivers/LinuxPPD/<language>” folder on the CD/DVD. Use the appropriate ppd file for the language.*

- 2 From the Main Menu, select **Applications**, then **Accessories**, then **Terminal**.

- 3 Enter the command “/etc/init.d/cups restart”.



```
root@kmtshared-v02:~  
File Edit View Terminal Tabs Help  
[root@kmtshared-v02 ~]# /etc/init.d/cups restart  
Stopping cups: [ OK ]  
Starting cups: [ OK ]  
[root@kmtshared-v02 ~]#
```

- 4 Quit Terminal.

## Adding the Printer Using Printer configuration



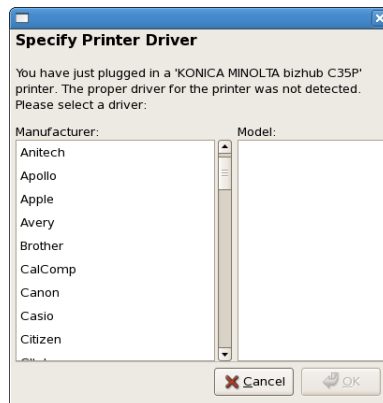
*Before proceeding with the installation, be sure to exit all running applications.*



*Root privileges are required in order to add the printer.*

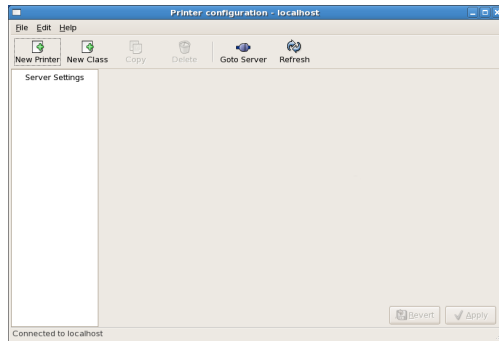
- 1 Connect the printer to a computer or the network.

- With a USB connection, the following dialog box appears. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box.



- 2 Insert the Printer Driver CD/DVD in the CD/DVD drive of your computer.
- 3 From the **System** menu, select **Administration**, then **Printing**.

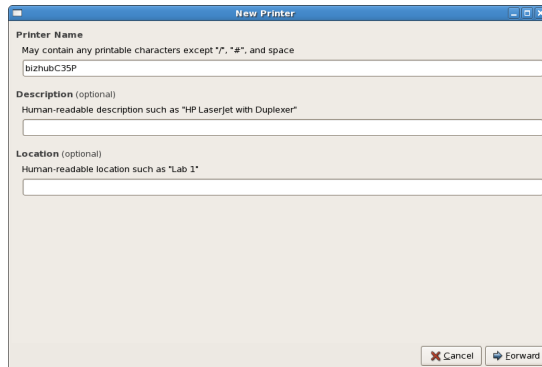
The **Printer configuration** dialog box appears.



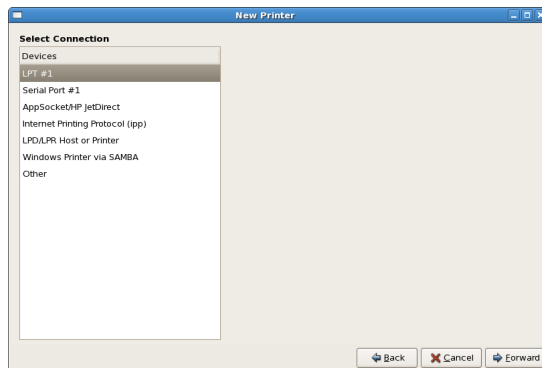
- 4 Click **New Printer**.

The **New Printer** dialog box appears.

- 5 Enter the **Printer name**, **Description**, and **Location**, and then click **Forward**.



The printers that can be used are automatically searched for and listed in the left pane of the dialog box.



- 6 From the left pane of the dialog box, select the port for the printer to be installed.
- For a USB connection, select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P USB #1**.
  - For a printer connected to the network, select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P <IP address>**.
  - If the desired printer is not listed, select a device port from the **Devices** list. In the right pane of the dialog box, type in the host name or IP address for the printer.

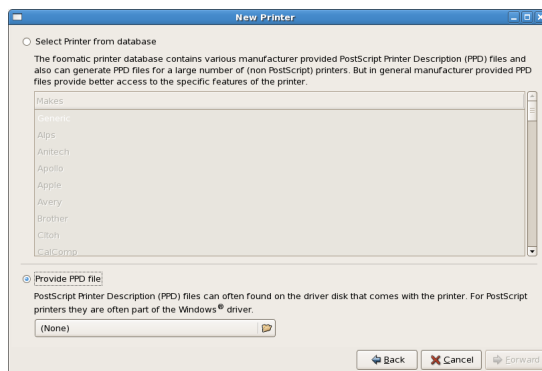


- TCP/IP: **AppSocket/HP jetDirect, Internet Printing Protocol (ipp) or LPD/LPR Host or Printer**

- Host name of Internet Printing Protocol (ipp): <IP address>/ipp

- 7 Click **Forward**.

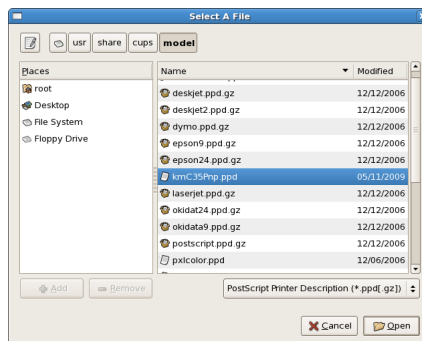
- 8 Select **Provide PPD file**.



- 9 Click the folder icon.

*The **Select A File** dialog box appears.*

- 10 Select the PPD file.



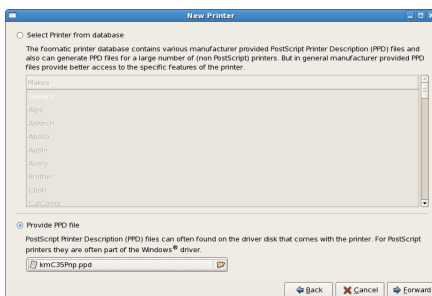




A *ppd* file for each language is available in the corresponding "Drivers/LinuxPPD/<language>" folder on the CD/DVD. Use the appropriate *ppd* file for the language.

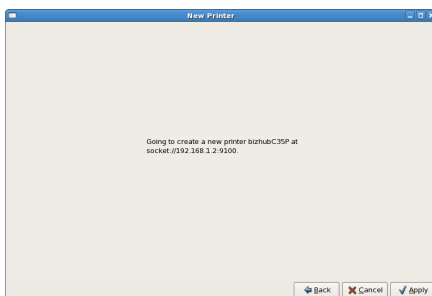
## 11 Click **Open**.

The **Select A File** dialog box is closed, and the name of the selected PPD file is displayed.



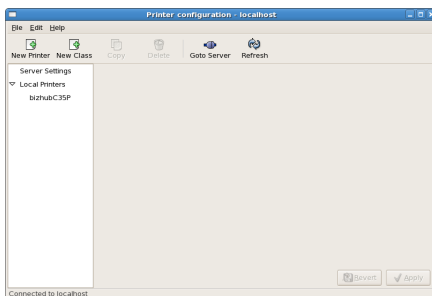
## 12 Click **Forward**.

A confirmation message appears.



## 13 Click **Apply**.

The following dialog box appears.



# Adding the Printer on the CUPS Administration Web page



*Before proceeding with the installation, be sure to exit all running applications.*



*Root privileges are required in order to add the printer.*

1 Connect the printer to a computer or the network.

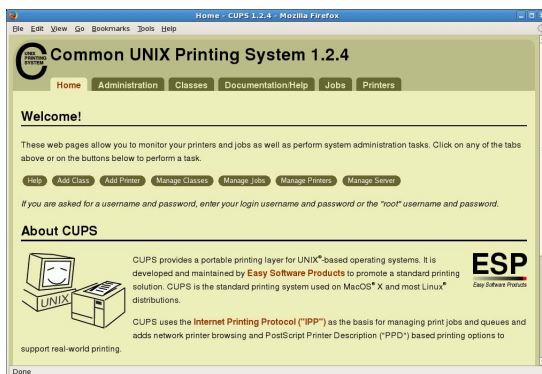
- With a USB connection, the following dialog box appears. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box.



2 Start up the Web browser.

3 Enter the URL "http://localhost:631".

*The CUPS Administration Web page appears.*



4 Click **Add Printer**.

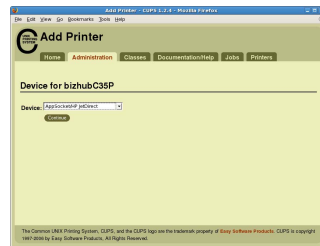
5 Enter the **Printer name**, **Location**, and **Description**, and then click **Continue**.



6 Select a Device Port from the **Device** list, then click **Continue**.

- **TCP/IP: AppSocket/HP JetDirect, Internet Printing Protocol (http) or LPD/LPR Host or Printer**

- **USB: USB Printer #1**



7 For a USB connection, skip to step 7. Enter the device URI in the following form: `socket://<Printer IP or Printer Hostname>[:port]`

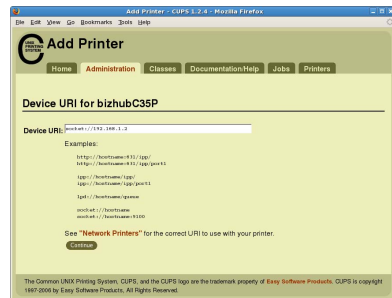


*Example:*

*Using Printer IP - `socket://192.168.1.190:9100`*

*Using printer Hostname - `socket://Hostname:9100`*

*Hostname may be substituted by IP Address, and Port is optional.*

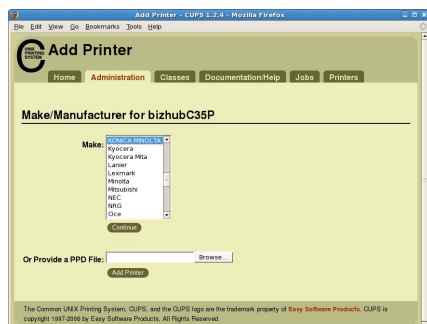


8 Click **Continue**.

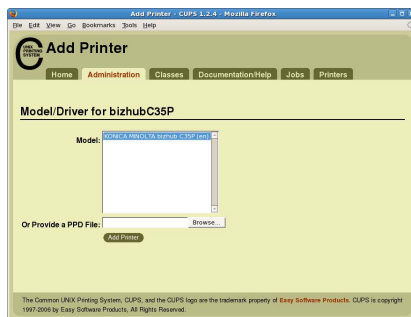
9 Select **KONICA MINOLTA**, click **Continue**



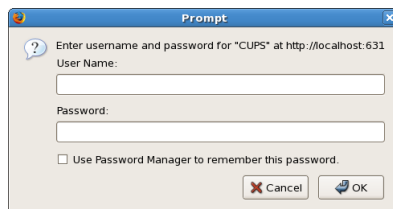
*A `ppd` file for each language is available in the corresponding "Drivers/LinuxPPD/<language>" folder on the CD/DVD. Use the appropriate `ppd` file for the language.*



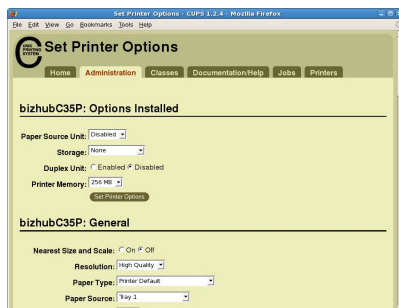
- 10 Select **KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P (en)**, then click **Add Printer**.



*A pop-up window appears.*



- 11 Enter the user name and password for using root privileges, and then click **OK**. The following message appears.



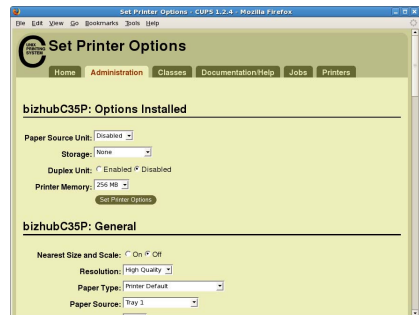
# Specifying Printer Driver Settings

## Displaying the Settings Page

- 1 Start up the Web browser.
- 2 Enter the URL "http://localhost:631", and then click **Manage Printers**.  
*The following window appears.*



- 3 Click **Set Printer Options**.  
*The printer driver settings page appears.*



# Printer Driver Settings

## Options Installed

| Parameters        | Settings   |
|-------------------|--|
| Paper Source Unit | Select <b>Unit 3</b> if an optional lower feeder unit PF-P09 for the printer has been installed.<br><br>■ The default setting is <b>Disabled</b> . |
| Storage           | Select <b>None</b> , <b>CF (1GB Over)</b> or <b>HDD</b> for the storage unit that is installed.<br><br>■ The default setting is <b>None</b> .      |
| Duplex Unit       | Select <b>Enabled</b> if the duplex unit for the printer has been installed.<br><br>■ The default setting is <b>Disabled</b> .                     |
| Printer Memory    | Select <b>256 MB</b> , or <b>768 MB</b> if an optional memory for the printer has been installed.<br><br>■ The default setting is <b>256 MB</b> .  |

## General

| Parameters             | Settings   |
|------------------------|--|
| Nearest Size and Scale | If no paper tray contains paper of the specified size, the page is automatically enlarged or reduced and paper of the most appropriate size is selected.<br><br>■ The default setting is <b>Off</b> .  |
| Resolution             | Displays the image resolution (High Quality) for printing.   |
| Paper Type             | Specifies the paper type as <b>Printer Default</b> , <b>Plain Paper</b> , <b>Recycled</b> , <b>Glossy</b> , <b>Glossy 2</b> , <b>Label</b> , <b>Thick 1 (91 - 150g/m<sup>2</sup>)</b> , <b>Thick 2 (151 - 210g/m<sup>2</sup>)</b> , <b>Letterhead</b> , <b>Envelope</b> , <b>Postcard</b> , <b>Single Side Only (60 - 90g/m<sup>2</sup>)</b> , or <b>Special Paper (60 - 90g/m<sup>2</sup>)</b> .<br><br>■ The default setting is <b>Printer Default</b> . |

| Parameters                 | Settings  |
|----------------------------|---|
| Paper Source               | Specifies the paper source as <b>Tray 1</b> , <b>Tray 2</b> , <b>Tray 3</b> , <b>Tray 1 (Manual Feed)</b> , or <b>Auto</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Tray 1</b> .                                      |
| Manually Print on 2nd side | Select whether or not to print on the back side of paper that has already been printed on.<br>■ The default setting is <b>Off</b> .   |
| Paper Sizes                | Specifies the paper size. An irregular paper size cannot be selected.   |
| Collate                    | If <b>On</b> is selected, all pages in the documents are printed as sets of printouts.<br>■ The default setting is <b>Off</b> .   |
| Duplex Options             | Specifies the duplex print binding position as <b>Simplex</b> , <b>Long Edge</b> , or <b>Short Edge</b> , if the duplex unit for the printer has been installed.<br>■ The default setting is <b>Simplex</b> . |
| Select Color               | Specifies the color for printing as <b>Color</b> or <b>Grayscale</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Color</b> .   |
| Color Separation           | Specifies the color separation as <b>On</b> or <b>Off</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Off</b> .  |
| Brightness                 | Specifies the brightness of the image as <b>-15%</b> , <b>-10%</b> , <b>-5%</b> , <b>0%</b> , <b>5%</b> , <b>10%</b> , or <b>15%</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>0%</b> .                                |
| Edge Strength              | Set the edge strength to <b>Off</b> , <b>Low</b> , <b>Middle</b> or <b>High</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Middle</b> .   |
| Economy Print              | Select whether or not economy printing is used.<br>■ The default setting is <b>Off</b> .  |
| Auto Trapping              | Select whether or not neighboring colors are printed superimposed in order to prevent white space around images.<br>■ The default setting is <b>Off</b> .   |

| Parameters       | Settings   |
|------------------|--|
| Black Over Print | <p>Specify whether black objects are printed (superimposed) on a neighboring color in order to prevent white space around black characters or figures.</p> <p>If <b>Text/Figure</b> is selected, superimposed printing is applied to text and graphics.</p> <p>If <b>Text</b> is selected, superimposed printing is applied to text.</p> <p>■ The default setting is <b>Off</b>.</p> |

## Image Options

| Parameters               | Settings   |
|--------------------------|--|
| Image RGB Source         | <p>Specifies RGB source for image as <b>None</b>, <b>sRGB</b>, <b>Adobe RGB (1998)</b>, <b>Apple RGB</b>, <b>ColorMatch RGB</b>, or <b>Blue Adjust RGB</b>.</p> <p>■ The default setting is <b>sRGB</b>.</p> |
| Image RGB Intent         | <p>Specifies RGB intent for image as <b>Vivid</b>, <b>Photographic</b>, <b>Relative Color</b>, or <b>Absolute Color</b>.</p> <p>■ The default setting is <b>Photographic</b>.</p>                            |
| Image RGB Gray Treatment | <p>Specifies the RGB Gray Treatment as <b>Composite Black</b>, <b>Black and Gray</b>, or <b>Black Only</b>.</p> <p>■ The default setting is <b>Black and Gray</b>.</p>                                       |
| Image Halftone           | <p>Specifies the halftone for image as <b>Line Art</b>, <b>Detail</b>, or <b>Smooth</b>.</p> <p>■ The default setting is <b>Detail</b>.</p>  |
| Image Edge Enhancement   | <p>Select whether image edges are emphasized.</p> <p>■ The default setting is <b>Off</b>.</p>  |



## Text Options

| Parameters              | Settings  |
|-------------------------|---|
| Text RGB Source         | Specifies RGB source for text as <b>None</b> , <b>sRGB</b> , <b>Adobe RGB (1998)</b> , <b>Apple RGB</b> , <b>ColorMatch RGB</b> , or <b>Blue Adjust RGB</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>sRGB</b> . |
| Text RGB Intent         | Specifies RGB intent for text as <b>Vivid</b> , <b>Photographic</b> , <b>Relative Color</b> , or <b>Absolute Color</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Vivid</b> .                                     |
| Text RGB Gray Treatment | Specifies the RGB Gray Treatment as <b>Composite Black</b> , <b>Black and Gray</b> , or <b>Black Only</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Black and Gray</b> .   |
| Text Halftone           | Specifies the halftone for text as <b>Line Art</b> , <b>Detail</b> , or <b>Smooth</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Line Art</b> .   |
| Text Edge Enhancement   | Select whether text edges are emphasized.<br>■ The default setting is <b>On</b> .   |

## Graphics Options

| Parameters                  | Settings   |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Graphics RGB Source         | Specifies RGB source for graphic as <b>None</b> , <b>sRGB</b> , <b>Adobe RGB (1998)</b> , <b>Apple RGB</b> , <b>ColorMatch RGB</b> , or <b>Blue Adjust RGB</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>sRGB</b> . |
| Graphics RGB Intent         | Specifies RGB intent for graphic as <b>Vivid</b> , <b>Photographic</b> , <b>Relative Color</b> , or <b>Absolute Color</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Vivid</b> .                                     |
| Graphics RGB Gray Treatment | Specifies the RGB Gray Treatment as <b>Composite Black</b> , <b>Black and Gray</b> , or <b>Black Only</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Black and Gray</b> .  |

| Parameters                | Settings   |
|---------------------------|--|
| Graphics Halftone         | Specifies the halftone for graphic as <b>Line Art</b> , <b>Detail</b> or <b>Smooth</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Detail</b> . |
| Graphics Edge Enhancement | Select whether graphic edges are emphasized.<br>■ The default setting is <b>On</b> .   |

## Simulation

| Parameters          | Settings  |
|---------------------|---|
| Simulation Profile  | Specifies the simulation profile as <b>None</b> , <b>SWOP</b> , <b>Euroscale</b> , <b>Commercial Press</b> , <b>Japan Color</b> , <b>DIC</b> , or <b>TOYO</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>None</b> . |
| Match Paper Color   | Specifies the Match Paper Color.<br>■ The default setting is <b>Off</b> .   |
| CMYK Gray Treatment | Specifies simulation gray treatment as <b>Composite Black</b> , <b>Black and Gray</b> , or <b>Black Only</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>Composite Black</b> .                                       |

## Banners

| Parameters      | Settings   |
|-----------------|--|
| Starting Banner | Specifies the starting banner as <b>none</b> , <b>classified</b> , <b>confidential</b> , <b>mls</b> , <b>secret</b> , <b>selinux</b> , <b>standard</b> , <b>te</b> , <b>topsecret</b> , or <b>unclassified</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>none</b> . |
| Ending Banner   | Specifies the ending banner as <b>none</b> , <b>classified</b> , <b>confidential</b> , <b>mls</b> , <b>secret</b> , <b>selinux</b> , <b>standard</b> , <b>te</b> , <b>topsecret</b> , or <b>unclassified</b> .<br>■ The default setting is <b>none</b> .   |

# Printing a Document

The contents and available options that appear in the print dialog box may vary depending on the application being used.

## Example Using OpenOffice



*The procedure for printing on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with OpenOffice 2.0.4 is described below. The following procedure or some steps may be different depending on the version of the operating system being used.*

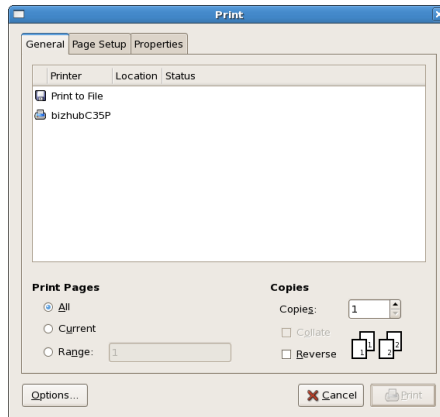


*First, add the printer to the system.*

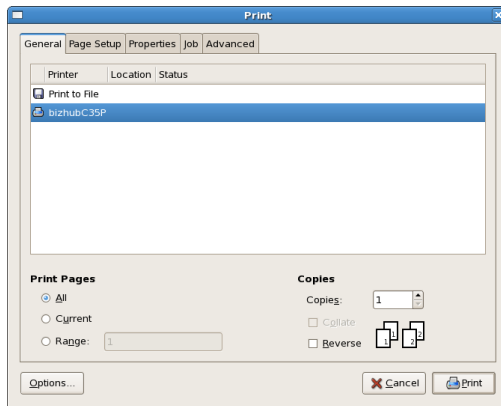
*For details on adding a printer to the system, refer to “Adding the Printer Using Printer configuration” on page 2-3 or “Adding the Printer on the CUPS Administration Web page” on page 2-7.*

- 1 From the **Application** menu, select **Office**, then **Word Processor**.
- 2 Open the document to be printed.
- 3 Click **Print** in the **File** menu.

*The **Print** dialog box appears.*



4 Select the name of the printer.

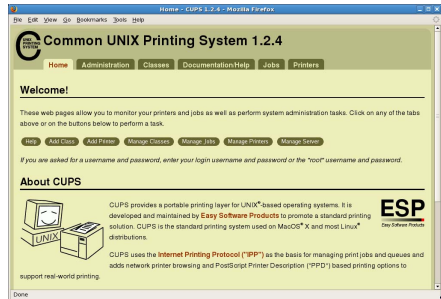


5 Click **Print** to print the document.

# Checking Print Jobs

You can check the status of print jobs from a Web browser.

- 1 Start up the Web browser.
- 2 Enter the URL “http://localhost:631”.  
*The CUPS Administration Web page appears.*



- 3 Click **Manage Jobs**.  
*A list of the currently active print jobs appear.*



*To check the status of completed print jobs, click **Show Completed Jobs**.*



# Troubleshooting

| Symptom   | Action   |
|---|--|
| The printer stops because of a paper size error or a paper type error.                                    | The job may have been sent with a prohibited combination of settings (for example, for the paper size and media type). Printing is not possible with postcards or overhead projector transparencies if <b>Plain Paper</b> is selected.   |
| Printing does not continue with a custom paper size.  | Printing with custom paper sizes is not possible directly from the printer driver. This can only be performed from the command line. Specify the following command to print data.<br><br><code>lpr -P [printer_name] -o media=Custom. [WIDTHxLENGTH] [file_name]</code><br><br><ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Format of Custom. [WIDTHxLENGTH]: Custom.150x200mm, Custom.8x11in, Custom.15x20cm, or Custom.612x782 (postscript points)</li><li>2. The specified file must be a PS, PDF or JPEG file.</li></ol> |
| Printing cannot be completed correctly from OpenOffice or any other Office application (such as, Kword).  | Applications running under Linux have their own print settings. Some of these functions may not be supported by this printer. Observe the following for best printing results.<br><br>■ Settings made within the application: Paper size and orientation<br><br>■ Settings made with the printer driver (kprinter): Settings other than those specified above (for example, paper type, tray, and resolution)  |
| When printing from Acrobat Reader, part of the image is printed in solid black or the job is interrupted. | There is a compatibility problem between Ghostscript and Acrobat Reader. Try using a different PDF application.  |
| Watermarks cannot be printed from Kword.  | This is a bug with Kword. Use Overlay instead.   |



***Operation on  
NetWare***

**3**



# Printing With NetWare

The printer controller supports the following environments.

## Network Printing in a NetWare Environment

| NetWare Version | Protocol Used | Emulation   | Service Mode     |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------|------------------|
| NetWare 4.x     | IPX           | Bindery/NDS | Pserver/Nprinter |
| NetWare 5.x/6   | IPX           | NDS         | Pserver          |
|                 | TCP/IP        | NDPS(lpr)   |                  |

### For Remote Printer Mode With NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation



*Before using bindery emulation, check that bindery emulation is compatible with the NetWare server.*

- 1 From a client computer, log on with Supervisor permissions to access the NetWare server where the Pserver is registered.
- 2 Start up Pconsole.
- 3 From the **Available Options** list, select **Quick Setup**, and then click the [Enter] button.
- 4 Enter the appropriate names in the **Printer Server Name**, **Printer Name**, **Print Queue Name**, and **Print Queue Volume** fields, select **Other/Unknown** from the **Printer type** field, and then save the specified settings.
- 5 Click the [Esc] button to quit Pconsole.
- 6 Use the NetWare server console to load PSERVER.NLM.



*For queue user privileges, printer notification option, assignment of multiple queues, and passwords, refer to the NetWare documentation, and specify settings as necessary.*

- 7 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select **Net Ware** from the **Network** tab, and then specify the following settings.

The screenshot shows the 'PageScope Web Connection' interface. At the top, there's a status bar with 'KONICA MINOLTA', 'Ready', 'READY', and 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P'. Below this is a navigation bar with tabs: 'Log out', 'System', 'Job', 'Print', and 'Network'. The 'Network' tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar lists various network protocols: TCP/IP, Bonjour, WSD, LLTD, NetWare (expanded), NetWare, NetWare Status, IPP, FTP, SNMP, AppleTalk, Email, SSL/TLS, and Authentication. The main content area is titled 'NetWare' and contains three sections: 'NetWare Print', 'PServer', and 'NPrinter/RPrinter'. The 'NetWare Print' section has three dropdown menus: 'NetWare Print' (set to 'Enable'), 'Frame Type' (set to 'Auto'), and 'Mode' (set to 'NPrinter/RPrinter'). The 'PServer' section has five text input fields: 'Print Server Name' (BHC36P-D2698B), 'Print Server Password', 'Retype Password', 'Print Queue Scan Rate' (1 Seconds(1-65535)), and 'Bindery/NDS' (NDS). The 'NPrinter/RPrinter' section has two text input fields: 'Printer Name' (BHC36P-D2698B) and 'Printer Number' (255 (0-255,255,Auto)). At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Clear' buttons.

- Netware Print: Select **Enable**.
- Frame Type:  
Select **Auto**. (Select the frame type according to the network environment.)
- Mode: Select **NPrinter/RPrinter**.
- Printer Name:  
Specify the printer name. (Default: **BHC35P-XXXXXX**)
- Printer Number:  
Specify the printer number (0-255). When 255 is specified, the setting is **Auto**.

- 8 Restart the printer (turn the printer off, then on again).

- 9 Use the NetWare server console to display the print server screen, and then check that the created printer is shown as **Waiting for Job** for the connected printer (0).

# For Print Server Mode With NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation



Before using bindery emulation, check that bindery emulation is compatible with the NetWare server.

- 1 From a client computer, log on with Supervisor permissions to access the NetWare server where the Pserver is registered.
- 2 Start up Pconsole.
- 3 From the **Available Options** list, select **Quick Setup**, and then click the [Enter] button.
- 4 Enter the appropriate names in the **Printer Server Name**, **Printer Name**, **Print Queue Name**, and **Print Queue Volume** fields, select **Other/Unknown** from the **Printer type** field, and then save the specified settings.
- 5 Click the [Esc] button to quit Pconsole.
- 6 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select **NetWare** from the **Network** tab, and then specify the following settings.

- Netware Print: Select **Enable**.

- Frame Type:  
Select **Auto**. (Select the frame type according to the network environment.)
  - Mode: Select **PServer**.
  - Print Server Name:  
Specify the print server name created in step 4.
  - Print Server Password:  
Specify only when setting from the NetWare server.
  - Print Queue Scan Rate: Specify 1. (Change as necessary.)
  - Bindery/NDS: Select **Bindery/NDS**.
  - Preferred File Server:  
Specify the name of the file server that connects to the Pserver.
- 7 Restart the printer (turn the printer off, then on again).
  - 8 Use the NetWare server console to load MONITOR.NLM.
  - 9 Select the connection information and, in the active connection column, check that the created Pserver is connected.

## For NetWare 4.x Remote Printer Mode (NDS)

- 1 Log on to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
- 2 Start up NWadmin.
- 3 Select either the organization or organizational unit container that offers the print service, and then click **Print Services Quick Setup** on the **Tools** menu.
- 4 Enter the appropriate names in the **Printer Server Name**, **Printer Name**, **Print Queue Name**, and **Print Queue Volume** fields, select **Other/Unknown** from the **Printer type** field, and then save the specified settings.



*For queue user privileges, printer notification option, assignment of multiple queues, and passwords, refer to the NetWare documentation, and specify settings as necessary.*

- 5 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select **NetWare** from the **Network** tab, and then specify the following settings.

KONICA MINOLTA Ready READY KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

PageScope Web Connection

Log out System Job Print Network

TCP/IP  
Bonjour  
WSD  
LLTD  
NetWare  
NetWare  
NetWare Status  
IPP  
FTP  
SNMP  
AppleTalk  
Email  
SSL/TLS  
Authentication

**NetWare**

NetWare Print Enable  
Frame Type Auto  
Mode NPrinter/RPrinter

**PServer**

Print Server Name BHC35P-D2898B  
Print Server Password  
Retype Password  
Print Queue Scan Rate 1 Seconds(1-65535)  
Bindery/NDS NDS  
Preferred File Server  
Preferred NDS Content Name  
Preferred NDS Tree Name

**NPrinter/RPrinter**

Printer Name BHC35P-D2898B  
Printer Number 255 (0-255,255:Auto)

Apply Clear

- Network Print: Select **Enable**.
- Frame Type:  
Select **Auto**. (Select the frame type according to the network environment.)
- Mode: Select **NPrinter/RPrinter**.
- Printer Name:  
Specify the printer name. (Default: **BHC35P-XXXXXX**)
- Printer Number:  
Specify the printer number (0-255). When 255 is specified, the setting is **Auto**.

- 6 Restart the printer (turn the printer off, then on again)

- 7 Use the NetWare server console to load PSERVER.NLM.

- 8 Use the NetWare server console to display the print server screen, and then check that created printer is shown as **Waiting for Job** for the connected printer (0).

## For NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 Print Server Mode (NDS)



To use the Print Server mode, the IPX protocol must be loaded on the NetWare server.

- 1 Log on to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
- 2 Start up NWadmin.
- 3 Select either the organization or organizational unit container that offers the print service, and then click **Print Services Quick Setup (non-NDPS)** on the **Tools** menu.
- 4 Enter the appropriate names in the **Printer Server Name**, **Printer Name**, **Print Queue Name**, and **Print Queue Volume** fields, select **Other/Unknown** from the **Printer Type** field, and then click the [Create] button.



For queue user privileges, printer notification option, assignment of multiple queues, and passwords, refer to the NetWare documentation, and specify settings as necessary.

- 5 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select **NetWare** from the **Network** tab, and then specify the following settings.

KONICA MINOLTA Ready READY KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

PageScope Web Connection

Log out System Job Print Network

**NetWare**

NetWare Print Enable

Frame Type Auto

Mode PServer

**PServer**

Print Server Name BHC35P-D2898B

Print Server Password

Retype Password

Print Queue Scan Rate 1 Seconds(1-65535)

Bindery/NDS NDS

Preferred File Server

Preferred NDS Context Name context

Preferred NDS Tree Name tree

**NPrinter/RPrinter**

Printer Name BHC35P-D2898B

Printer Number 255 (0-255,255:Auto)

Apply Clear

- Netware Print: Select **Enable**.

- Frame Type:  
Select **Auto**. (Select the frame type according to the network environment.)
- Mode: Select **PServer**.
- Print Server Name: Specify the print server name created in step 4.
- Print Server Password: Specify only when setting from the Net-Ware server.
- Print Queue Scan Rate: Specify 1. (Change as necessary.)
- Bindery/NDS: Select **NDS**.
- Preferred NDS Context Name:  
Specify the name of the context that connects to Pserver.
- Preferred NDS Tree Name:  
Specify the name of the tree that Pserver logs on to.

**6** Restart the printer (turn the printer off, then on again).

**7** Use the NetWare server console to load MONITOR.NLM.

**8** Select the connection information and, in the active connection column, check that the created Pserver is connected.

## For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS)



*Before specifying settings for NDPS, check that the NDPS broker and NDPS manager have been created and loaded.*



*Also, before performing the following procedure, check that the TCP/IP protocol has been set in the NetWare server, and check that the IP address has been set for this machine and that this machine is on.*


- 1 Log on to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
- 2 Start up NWadmin.
- 3 Right-click the organization or organizational unit container where you will create the printer agent, and then click **NDPS Printer** on the **Create** sub-menu.
- 4 In the **NDPS Printer Name** box, enter the printer name.
- 5 In the **Printer Agent Source** column, select **Create a New Printer Agent**, and then click the **Create** button.
- 6 Check the printer agent name, and then in the **NDPS Manager Name** box, browse through the NDPS manager names, and register one.
- 7 In the **Gateway Types**, select **Novell Printer Gateway**, and then register it.
- 8 In the Configure Novell PDS for Printer Agent window, select **(None)** for the printer type and **Novell Port Handler** for the port handler type, and then register the settings.
- 9 In **Connection type**, select **Remote (LPR on IP)**, and then register it.
- 10 Enter the IP address set for this machine as the host address, enter **Print** as the printer name, and then click the [Finish] button to register the settings.
- 11 The printer driver registration screen appears. Select **None** for each operating system to complete the registration.



*For settings for the queue user rights, printer notification option, assignment of multiple queues, and passwords, refer to the NetWare documentation, and set them as necessary.*



## Setting Up a Client (Windows) Settings When Using the NetWare Server

- 1 For Windows 2000, click the [Start] button, point to **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.  
For Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click the [Start] button, select **Control Panel**, and then click **Hardware and Sound** to select **Devices and Printers**.  
For Windows Vista/Server 2008, click the [Start] button, select **Control Panel**, and then click **Hardware and Sound** to select **Printers**.  
For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.
-  *If **Printers and Faxes** does not appear in the Start menu, open the Control Panel from the Start menu, select **Printers and Other Hardware**, and then select **Printers and Faxes**.*
- 2 For Windows 2000/Server 2003, double-click the **Add Printer** icon.  
For Windows 7/Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click **Add a printer** on the menu.  
For Windows XP, click **Add a printer** on the **Printer Tasks** menu. The **Add Printer Wizard** starts up.
- 3 In the port settings, browse the network, and specify the name of the created queue (or NDPS printer name).
- 4 In the **Printer Model** list, specify the folder on the CD/DVD that contains the printer driver for the operating system and printer driver to be used.
- 5 Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the installation.

# ***Printer Utilities*** **4**

# Installing Printer Utilities on Windows



*You must have administrator privileges in order to install the Printer Utilities.*



*Before proceeding with the installation, be sure to exit all running applications.*

The following procedure describes how to install the Printer Utilities.

## End User Tools

- Status Monitor
- PageScope Direct Print

## Administration Tools

- PageScope Data Administrator
- PageScope Net Care Device Manager

## Operation Tools

- Download Manager

- 1 Insert "Utilities and Documentation" CD/DVD in your CD/DVD drive.
- 2 Select the type of tools from **End User Tools**, **Administration Tools** and **Operation Tools**.
- 3 From the Tools dialogs, select the utilities to be installed.
- 4 From Utility dialogs, select **Install**.



*Click **Back** button to display previous page.*



*Click **Top Menu** button to display top page.*

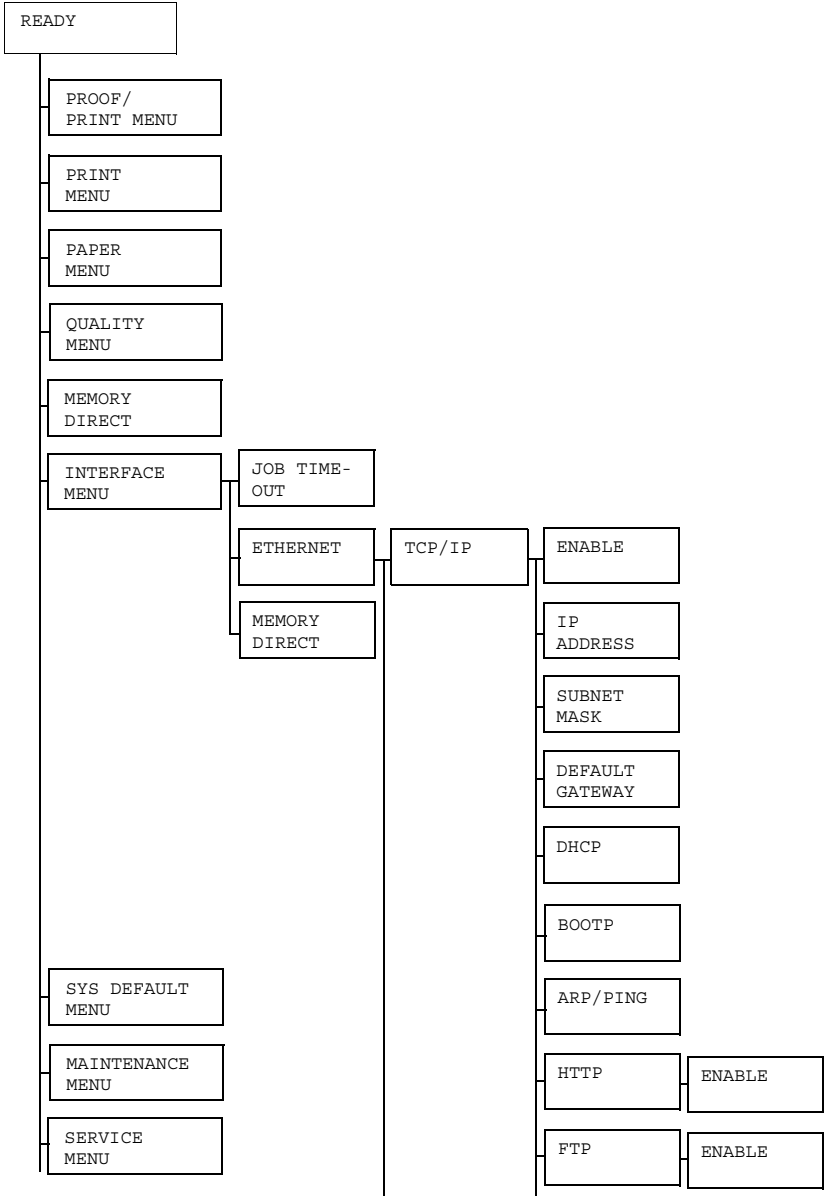
- 5 Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the installation.
- 6 After the installation is complete, remove the Utilities and Documentation CD/DVD from your CD/DVD drive and store it in a safe place.

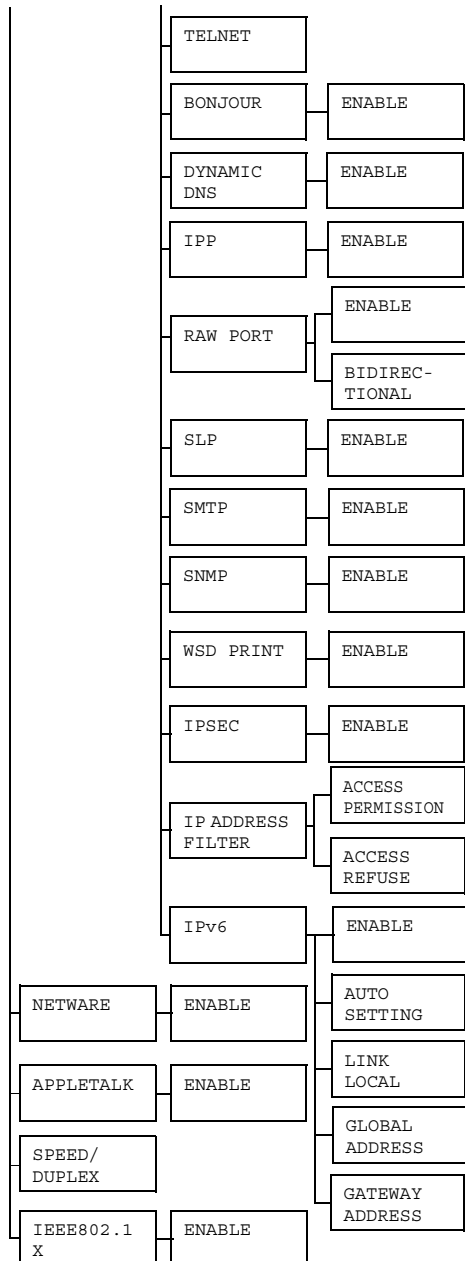
***Understanding  
the Ethernet  
Configuration  
Menus***

**5**

# Ethernet Menu






## Location within the Configuration Menu





## Accessing the Ethernet Menu

Use the following series of keystrokes at the printer to access the Ethernet menu options on your printer. This menu provides access to all of the configurable network items.

| Press this key . . .  | (until) the message window reads. . .  |
|---|--|
|  | PROOF/PRINT MENU<br>or if no optional hard disk kit HD-P03 is installed:<br>PRINT MENU |
|  | INTERFACE MENU   |
|  | JOB TIMEOUT  |
|  | ETHERNET   |
|  | TCP/IP   |



*Restart the printer if any of the following Ethernet settings are changed.*

- IPP - ENABLE

## Using the Network Menu Options

If the printer is connected to a network, the following settings should be specified. For details about each setting, contact your network administrator.



*When manually setting the IP address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway turn off DHCP first.*

### TCP/IP

#### ENABLE

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Enables or disables TCP/IP.<br>If YES is selected, TCP/IP is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, TCP/IP is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO   |
| <b>Default</b> | YES   |

#### IP ADDRESS

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Sets the IP address of this printer on the network.   |
| <b>Range</b>   | 0–255 for each xxx triplet<br>Use the Up and Down keys to increase or decrease each number; use the Left and Right keys to move between triplets. |
| <b>Default</b> | 000.000.000.000   |

#### SUBNET MASK

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Sets the subnet mask value of the network. The subnet mask allows you to limit access to your printer (for example, according to departmental divisions). |
| <b>Range</b>   | 0–255 for each xxx triplet<br>Use the Up and Down keys to increase or decrease each number; use the Left and Right keys to move between triplets.         |
| <b>Default</b> | 000.000.000.000   |



## DEFAULT GATEWAY

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Sets the address of the router/gateway if a router/gateway is used on your network and you allow users outside your network environment to print on your printer. |
| <b>Range</b>   | 0–255 for each xxx triplet<br><br>Use the Up and Down keys to increase or decrease each number; use the Left and Right keys to move between triplets.             |
| <b>Default</b> | 000.000.000.000   |

## DHCP

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | If there is a DHCP server on the network, specifies whether the IP address and other network information is automatically assigned by the DHCP server. |
| <b>Options</b> | ON<br><br>OFF  |
| <b>Default</b> | ON   |

## BOOTP

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | If there is a BOOTP server on the network, specifies whether the IP address and other network information is automatically assigned by the BOOTP server. |
| <b>Options</b> | ON<br><br>OFF  |
| <b>Default</b> | OFF  |

## ARP/PING

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not the IP address is automatically acquired.<br><br>If ON is selected, the IP address is automatically acquired.<br><br>If OFF is selected, the IP address is not automatically acquired. |
| <b>Options</b> | ON<br><br>OFF  |
| <b>Default</b> | OFF  |

## HTTP – ENABLE

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable HTTP.<br>If YES is selected, HTTP is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, HTTP is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO   |
| <b>Default</b> | YES   |

## FTP – ENABLE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable FTP.<br>If YES is selected, FTP is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, FTP is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO  |
| <b>Default</b> | YES  |

## TELNET

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether to enable or disable Telnet transmissions.<br>When ENABLE is selected, Telnet transmissions are enabled.<br>When DISABLE is selected, Telnet transmissions are disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | ENABLE<br>DISABLE   |
| <b>Default</b> | ENABLE  |

## BONJOUR – ENABLE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable Bonjour.<br>If YES is selected, Bonjour is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, Bonjour is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO  |
| <b>Default</b> | YES  |

## DYNAMIC DNS – ENABLE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable Dynamic DNS.<br>If YES is selected, Dynamic DNS is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, Dynamic DNS is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO  |
| <b>Default</b> | NO   |

## IPP – ENABLE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable IPP.<br>If YES is selected, IPP is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, IPP is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO  |
| <b>Default</b> | YES  |

## RAW PORT – ENABLE

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable Raw port.<br>If YES is selected, Raw port is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, Raw port is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO   |
| <b>Default</b> | YES   |

## RAW PORT – BIDIRECTIONAL

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable Bidirectional.<br>If ON is selected, Raw port is enabled for bi-directional communication.<br>If OFF is selected, Raw port is disabled for bi-directional communication. |
| <b>Options</b> | ON<br>OFF  |
| <b>Default</b> | OFF  |

## SLP – ENABLE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable SLP.<br>If YES is selected, SLP is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, SLP is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO  |
| <b>Default</b> | YES  |

## SMTP – ENABLE

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable SMTP.<br>If YES is selected, SMTP is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, SMTP is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO   |
| <b>Default</b> | YES   |

## SNMP – ENABLE

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable SNMP.<br>If YES is selected, SNMP is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, SNMP is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO   |
| <b>Default</b> | YES   |

## WSD PRINT – ENABLE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable WSD print.<br>If YES is selected, WSD print is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, WSD print is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO  |
| <b>Default</b> | YES  |

## IPSEC – ENABLE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable IPsec.<br>If YES is selected, IPsec is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, IPsec is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO  |
| <b>Default</b> | NO   |

## IP ADDRESS FILTER – ACCESS PERMISSION

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable Access Permission transmissions.<br>When ENABLE is selected, Access Permission transmissions are enabled.<br>When DISABLE is selected, Access Permission transmissions are disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | ENABLE<br>DISABLE  |
| <b>Default</b> | DISABLE  |

## IP ADDRESS FILTER – ACCESS REFUSE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable Access Refuse transmissions.<br>When ENABLE is selected, Access Refuse transmissions are enabled.<br>When DISABLE is selected, Access Refuse transmissions are disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | ENABLE<br>DISABLE  |
| <b>Default</b> | DISABLE  |

## IPv6 – ENABLE

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable IPv6.<br>If YES is selected, IPv6 is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, IPv6 is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO   |
| <b>Default</b> | YES   |

## IPv6 – AUTO SETTING

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable Auto Setting.<br>If YES is selected, Auto Setting is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, Auto Setting is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO   |
| <b>Default</b> | YES   |

## IPv6 – LINK LOCAL

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Displays the link-local address of IPv6. |
|----------------|--|

## IPv6 – GLOBAL ADDRESS

|                |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Displays the global address of IPv6. |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|

## IPv6 – GATEWAY ADDRESS

|                |                                       |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Displays the gateway address of IPv6. |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|

## NETWARE

### ENABLE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable NetWare.<br>If YES is selected, NetWare is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, NetWare is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO  |
| <b>Default</b> | NO   |

## APPLETALK

### ENABLE

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable AppleTalk.<br>If YES is selected, AppleTalk is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, AppleTalk is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO  |
| <b>Default</b> | YES  |

## SPEED/DUPLEX

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Specifies the transmission speed for the network and the transmission method for bi-directional transmission. |
| <b>Options</b> | AUTO<br>10BASE FULL<br>10BASE HALF<br>100BASE FULL<br>100BASE HALF<br>1000BASE FULL                           |
| <b>Default</b> | AUTO  |

## IEEE802.1X

### ENABLE

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>Purpose</b> | Select whether or not to enable IEEE802.1x.<br>If YES is selected, IEEE802.1x is enabled.<br>If NO is selected, IEEE802.1x is disabled. |
| <b>Options</b> | YES<br>NO   |
| <b>Default</b> | NO  |

***Network Printing***

**6**





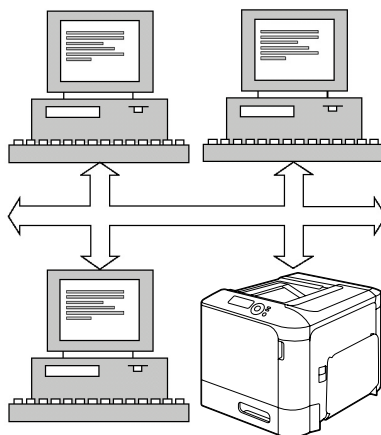
# Network Connection

## Theory

To connect your printer in a TCP/IP network environment, you must make sure that the internal network addresses in the printer have been set.



*In many cases, you have to enter only a unique IP address. However, you may also have to enter a subnet mask and/or a gateway (router) address, depending on your network configuration requirements.*



# Making the Connection

## Ethernet Interface

An RJ45 connector can be used as the Ethernet interface for this printer.

When connecting your printer to an Ethernet network, the tasks you perform depend on how you plan to set the printer's IP (Internet Protocol) address. Printers are shipped with a preset IP address, subnet mask, and gateway.

- **IP Address**—A unique identifier for each device on a TCP/IP network.
- **Subnet Mask**—A filter used to determine what subnet an IP address belongs to.
- **Gateway**—A node on a network that serves as an entrance to another network.

Since the IP address for each PC and printer on your network must be unique, you usually need to modify this preset address so it doesn't conflict with any other IP address or your network or any attached network. You can do this in one of two ways. Each is explained in detail in the following sections.

- Using DHCP
- Setting the address manually

## Using DHCP

If your network supports DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol), the printer's IP address will be automatically assigned by the DHCP server when you turn on the printer. (Refer to "Network Printing" on page 6-9 for a description of DHCP.)



*If your printer is not automatically assigned an IP address, verify that DHCP is enabled on the printer (PRINT MENU - CONFIGURATION PG). If it is not enabled, you can enable it in the INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/IP - DHCP menu.*

- 1 Connect your printer to the network.

*When using an Ethernet cable, plug the RJ45 connector into the Ethernet interface port of the printer.*

- 2 Turn on your PC and printer.

- 3 When the printer's message window displays **READY**, print a configuration page to verify that the IP address is set.

| Press this key . . .               | (until) the message window displays . . .  |
|------------------------------------|--|
|                                    | READY  |
| <b>*<br/>Menu<br/>Select<br/>↵</b> | PROOF/PRINT MENU<br>or if no optional hard disk kit HD-P03 is installed:<br>PRINT MENU |
| <b>▽</b>                           | PRINT MENU   |
| <b>*<br/>Menu<br/>Select<br/>↵</b> | CONFIGURATION PG   |
| <b>*<br/>Menu<br/>Select<br/>↵</b> | PRINT  |

- 4 Install the printer driver and utilities.



*If the printer cannot be connected to a DHCP server, an IP address within the range between 169.254.0.0 and 169.254.255.255 is automatically set.*

# Setting the Address Manually

You may also manually change the printer's IP address, subnet mask, and gateway by using the following instructions. (See Chapter 5 "Understanding the Ethernet Configuration Menus" for more information.)








*When manually setting the IP address, turn off DHCP, BOOTP and ARP/PING first. In addition, when the IP address is changed, add a new port or reinstall the printer driver.*











## CAUTION

**You should always notify your network's administrator before changing the printer's IP address.**

- 1 Turn on your PC and printer.
- 2 When the printer's message window displays **READY**, set the IP address.



| Press this key . . .  | (until) the message window reads . . .   |
|---|--|
|   | READY  |
|    | PROOF/PRINT MENU<br>or if no optional hard disk kit HD-P03 is installed:<br>PRINT MENU |
|    | INTERFACE MENU   |
|   | JOB TIMEOUT  |
|  | ETHERNET   |
|  | TCP/IP   |






| Press this key . . .  | (until) the message window reads . . . |
|---|--|
|    | ENABLE                                 |
|    | IP ADDRESS                             |
|    | IP ADDRESS<br>000.000.000.000          |
| <p>Use the  and  keys to move to each of the four number triplets.</p> <p>Use the  and  keys to increase or decrease each number.</p> |  |
|    | IP ADDRESS                             |

**3** If you don't set the subnet mask or gateway, go to step 5.

If you don't set the subnet mask, but you set the gateway, go to step 4.








If you set the subnet mask, follow these steps.

| Press this key . . .  | (until) the message window displays . . . |
|---|---|
|  | SUBNET MASK                               |
|  | SUBNET MASK<br>000.000.000.000            |


| Press this key . . .   | (until) the message window displays . . . |
|--|---|
| Use the  and  keys to move to each of the four number triplets.<br>Use the  and  keys to increase or decrease each number. |   |
| <b>*<br/>Menu<br/>Select</b><br>  | SUBNET MASK                               |

**4** If you don't set the gateway, go to step 5.





If you set the gateway, follow these steps.

| Press this key . . .   | (until) the message window displays . . . |
|--|---|
|   | DEFAULT GATEWAY                           |
| <b>*<br/>Menu<br/>Select</b><br>  | DEFAULT GATEWAY<br>000.000.000.000        |
| Use the  and  keys to move to each of the four number triplets.<br>Use the  and  keys to increase or decrease each number. |   |
| <b>*<br/>Menu<br/>Select</b><br>  | DEFAULT GATEWAY                           |

- 5 Save your configuration changes and make the printer ready for printing again.

| Press this key . . .   | (until) the message window displays . . . |
|--|---|
| <b>Cancel</b><br> | Press the Cancel key 4 times.             |

- 6 Print a configuration page to verify that the correct IP address, subnet mask, and gateway have been set.

| Press this key . . .  | (until) the message window displays . . .  |
|---|--|
|   | READY  |
| <b>*<br/>Menu<br/>Select</b><br>   | PROOF/PRINT MENU<br>or if no optional hard disk kit HD-P03 is installed:<br>PRINT MENU |
|                                    | PRINT MENU   |
| <b>*<br/>Menu<br/>Select</b><br>  | CONFIGURATION PG   |
| <b>*<br/>Menu<br/>Select</b><br> | PRINT  |

- 7 Install the printer driver and utilities.

# Network Printing

Network printing terms are described below.

- AppleTalk
- Bonjour
- BOOTP
- DDNS
- DHCP
- FTP
- HTTP
- IEEE802.1x
- IPP
- IPsec
- IPv6
- IPX/SPX
- LLMNR
- LLTD
- LPD/LPR
- SLP
- SMTP
- SNMP
- Port9100
- WSD print

This chapter contains descriptions on the network printing terms and the IPP printing methods.

## AppleTalk

A generic name for the protocol suite developed by Apple Computer for computer networking.

## Bonjour

Macintosh network technology for automatically detecting devices connected to the network and for specifying settings. Previously called “Rendezvous”, the name was changed to “Bonjour” starting with Mac OS X 10.4.



## **BOOTP**

BOOTP (Bootstrap Protocol) is an Internet protocol that enables a diskless workstation to discover (1) its own IP address, (2) the IP address of a BOOTP server on the network, and (3) a file that can be loaded into memory to boot the workstation. This enables the workstation to boot without requiring a hard or floppy disk drive.

## **DDNS (Dynamic DNS)**

DDNS (Dynamic Domain Name System) is technology for automatically assigning dynamically assigned IP addresses to fixed domains.

The recent availability of always-on Internet connections has resulted in an increased number of users turning their home computers into publicly accessible Web servers. The IP address supplied by the Internet service provider changes with each connection, complicating public access to the Internet.

By using a DDNS service, home computers can normally be accessed with a fixed host name.

## **DHCP**

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) is a protocol for assigning dynamic IP addresses to devices on a network. With dynamic addressing, a device can have a different IP address every time it connects to the network. In some systems, the device's IP address can even change while it is still connected. DHCP also supports a mix of static and dynamic IP addresses. Dynamic addressing simplifies network administration because the software keeps track of IP addresses rather than requiring an administrator to manage the task. This means that a new computer can be added to a network without the hassle of manually assigning it a unique IP address.

## **FTP**

Abbreviation for File Transfer Protocol. A protocol for transferring files over the Internet or an intranet on the TCP/IP network.

## **HTTP**

HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) is the underlying protocol used by the World Wide Web. It defines how messages are formatted and transmitted, and what actions web servers and browsers should take in response to various commands. For example, when you enter a URL in your browser, this actually sends an HTTP command to the Web server directing it to fetch and transmit the requested web page.

## **IEEE802.1x**

This protocol for determining the user authentication method within the LAN is compatible with wireless and wired LANs. Using the RADIUS server for user authentication, communication with authenticated users is permitted while all communication from unauthenticated clients is blocked, excluding authentication requests.

## **IPP**

IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) is a protocol for end users' most common printing situations over the Internet. It allows users to find out about a printer's capabilities, submit print jobs to a printer, determine the status of the printer or print job, and cancel a previously submitted print job.

For more information on using IPP, See "Printing via IPP (Internet Printing Protocol)" on page 6-14.

## **IPsec**

The security technology that is used with TCP/IP. A service with enhanced security can be provided by specifying the encryption of transmission packets and the authentication protocol.

## **IPv6**

Abbreviation for Internet Protocol version 6.

A protocol that has been prepared to replace the currently used IPv4 protocol in response to increase in the number of devices that use the Internet.

Additional improvements include 128-bit IP addresses and added security features.

## **IPX/SPX**

IPX/SPX (Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange) is a networking protocol developed by Novell. It was used mainly in Netware environments as the general LAN protocol, where TCP/IP has become widespread.

## **LLMNR**

The acronym for Link-local Multicast Name Resolution, which is a protocol used for the name resolution of neighboring computers. LLMNR uses simple exchange of request and response messages to perform name resolution of neighboring computers without configuring DNS server or clients.

## LLTD

The acronym for Link Layer Topology Discovery, which is a technology investigating how the devices on the network are connected. Network devices with this technology are recognized by Windows Vista/Server 2008 on the network, and displayed as icons configured on the network map of Windows Vista.

## LPD/LPR

LPD/LPR (Line Printer Daemon/Line Printer Request) is a platform-independent printing protocol that runs over TCP/IP. Originally implemented for BSD UNIX, its use has spread into the desktop world and is now an industry standard.

## SLP

Traditionally, in order to locate services on the network, users had to supply the host name or network address of the machine providing the desired service. This has created many administrative problems.

However, SLP (Service Location Protocol) simplifies the discovery and use of network resources such as printers by automating a number of network services. It provides a framework that allows networking applications to discover the existence, location, and configuration of networked services.

With SLP users no longer need to know the names of network hosts. Instead, they need to know only the description of the service they are interested in. Based on this description, SLP is able to return the URL of the desired service.

### **Unicast, Multicast, and Broadcast**

SLP is a unicast and a multicast protocol. This means that messages can be sent to one agent at a time (unicast) or to all agents (that are listening) at the same time (multicast). However, a multicast is not a broadcast. In theory, broadcast messages are “heard” by every node on the network. Multicast differs from broadcast because multicast messages are only “heard” by the nodes on the network that have “joined the multicast group.”

For obvious reasons network routers filter almost all broadcast traffic. This means that broadcasts that are generated on one subnet will not be “routed” or forwarded to any of the other subnets connected to the router (from the router’s perspective, a subnet is all machines connected to one of its ports). Multicasts, on the other hand, are forwarded by routers. Multicast traffic from a given group is forwarded by routers to all subnets that have at least one machine that is interested in receiving the multicast for that group.

## **SMTP**

SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) is a protocol for sending e-mail.

This protocol was originally used to send e-mail between servers; however, currently client e-mail software use it to also send e-mail to servers using POP.

## **SNMP**

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is actually a set of protocols for managing complex networks. SNMP works by sending messages to different parts of a network. SNMP-compliant devices, called agents, store data about themselves in Management Information Bases (MIBs) and return this data to the SNMP requesters.

## **Port 9100**

When printing through a network, TCP/IP port number 9100 can be used to send raw data.

## **WSD print**

Printing is possible using the WSD (Web Service on Devices) function installed in Windows 7/Vista/Server 2008. A connection supports WSD, detects the printer on the network automatically and connects. Specifying a WSD printer when printing from Windows 7/Vista/Server 2008 allows printing using Web service for communication.

## Printing via IPP (Internet Printing Protocol)



*You must have administrator privileges in order to install the printer driver.*



*If the User Account Control window appears when installing on Windows 7/Vista/Server 2008, click the **Allow** button or the **Continue** button.*



*For IPP printing, specify the network setting. Refer to “Making the Connection” on page 6-3 and “IPP” on page 6-11.*

### With Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008

When using Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008, settings must be specified in the operating system before the printer driver is installed.

- 1 Click the **Start** button.
- 2 Point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Server Manager**.



*If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue** button.*

- 3 In the Server Manager main window, click **Add Features** in the **Features Summary** section.
- 4 Select the **Internet Printing Client** check box to install the feature.
- 5 Restart the computer.

### Adding an IPP Port using the Printer Driver CD/DVD

- 1 Insert the Printer Driver CD/DVD in the CD/DVD drive of your computer. The installer starts up.



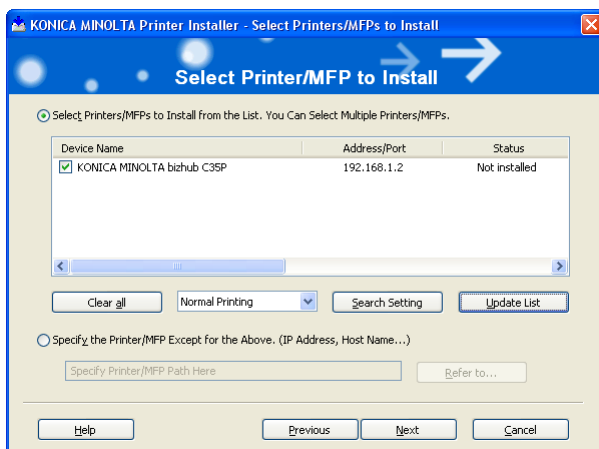
*If Windows 7/Vista or Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008 is being used, click **Run AutoRun.exe** in the **AutoPlay** dialog box that appears when the CD/DVD is inserted.*



*If the installer does not start up automatically, double-click the **Auto-Run.exe** icon on the CD/DVD.*

- 2 Click **Printer Install**.
- 3 Click **AGREE**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select **Install printers/MFPs**, and then click **Next**.

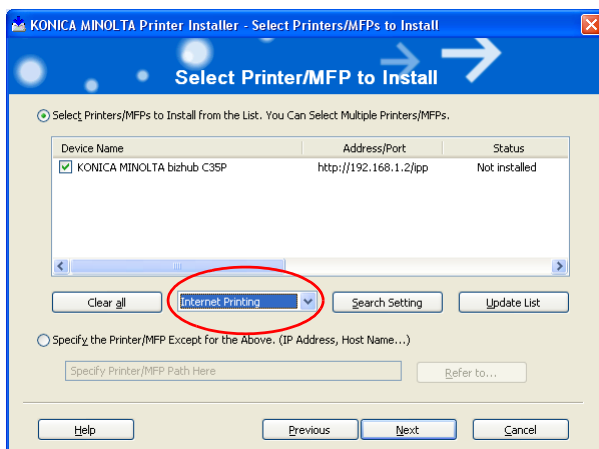
6 The connected printers are detected. Select this printer.



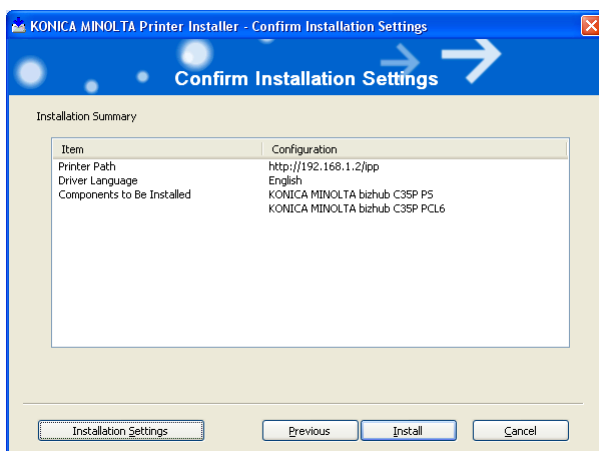
■ [Search Setting]: To search for printers on other networks, click this button.

■ [Update List]: To update the printer information, click this button.

7 Select **Internet Printing** as the printing method from the pull-down list, and then click **Next**.

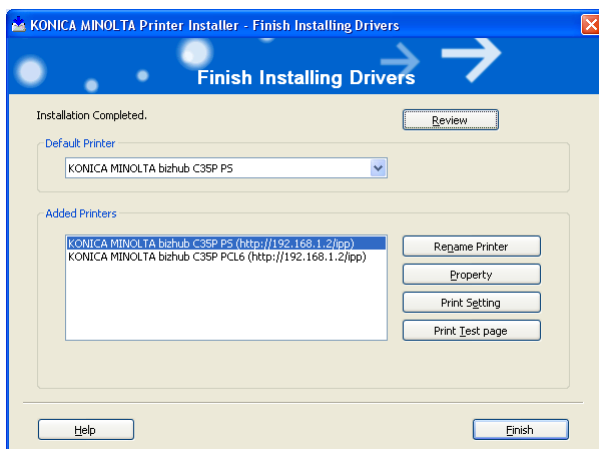


8 In the **Confirm Installation Settings** dialog box, click **Install**.



■ [Installation Settings]: To change the settings, click this button.

9 Click **Finish**.



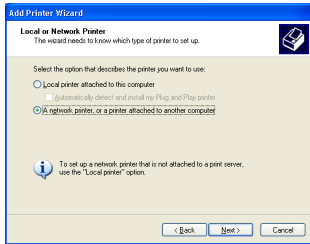
This completes the installation of the printer driver.

## Adding an IPP Port using Add Printer Wizard - Windows Server 2003/XP/2000

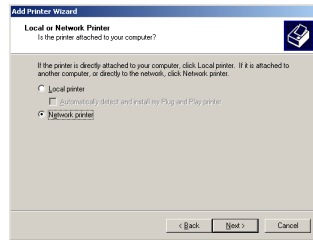
- For Windows Server 2003/XP: Click **Start**, select **Printers and Faxes**, and then click **Add a Printer**.
- For Windows 2000: Click **Start**, point to **Settings**, click **Printers**, and then click **Add Printer**.

- 1 In the second dialog box, select the **Network Printer** radio button, and then choose **Next**.

### Windows Server 2003/XP



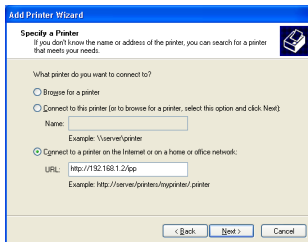
### Windows 2000



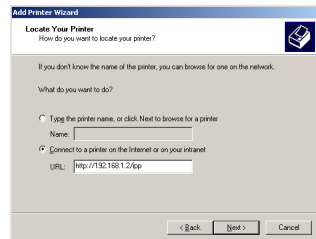
- 2 In the URL field in the next dialog box, enter the printer's network path-name in one of the following formats, and then choose **Next**:

- `http://ipaddress/ipp`
- `http://ipaddress:80/ipp`
- `http://ipaddress:631/ipp`

### Windows Server 2003/XP



### Windows 2000



If your system cannot connect to the printer, the following message appears:

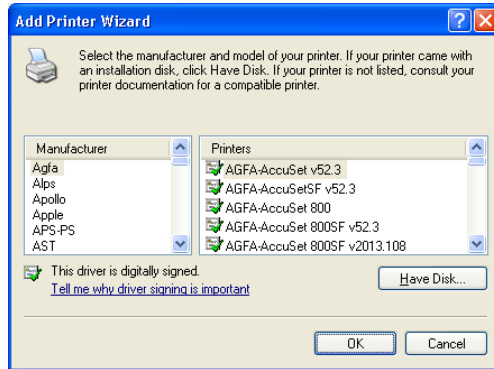
- **Windows Server 2003/XP**—"Windows cannot connect to the printer. Either the printer name was typed incorrectly, or the specified printer has lost its connection to the server. For more information, click **Help**."
- **Windows 2000**—"Could not connect to the printer. You either entered a printer name that was incorrect or the specified printer is no longer connected to the server. Click **Help** for more information."



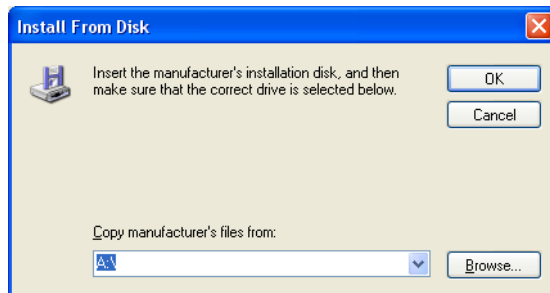
### 3 Windows Server 2003/XP—Go to step 4.

**Windows 2000**—If you entered a valid path in the previous step, the following message displays: “The server on which the KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P printer resides does not have the correct printer driver installed. If you want to install the driver on your local computer, click **OK**.” The reason for this is that you do not yet have a printer driver installed. Choose **OK**.

### 4 Choose **Have Disk**.

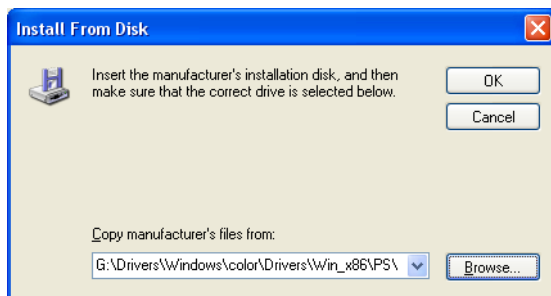


### 5 Choose **Browse**.

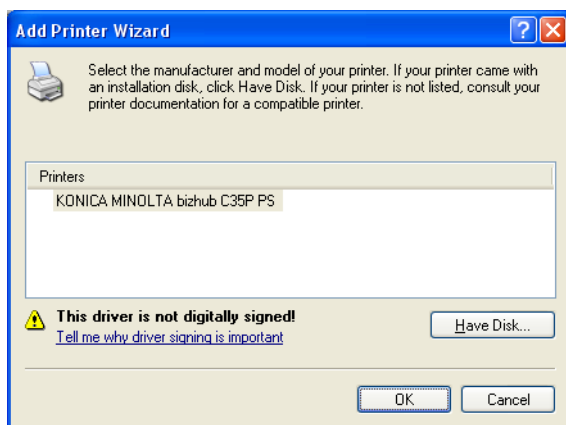


### 6 Locate the directory on the CD/DVD where the printer driver files are located and then click **Open**.

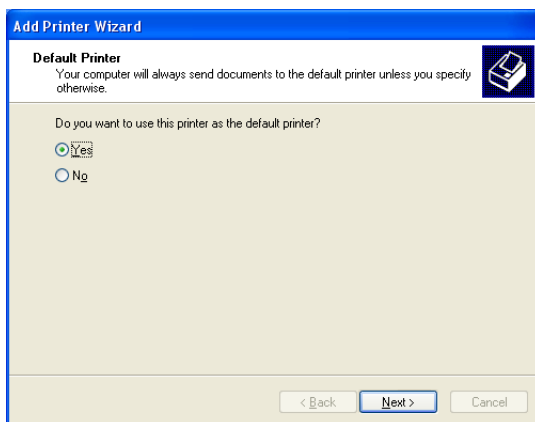
7 Click **OK**.



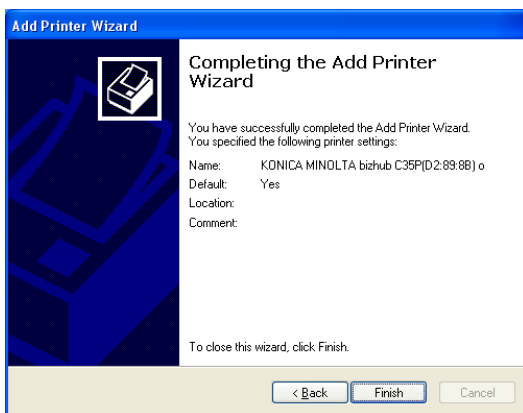
8 Click **OK**.



- 9 Select whether the printer is to be used as the default printer, and then click **Next**.



- 10 Click **Finish**.



## Adding an IPP Port using Add Printer Wizard - Windows 7/ Vista/Server 2008 R2/Server 2008

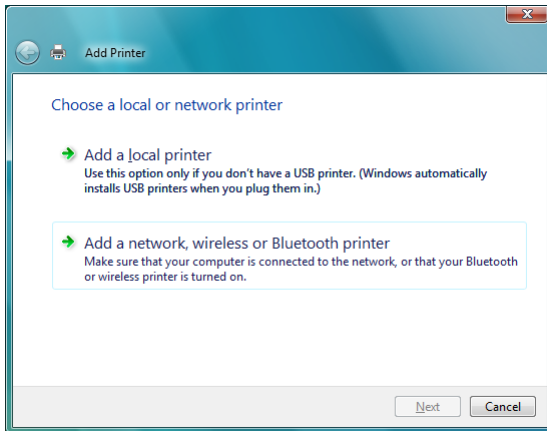
1 Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Printers**.



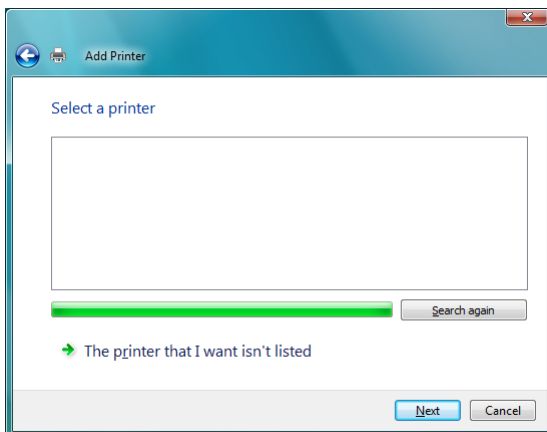
*When using Windows 7/Server 2008 R2/Server 2008, **View devices and printers** under **Hardware and Sound**.*

2 Click **Add a printer**.

3 In the dialog box click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

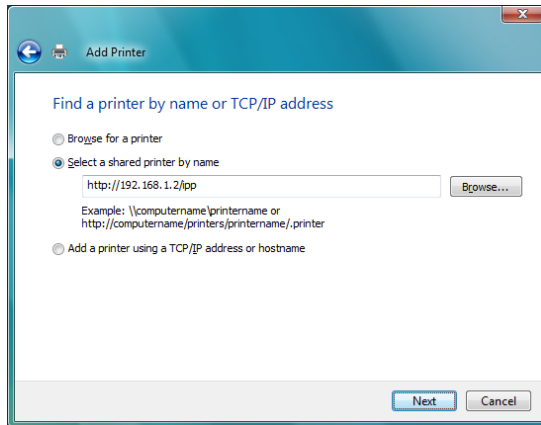


4 In the dialog box, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.



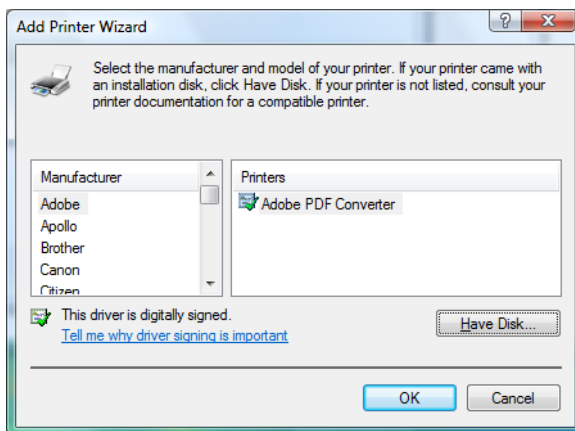
5 In the URL field in the next dialog box enter the printer's network path-name in one of the following formats and then choose **Next**:

- `http://ipaddress/ipp`
- `http://ipaddress:80/ipp`
- `http://ipaddress:631/ipp`

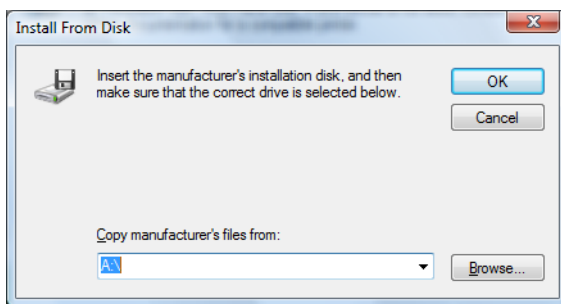


*If your system cannot connect to the machine, the following message appears: "Windows cannot connect to the printer. Make sure that you have typed the name correctly, and that the printer is connected to network."*

6 Click **Have Disk**.

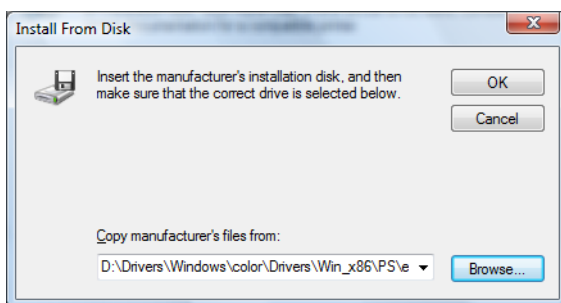


7 Click **Browse**.

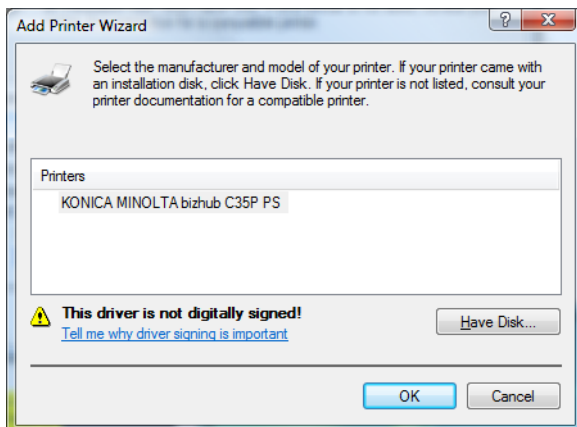


8 Locate the directory on the CD/DVD where the printer driver files are located and then click **Open**.

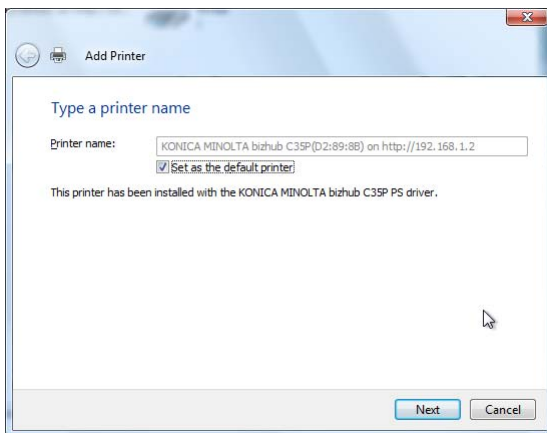
9 Click **OK**.



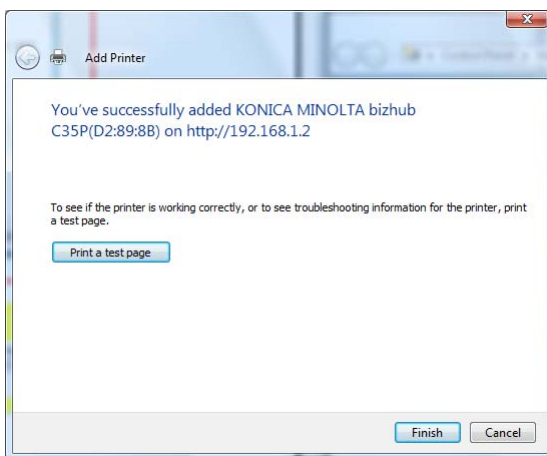
10 Click **OK**.



## 11 Click **Next**.



## 12 Click **Finish**.



## Printing via Web Service Print Function

In Windows 7/Vista/Server 2008 R2/Server 2008, printers on the network that support Web Service print can be detected and installed.



*You must have administrator privileges in order to install the printer driver.*



*Before proceeding with the installation, be sure to exit all running applications.*



*If the User Account Control window appears when installing on Windows 7/Vista/Server 2008, click the **Allow** button or the **Continue** button.*



*For Web Service print, specify the network setting. Refer to “Making the Connection” on page 6-3 and “WSD print” on page 6-13.*

### With Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008

When using Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008, settings must be specified in the operating system before the printer driver is installed.

**1** Click the **Start** button.

**2** Point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Server Manager**.



*If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue** button.*

**3** In the **Server Manager** main window, click **Add Roles** in the **Roles Summary** section.

**4** Select the **Print Services** check box to install the feature.

### Adding a printer from the Network window - Windows 7/Server 2008 R2

To use Web service print in Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, install the printer driver before making it known to the computer with plug and play.

**1** Install the printer driver for this machine.

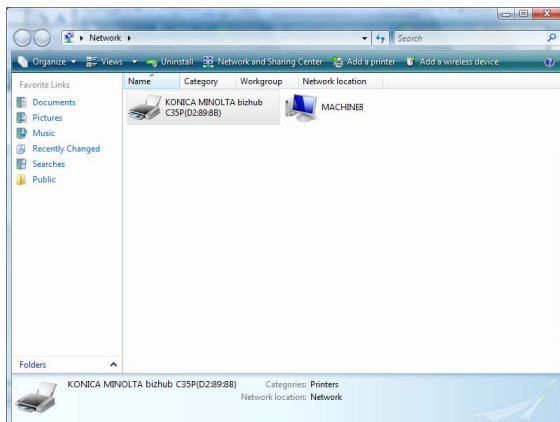


*Install the printer driver using the installer or Add Printer Wizard. The printer driver can be installed in any port. For details, refer to “Adding an IPP Port using the Printer Driver CD/DVD” on page 6-14.*

**2** Turn on the power of the machine while it is connected to the network. Since the printer is searched for, be sure to connect the machine to the network.



- 3 To use Web Service print, check that **Network discovery** is enabled in **Network and Sharing Center** on the computer.
- 4 Open the **Network** window.
  - In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click **Start**, and **Network**.
  - In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, open **Computer** and click **Network**.  
If **Network** is not displayed in **Computer**, click the **Network and Internet** category on the **Control Panel**, and also click **View network computers and devices**.
- 5 Select the device name of this printer, and then click **Install** on the toolbar.

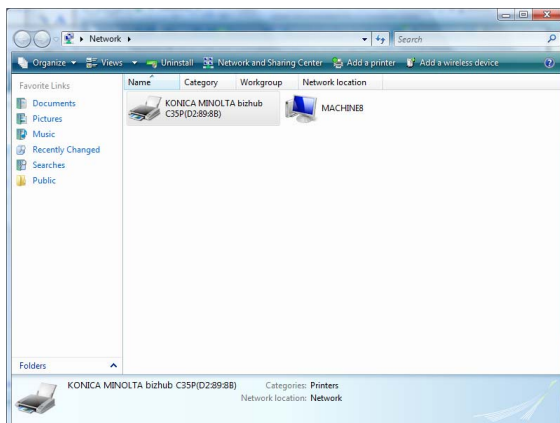


- 6 Check that the icon for the added printer appears in the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.

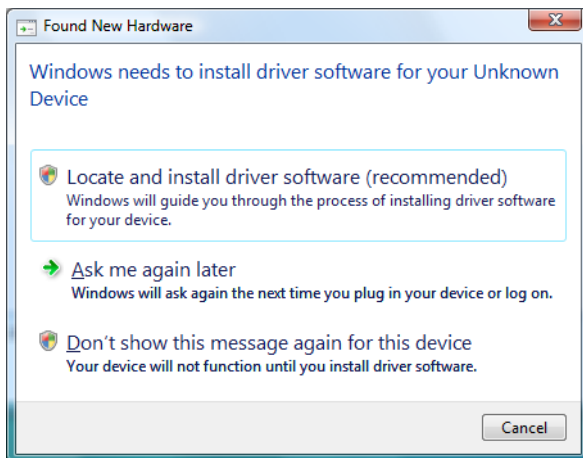
## Adding a printer from the Network window - Windows Vista/Server 2008

- 1 Turn on the power of the machine while it is connected to the network. Since the printer is searched for, be sure to connect the machine to the network.
- 2 To use Web Service print, check that **Network discovery** is enabled in **Network and Sharing Center** on the computer.
- 3 Open the **Network** window.
  - In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click **Start**, and **Network**.  
If **Network** is not displayed in **Computer**, click the **Network and Internet** category on the **Control Panel**, and also click **View network computers and devices**.

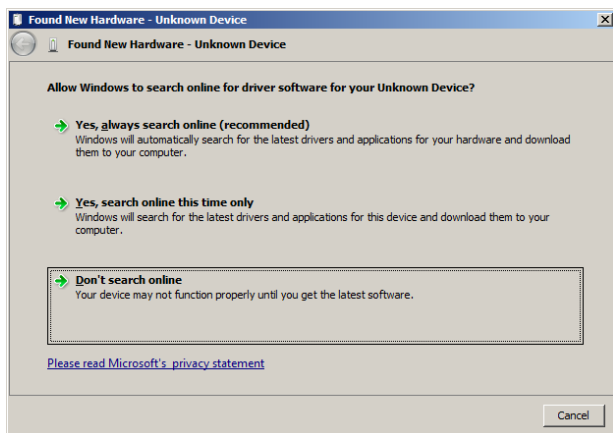
- 4 Select the device name of this printer, and then click **Install** on the toolbar.



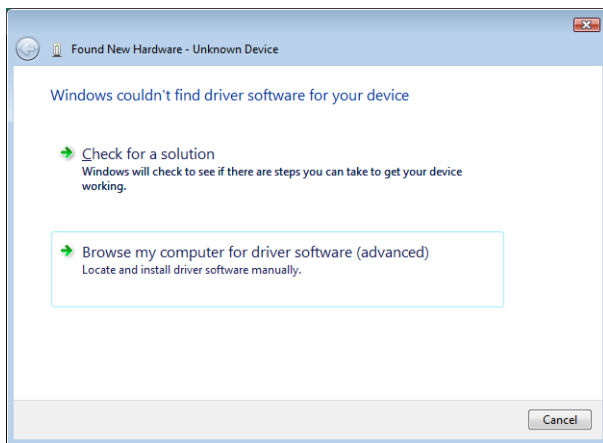
- 5 Click **Locate and install driver software (recommended)**.



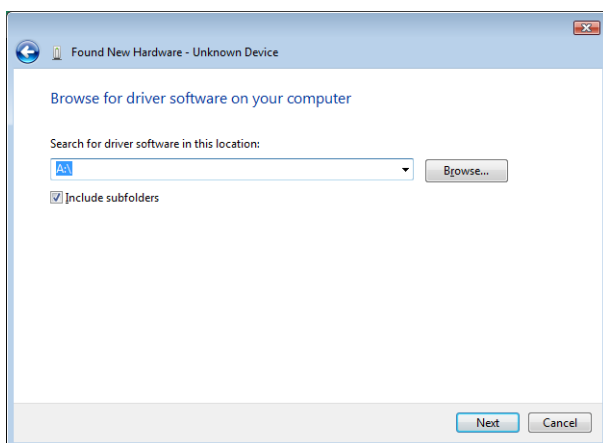
- 6 If Windows Vista is being used, go to step 8.  
If Windows Server 2008 is being used, click **Don't search online**.



- 7 Click **Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)**.



8 Click **Browse**.



9 Locate the directory on the CD/DVD where the printer driver files are located and then click **OK**.

10 Click **Next**.

11 Click **Close**.

## Adding a printer using Add Printer Wizard

In Windows Vista/Server 2008, you can add a Web service device using the addition function of the printer after connecting this machine.



*In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, a window for specifying an installation disk does not appear after the machine is connected to the computer. Install the printer driver in advance and connect the driver as described in "Adding the printer from the Network window - Windows 7/Server 2008 R2".*



*You must have administrator privileges in order to install the printer driver.*

- 1 To use Web Service print, check that **Network discovery** is enabled in **Network and Sharing Center** on the computer.
- 2 Insert the Printer Driver CD/DVD in the CD/DVD drive of your computer. The installer starts up.

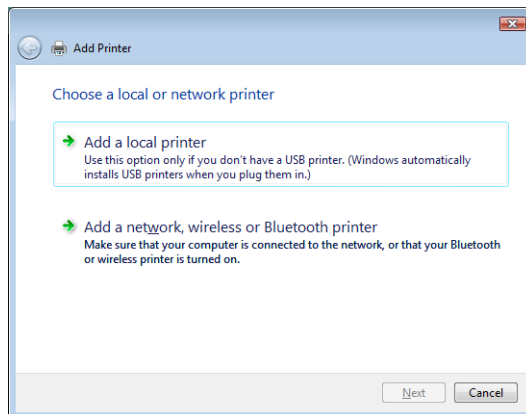


*Click **Run AutoRun.exe** in the AutoPlay dialog box that appears when the CD/DVD is inserted.*

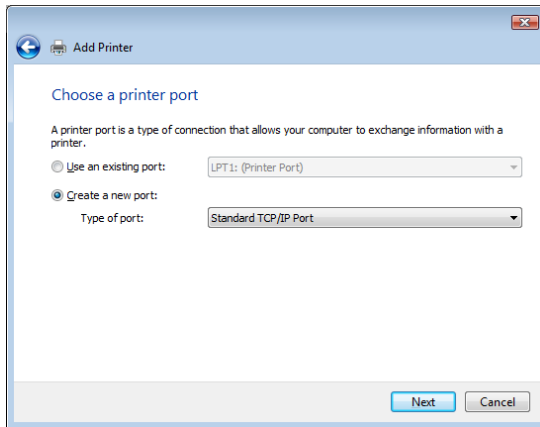


*If the installer does not start up automatically, double-click the **Auto-Run.exe** icon on the CD/DVD.*

- 3 Exit the installer.
- 4 Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Printers**.
- 5 Click **Add a printer** on the toolbar.
- 6 In the dialog box, click **Add a local printer**.



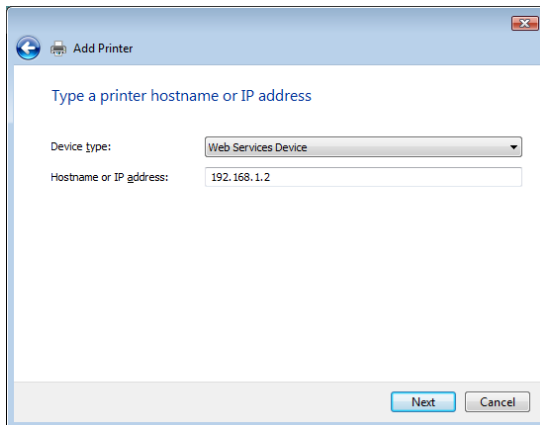
- 7 Click **Create a new port**, and then select **Standard TCP/IP Port**.



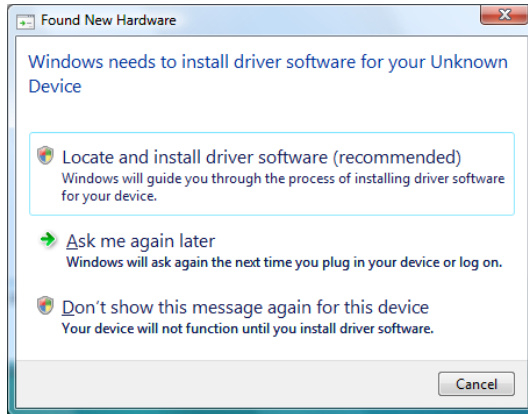
- 8 Click **Next**.

- 9 Select **Web Services Device** and type the IP address for the printer, and then click **Next**.

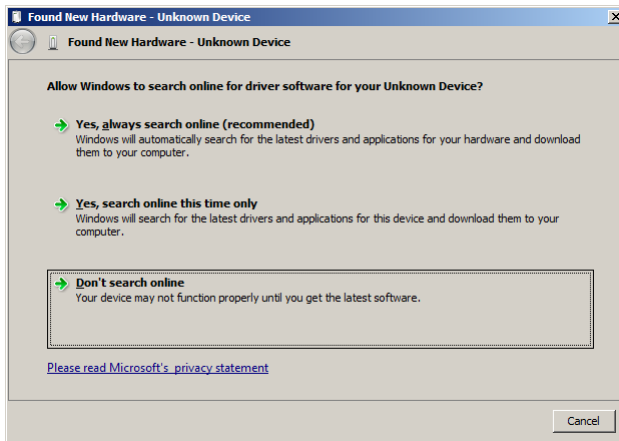
The **Found New Hardware** Wizard dialog box appears.



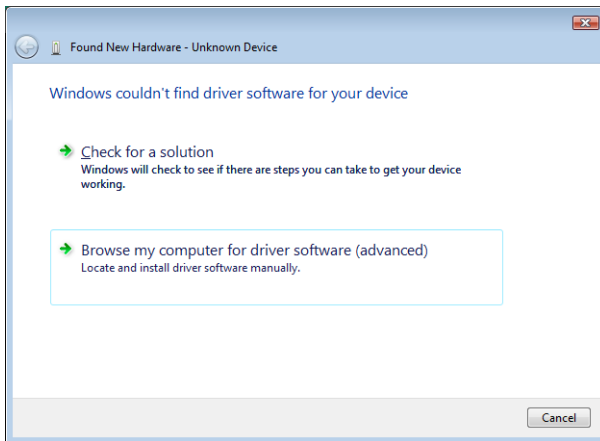
10 Click **Locate and install driver software (recommended)**.



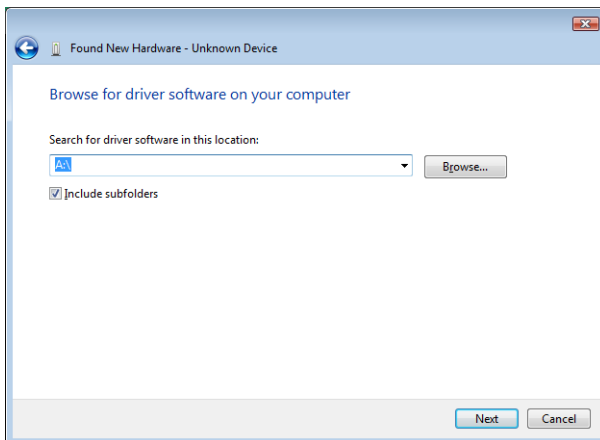
11 If Windows Vista is being used, go to step 12.  
If Windows Server 2008 is being used, click **Don't search online**.



12 Click **Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)**.



13 Click **Browse**.



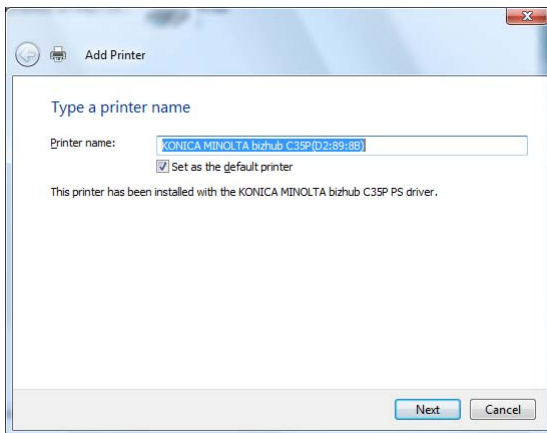
14 Locate the directory on the CD/DVD where the printer driver files and then click **OK**.

15 Click **Next**.

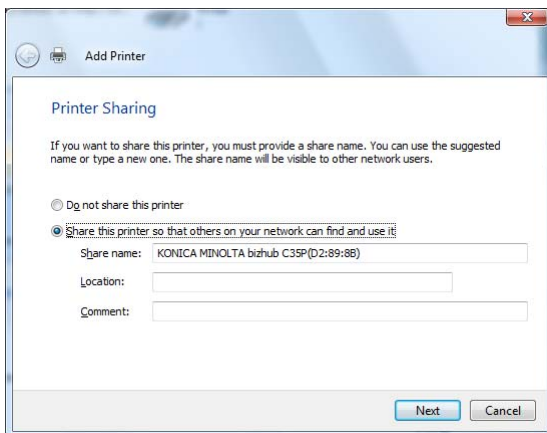
16 Click **Close**.



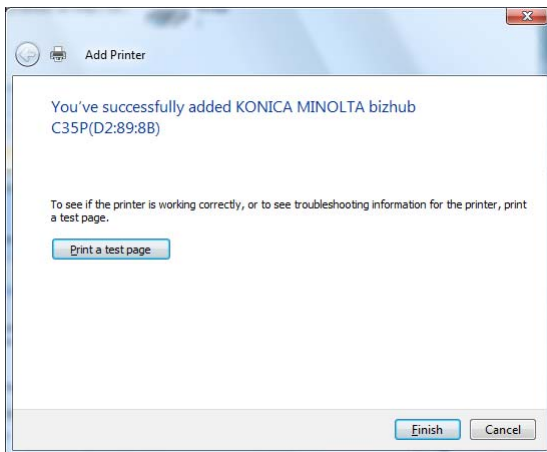
## 17 Click **Next**.



## 18 Select whether the printer driver is to be shared, and then click **Next**.



## 19 Click **Finish**.



This completes the installation of the printer driver.

## Installing the Driver When the Operating Systems of the Server and Client Use a Different Number of Bits (With Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008)

When Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008 is running on the print server or when the operating systems running on the print server and client computer use a different number of bits, the additional driver may not be installed correctly on the print server.

This can be corrected by specifying the setup information file (ntprint.inf) for the operating system with the different number of bits while installing the additional driver on the print server.

The procedure for specifying the setup information file for a computer other than the print server and installing the additional driver is described below.



*From the print server, map the system drive of the client computer as a network drive. The drive to be mapped must first be specified as a shared drive.*

### Installing the Additional Driver

As an example, the following procedure describes the operations performed when Windows Server 2008 (32 bits) is running on the print server and Windows Vista (64 bits) is running on the client computer.

- 1 Specify the client computer (64 bits) drive installed with the operating system (normally, drive C) as a shared drive.

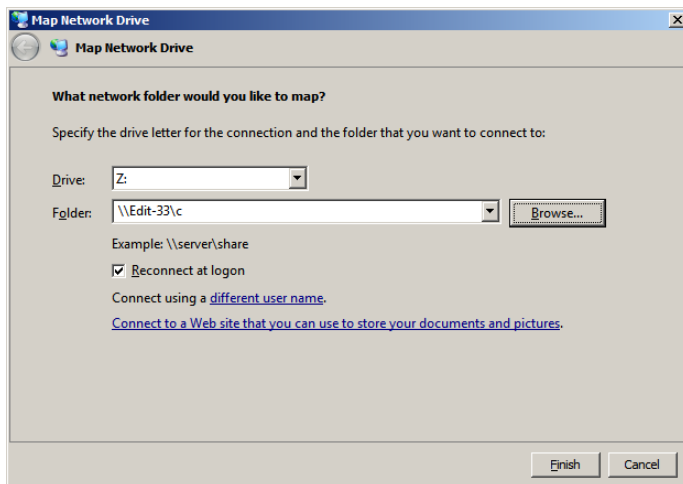


*This setting is available for only PostScript driver.*

- 2 From the print server (32 bits), map the client computer (64 bits) drive (for example, “C”), specified as a shared drive in step 1, as a network drive (for example, “Z”).

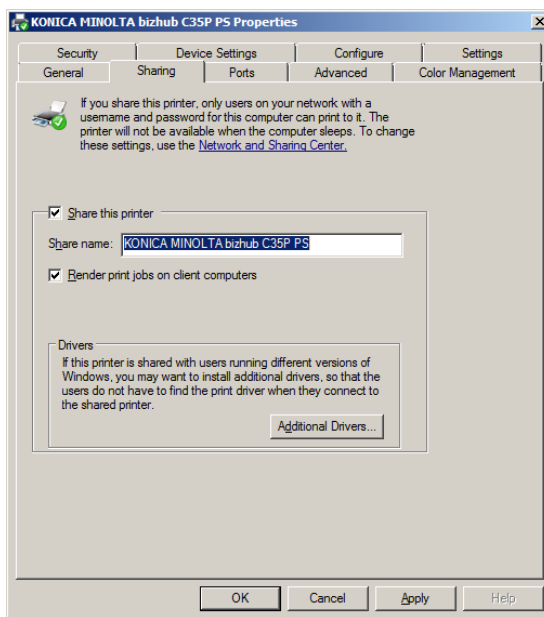


*This setting is available for only PS driver.*

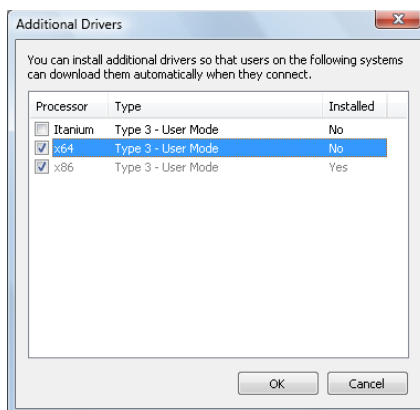


- 3 Install on the print server (32 bits) the driver for a 32-bit operating system.

- 4 Right-click the printer that was installed, and then click the appropriate menu command to display printer properties.



- 5 Select the **Sharing** tab, and then select the **Share this printer** check box.
- 6 Click **Additional Drivers**.  
The Additional Drivers dialog box appears.
- 7 Under **Processor**, select the **x64** check box, and then click **OK**.

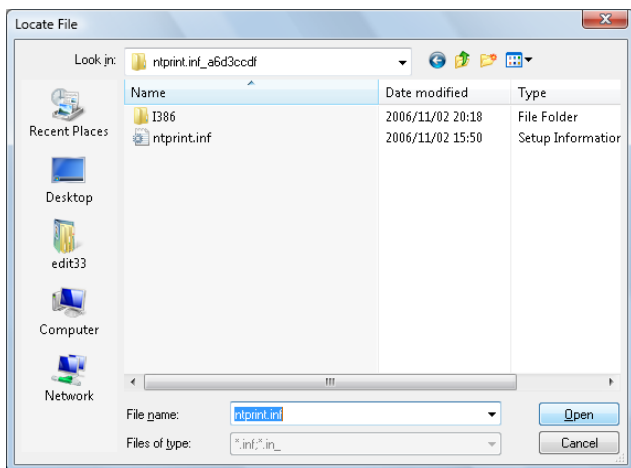


- 8 Specify the folder containing the driver for a 64-bit operating system. A dialog box appears, requesting the location of the setup information file.
- 9 Click **Browse**, and then select the setup information file (ntprint.inf) on the client computer mapped as a network drive.



*This setting is available for only PS driver.*

- Specify the file at the following path.  
z:\Windows\System32\DriverStore\FileRepository\Ntprint.inf\_xxx
- In the path mentioned above, “z” indicates the mapped network drive. In addition, the characters indicated by “\_xxx” at the end may differ depending on the driver version.
- Depending on the client computer being used, the setup information file may be stored in a different location. If there is a folder named “amd64” at the same level as “ntprint.inf”, specify the setup information file for a 64-bit operating system located within that folder. In addition, if the driver for a 32-bit operating system is to be installed, specify the setup information file in the folder named “i386” at the same level as “ntprint.inf”.



- 10 Click **Open**.  
The installation begins.
- 11 After the installation is completed, click **Close**.  
This completes the installation of the driver for a 64-bit operating system onto the print server (32 bits).

## Troubleshooting

| Symptom  | Action  |
|--|---|
| Some client functions are not available with the Point and Print feature when the server is running Windows Server 2008 R2/Server 2008/Server 2003 and the client computer is running Windows 7/Vista/XP/2000. | Install the printer driver directly on the client computer. |

# ***Using PageScope Web Connection***

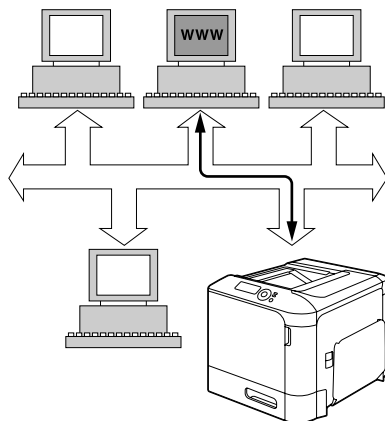
# **7**



# About PageScope Web Connection

This chapter provides information on PageScope Web Connection, an HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol)-based web page that resides in your printer and that you can access using your Web browser.

This page gives you instant access to printer status and the most frequently used printer configuration options. Anyone on your network can access the printer using their web browser software. In addition, with the proper password, you can change the configuration of the printer without leaving your PC.



*Users who are not given passwords by the administrator can still view the configuration settings and options but are not able to save or apply changes.*

## Display Language

The language used in the PageScope Web Connection screens is specified from the printer's control panel. For details on specifying the display language, refer to the User's Guide (CD/DVD) provided with the printer.

In addition, the language can be selected from the **Language** drop-down list in PageScope Web Connection. For details, refer to "Language Setting" on page 7-10.

## Requirements

To use PageScope Web Connection, the following is required:

- Windows 7/Vista/XP/Server 2008 R2/Server 2008/Server 2003/2000  
Mac OS X 10.2.8/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6  
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, SUSE Linux Enterprise 10

- Microsoft Internet Explorer version 6.0 or later  
Mozilla Firefox version 2.0 or later



*You do not need an Internet connection.*

- TCP/IP communication software (used by PageScope Web Connection)  
installed on your PC
- A network, to which both your PC and the printer are connected



*You cannot access PageScope Web Connection using a local (USB ) connection.*

# Setting Up the Printer Web Page

Setting up the printer web page to run on your network involves two basic steps:

- Determining the name or address of your printer
- Setting up the “no proxy” preferences in your browser software

## Determining the Printer Name

The printer web page can be accessed in two ways:



*The printer names can also be determined via WINS if the network supports it.*

- Through the assigned name of the printer—This name comes from the IP host table (the filename is **hosts**) on the computer system and is usually assigned by the system administrator (for example, bizhub C35P). It may be more convenient for you to use the printer name than the IP address.

### ***Location of the Host Table on the PC***

- Windows 7/Vista/XP/Server 2008 R2/Server 2008/Server 2003  
  \windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts
- Windows 2000\  
  winnt\system32\drivers\etc\hosts
- Through the printer's IP address—The IP address of your printer is a unique number and, therefore, may be the preferred identification to enter, especially if you have more printers active in your network. The printer's IP address is listed on the configuration page.

### ***Location of the Configuration Page in the Printer's Configuration Menu***

- PRINT MENU - CONFIGURATION PG menu

## Setting Up Your Browser Software

Since your printer resides on your intranet and is not accessible beyond the firewall of your network, you must set up the proper “preferences” in your browser software. Your printer name or IP address must be added to the “no proxy” list in the preferences dialog box of the browser.



*You need to do this procedure only once.*

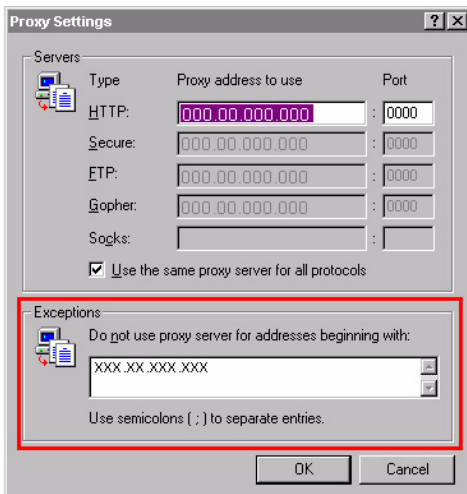
The sample screens below may be different from yours depending on software versions and operating systems in use.



*Our examples represent the IP address of the printer with: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx. Always enter your printer's IP address without leading zeros. For example, 192.168.001.002 should be entered as 192.168.1.2.*

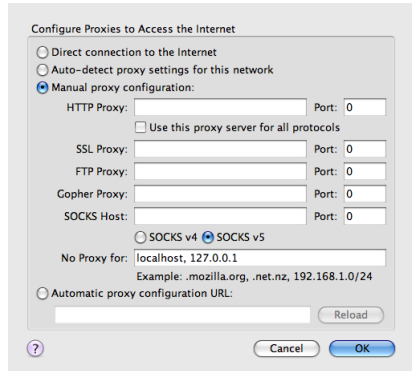
### Internet Explorer (version 6.0 for Windows)

- 1 Start Internet Explorer.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu choose **Internet Options**.
- 3 Select the **Connections** tab on the dialog box.
- 4 Choose the **LAN Settings** button to display the Local Area Network (LAN) Settings dialog box.
- 5 Select **Advanced** in Proxy server to open the Proxy Settings dialog box.
- 6 In the **Exceptions** text box, type a comma after the last entry and then type the printer name or the IP address of your printer.
- 7 Choose **OK** three times to return to the main browser window.
- 8 Enter the printer's IP address in the URL Address box to access the printer home page.



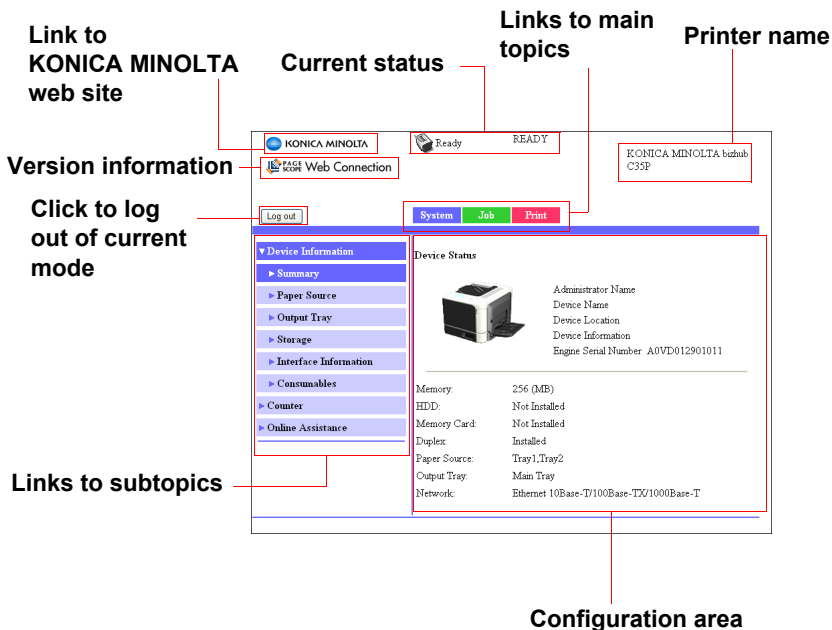
## Mozilla Firefox (version 2.0 for Mac OS X 10.5)

- 1 Start Mozilla Firefox.
- 2 From the **Firefox** menu choose **Preferences**.
- 3 Click **Advanced** at the top of the dialog box.
- 4 Click the **Network** tab.
- 5 In the **Connection** section, click **Settings**.  
The Connection Settings dialog box appears.
- 6 Select the **Manual proxy configuration** radio button.
- 7 In the **No Proxy for:** text box, type a comma after the last entry, and then type the printer name or the IP address of your printer.
- 8 Click **OK** in the two dialog boxes to return to the main browser window.
- 9 Enter the printer name or IP address in the URL Location box to access the printer home page.



# Understanding the PageScope Web Connection Window

The illustration below identifies the navigation and configuration areas of the windows that you see in PageScope Web Connection windows.



## Navigation

Selecting the main topic and subtopic displays the configuration area for the printer options (parameters) associated with your selections.






To change a current setting, click on the current setting and then select from the available choices or enter the new value.



*In order to apply or save any changes made to the configuration settings, PageScope Web Connection must be logged in from Administrator Mode. (For details, refer to "Administrator Mode" on page 7-12.)*

## Current Status

The current status of the printer is displayed at the top of all PageScope Web Connection windows. The icon displays the type of status being displayed.

| Icon  | Status  | Description   | Examples                          |
|---|---------|---|-----------------------------------|
|  | Ready   | The printer is online and either ready to print or printing.                      | READY<br>WARMING UP<br>PRINTING   |
|  | Warning | The printer needs attention, but printing continues.                              | PAPER EMPTY TRAY 1<br>TONER LOW C |
|  | Error   | The printer needs attention before printing can resume.                           | TONER OUT<br>PAPER JAM TRAY2      |
|  | Caution | The printer needs attention, but printing continues.                              | PAPERMISMATCH TRAY1               |
|  | Fatal   | The printer must be rebooted. If that doesn't fix the error, service is required. | SERVICE CALL C002<br>RAM ERROR    |

# Logging on to PageScope Web Connection

## Login Page

User authentication, account track and language settings can be specified by using PageScope Web Connection. In order to perform authentication, you must log on in Administrator Mode. For details on authentication, refer to "Authentication" on page 7-63 and "User Authentication" on page 7-171



*As many as 100 clients (users and an administrator) can log on to PageScope Web Connection at the same time. These can be logged on as Public User, Registered User or Administrator. However, no more than one client at a time can be logged on as Administrator.*

**KONICA MINOLTA** **PAGE SCOPE Web Connection**

**Log in**

☐ Public User  
☐ Registered User  
☐ Administrator

User Name   
User Password   
Account Name   
Account Password

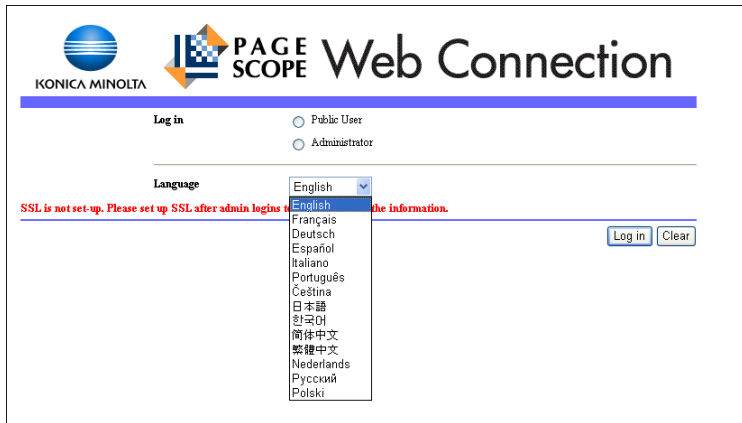
Language

**SSL is not set-up. Please set up SSL after admin logins to secure safety of the information.**



## Language Setting

If necessary, the display language used for Web Connection can be changed.



The screenshot shows the 'PageScope Web Connection' login interface. At the top left is the 'KONICA MINOLTA' logo. To its right is the 'PageScope' logo, which consists of a stylized 'P' and 'S' made of blue and orange squares. The title 'Web Connection' is displayed in a large, black, serif font. Below the title is a horizontal blue bar. Underneath the bar, there are two radio buttons for 'Log in': 'Public User' and 'Administrator'. Below these is a 'Language' dropdown menu. The dropdown is open, showing a list of languages: English, Français, Deutsch, Español, Italiano, Português, Čeština, 日本語, 한국어, 简体中文, 繁體中文, Nederlands, Русский, and Polski. To the left of the dropdown, a red error message reads: 'SSL is not set-up. Please set up SSL after admin login.' To the right of the dropdown, another red message reads: 'the information.' At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: 'Log in' and 'Clear'.

## Public User Mode

In Public User Mode, you can view configuration settings but not change them.

- 1 Select **Public User**.
- 2 Click the **Log in** button.

## Registered User Mode


In Registered User Mode, you can view configuration settings but not change them.

## User Authentication Mode




To enter User Authentication Mode, log on in Administrator mode, set **User Authentication** (in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) to **On**, and then register a new user in the **System - Authentication - User Registration - New Registration** page. For details, refer to “User Registration” on page 7-64 and “User Authentication” on page 7-171.

- 1 Select **Registered User**.
- 2 Type in the user name and user password in the **User Name** and **User Password** text boxes.

- 3 If **Account Track** (in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) is set to **On**, continue with step 4. If it is set to **Off**, continue with step 5.
  - 4
    - (If **Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track** is set to **Do Not Synchronize** and **Account Track Method** is set to **Account Name & Password** in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) Type in the account name and account password in the **Account Name** and **Account Password** text boxes.
    - (If **Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track** is set to **Do Not Synchronize** and **Account Track Method** is set to **Password Only** in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) Type in the account password in the **Account Password** text box.
-  When **Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track** (in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) is set to **Synchronize**, **Account Name** and **Account Password** will not be displayed in the login page even if **Account Track** is set to **On**.
- 5 Click the **Log in** button.

## Account Track Mode

 To enter Account Track Mode, log on in Administrator mode, set **Account Track** (in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) to **On**, and then register a new account in the **System - Authentication - Account Track Registration - New Registration** page. For details, refer to “Account Track Registration” on page 7-67 and “User Authentication” on page 7-171.

- 1 Select **Account**.
- 2
  - (If **Account Track Method** is set to **Account Name & Password** in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) Type in the account name and account password in the **Account Name** and **Account Password** text boxes.
  - (If **Account Track Method** is set to **Password Only** in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) Type in the account password in the **Account Password** text box.
- 3 Click the **Log in** button.

## Administrator Mode

In order to change any configuration settings through PageScope Web Connection, you must first enter Administrator Mode.

- 1 Select **Administrator**.
- 2 Click the **Log in** button.
- 3 Type the password in the **Admin Password** text box.



The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "PageScope Web Connection". The header area includes the Konica Minolta logo on the left and the PageScope logo and "Web Connection" text on the right. A thick blue horizontal bar spans the width of the content area. Below this bar, the text "Admin Password" is displayed next to a text input field. At the bottom right of the window, there are two buttons labeled "OK" and "Cancel".




*Default password is set to “administrator”; however, once you have logged on in Administrator Mode, the password can be specified in the **System - Admin Password** window.*


- 4 Click **OK** button.

# Viewing Printer Status


## System Page

On this page you find printer status and current configuration settings, printer identification, and links to all other web pages.

 KONICA MINOLTA

 Ready

READY

 PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub  
C35P

Log out

SystemJobPrint

▼ Device Information

▶ Summary

▶ Paper Source

▶ Output Tray

▶ Storage


▶ Interface Information

▶ Consumables

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

Device Status



Administrator Name  
Device Name  
Device Location  
Device Information  
Engine Serial Number A0VD012901011

Memory: 256 (MB)  
HDD: Not Installed  
Memory Card: Not Installed  
Duplex: Installed  
Paper Source: Tray1,Tray2  
Output Tray: Main Tray  
Network: Ethernet 10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T




*All of the information displayed on the System page is read only.*

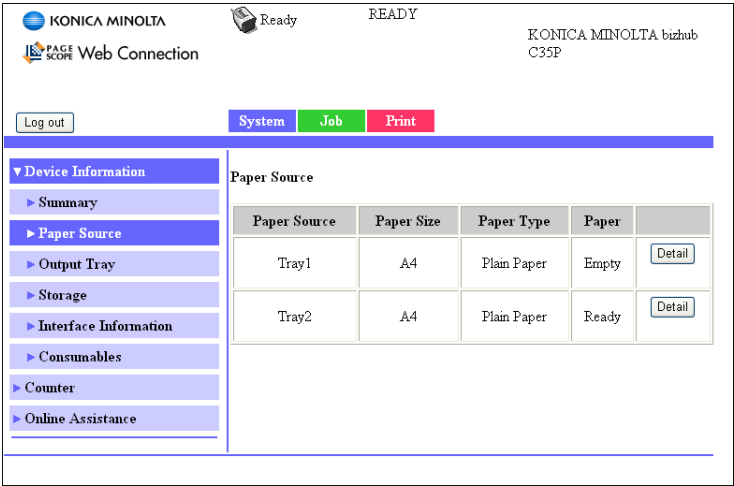
## Device Information

### Summary (previous page)

The **System - Device Information - Summary** window provides the following information.

| Item         | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| Memory       | Displays the amount of memory installed in the printer.  |
| HDD          | If an optional hard disk kit HD-P03 is installed in the printer, displays the size of the hard disk.<br><br>If no optional hard disk kit HD-P03 is installed in the printer, displays "Not Installed".                               |
| Memory Card  | If an optional CompactFlash card is installed in the printer, displays the size of the CompactFlash card.<br><br>If no optional CompactFlash card is installed in the printer, displays "Not Installed".                             |
| Duplex       | Identifies whether the optional duplex option is "Installed" or "Not Installed".   |
| Paper Source | Identifies the paper feed units installed on the printer.<br><br> <b>Tray3</b> appears only if the optional lower feeder unit PF-P09 are installed. |
| Output Tray  | Identifies the output tray installed on the printer.   |
| Network      | Lists the installed printer interface (Ethernet 10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T).   |


# Paper Source





The **System - Device Information - Paper Source** window provides the following information.

| Item          | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Paper Source  | Identifies the paper feed units Tray 1/2/3 installed on the printer. |
| Paper Size    | Indicates the size of paper loaded in a specific tray.               |
| Paper Type    | Indicates the type of paper loaded in a specific tray.               |
| Paper         | Indicates the paper status (“Ready” or “Empty”) for each tray.       |
| Detail button | Displays detailed information about the paper trays.                 |

# Paper Source (Detail)

 KONICA MINOLTA

 Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub  
C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

▼ Device Information

▶ Summary

▶ Paper Source

▶ Output Tray

▶ Storage

▶ Interface Information

▶ Consumables

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

Detail

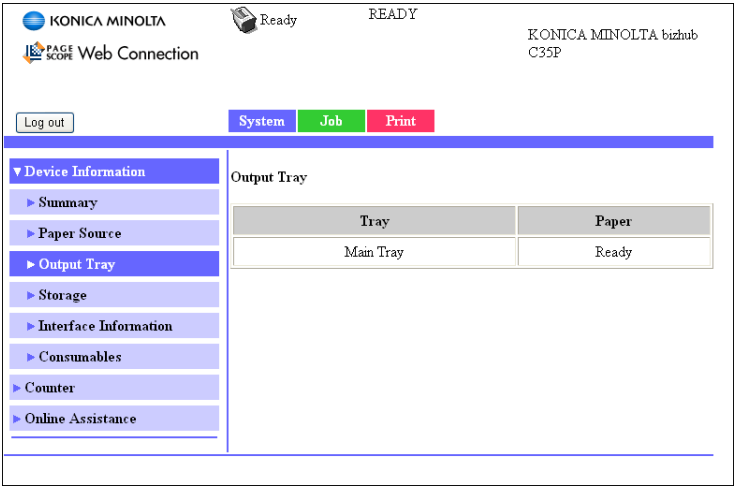
|              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| Paper Source | Tray2       |
| Paper Size   | A4          |
| Paper Type   | Plain Paper |
| Capacity     | 250         |
| Paper        | Ready       |

Back

The **System - Device Information - Paper Source - Detail** window provides the following information.

| Item         | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| Paper Source | Displays the names of the paper trays.             |
| Paper Size   | Displays the paper sizes.                          |
| Paper Type   | Displays the paper types.                          |
| Capacity     | Displays the maximum capacity for each paper tray. |
| Paper        | Displays the amount of paper remaining.            |
| Back button  | Returns to the previous screen.                    |

# Output Tray





The **System - Device Information - Output Tray** window provides the following information.

| Item  | Description   |
|-------|---|
| Tray  | Displays the name of the output tray.                 |
| Paper | Displays the status (Ready, Full) of the output tray. |




# Storage

 KONICA MINOLTA

 Ready

READY

 Web Connection

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub  
C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

▼ Device Information

▶ Summary

▶ Paper Source

▶ Output Tray

▶ Storage

▶ Interface Information

▶ Consumables

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ User Authentication

Hard Disk

| Total | Used | Remaining |
|-------|------|-----------|
| - MB  | - MB | - MB      |

Memory Card

| Total | Used | Remaining |
|-------|------|-----------|
| - MB  | - MB | - MB      |

The **System - Device Information - Storage** window provides the following information.

| Item      | Description   |
|-----------|---|
| Total     | Displays the total amount of space on the hard disk and CompactFlash card.<br>If no optional storages are installed, “-” are displayed.         |
| Used      | Displays the amount of space on the hard disk and CompactFlash card that are used.<br>If no optional storages are installed, “-” are displayed. |
| Remaining | Displays the amount of space remaining on the hard disk and CompactFlash card.<br>If no optional storages are installed, “-” are displayed.     |

## Interface Information

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out

SystemJobPrint

▼ Device Information

▶ Summary

▶ Paper Source

▶ Output Tray

▶ Storage

▶ Interface Information

▶ Consumables

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

Protocol Information

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| TCP/IP      | Enable  |
| IPv6        | Enable  |
| Bonjour     | Enable  |
| FTP         | Enable  |
| Dynamic DNS | Disable |
| IPP         | Enable  |
| LPD         | Enable  |
| RAW Port    | Enable  |
| SLP         | Enable  |
| SMTP        | Enable  |
| SNMP        | Enable  |
| WSD Print   | Enable  |
| LLTD        | Enable  |
| LLMNR       | Enable  |
| AppleTalk   | Enable  |
| NetWare     | Disable |
| IEEE802.1x  | Disable |

Network Information

|      |   |
|------|---|
| Type | Ethernet 10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T |
|------|---|

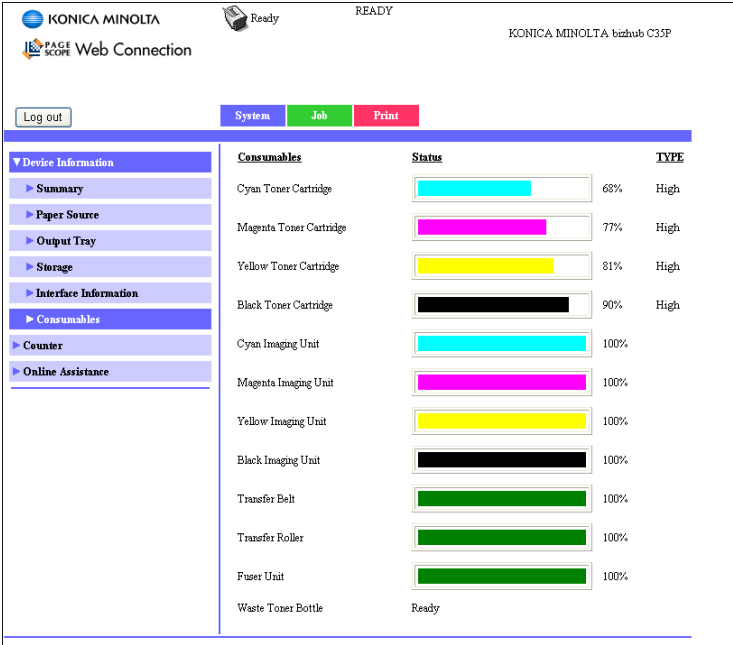
The **System - Device Information - Interface Information** window provides the following information.

| Item                 |         | Description  |
|----------------------|---------|--|
| Protocol Information | TCP/IP  | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, TCP/IP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, TCP/IP is disabled.    |
|                      | IPv6    | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, IPv6 is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, IPv6 is disabled.        |
|                      | Bonjour | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, Bonjour is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is displayed, Bonjour is disabled. |
|                      | FTP     | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, FTP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, FTP is disabled.          |

| Item |             | Description   |
|------|-------------|---|
|      | Dynamic DNS | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, Dynamic DNS is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, Dynamic DNS is disabled. |
|      | IPP         | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, IPP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, IPP is disabled.                 |
|      | LPD         | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, LPD is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, LPD is disabled.                 |
|      | RAW Port    | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, RAW Port is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, RAW Port is disabled.       |
|      | SLP         | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, SLP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, SLP is disabled.                 |
|      | SMTP        | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, SMTP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, SMTP is disabled.               |
|      | SNMP        | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, SNMP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, SNMP is disabled.               |
|      | WSD Print   | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, WSD Print is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, WSD Print is disabled.     |
|      | LLTD        | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, LLTD is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, LLTD is disabled.               |
|      | LLNMR       | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, LLNMR is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, LLNMR is disabled.             |
|      | AppleTalk   | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, AppleTalk is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, AppleTalk is disabled.     |
|      | NetWare     | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, NetWare is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, NetWare is disabled.         |
|      | IEEE802.1x  | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, IEEE802.1x is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, IEEE802.1x is disabled.   |

| Item                |                               | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Network Information | Type                          | Identifies the type of network interface installed on the printer (Ethernet 10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T). |
|                     | Ethernet Speed                | Indicates the transmission speed for the network and the transmission method for bidirectional transmission. |
|                     | IP Address                    | Identifies the IP (Internet Protocol) address of the Ethernet interface.                                     |
|                     | IPv6 Link Local Address       | Identifies the IPv6 link local address of the Ethernet interface.  |
|                     | IPv6 Global Address           | Identifies the IPv6 global address of the Ethernet interface.  |
|                     | MAC Address                   | Identifies the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the Ethernet interface.                                 |
|                     | Host Name                     | Identifies the host name for the printer.  |
|                     | Print Server Name (NetWare)   | Identifies the Print Server Name for the NetWare.  |
|                     | Printer Name (AppleTalk)      | Identifies the printer name on AppleTalk.  |
|                     | Current Zone Name (AppleTalk) | Identifies the Current Zone Name for the AppleTalk.  |
|                     | Bonjour Name                  | Displays the Bonjour name for the printer.   |
|                     | WSD Printer Name              | Displays the WSD printer name for the printer.   |


# Consumables





The **System - Device Information - Consumables** window provides the following information.

| Item        | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| Consumables | Identifies the type of consumable that is being monitored.   |
| Status      | Indicates the remaining life of the consumables. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Toner Cartridge, Imaging Unit, Transfer Belt, Transfer Roller, Fuser Unit: Percentage</li><li>■ Waste Toner Bottle: Ready, Near Full, or Full</li></ul> |
| TYPE        | Identifies the type of Toner Cartridge. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ High</li></ul>   |

# Counter

 KONICA MINOLTA

 Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

SystemJobPrint

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

Counter

Pages Printed

|                  | Monochrome | Full Color | Total |
|------------------|------------|------------|-------|
| Total Pages      | 0          | 12         | 12    |
| Duplex Pages     | 0          | 0          | 0     |
| Normalized Pages | 0          | 11         | 11    |

Sheets Printed by Paper Size

|             | Total |
|-------------|-------|
| Legal       | 0     |
| Letter      | 1     |
| A4          | 12    |
| B5(JIS)     | 0     |
| A5          | 0     |
| Custom Size | 0     |
| Other       | 0     |

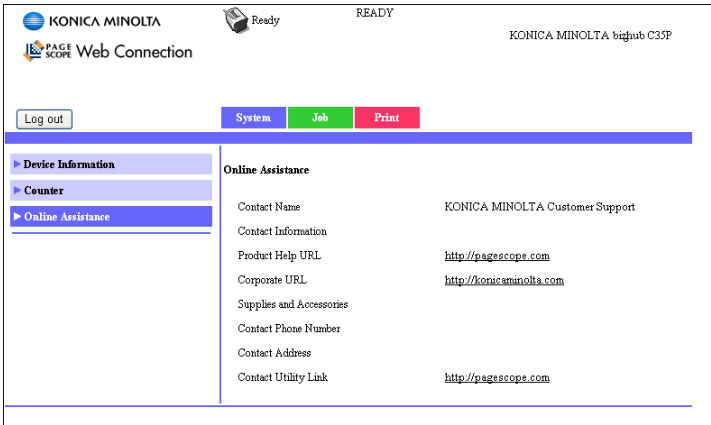
Sheets Printed by Paper Type

|                  | Total |
|------------------|-------|
| Plain Paper      | 13    |
| Recycled         | 0     |
| Thick 1          | 0     |
| Thick 2          | 0     |
| Label            | 0     |
| Envelope         | 0     |
| Postcard         | 0     |
| Letterhead       | 0     |
| Glossy 1         | 0     |
| Glossy 2         | 0     |
| Single Side Only | 0     |
| Special Paper    | 0     |

The **System - Counter** window provides the following information.

| Item                         | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Pages Printed                | Indicates the number of prints.                       |
| Sheets Printed by Paper Size | Indicates the number of prints grouped by Paper Size. |
| Sheets Printed by Paper Type | Indicates the number of prints grouped by Paper Type. |


# Online Assistance




The **System - Online Assistance** window provides the following information.


| Item                     | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Contact Name             | Displays the organization that provides assistance with the printer.           |
| Contact Information      | Displays the web address for assistance.                                       |
| Product Help URL         | Displays the web address for assistance.                                       |
| Corporate URL            | Displays the KONICA MINOLTA web address.                                       |
| Supplies and Accessories | Displays the web address where you can order printer supplies and accessories. |
| Contact Phone Number     | Displays the telephone number of the printer administrator.                    |
| Contact Address          | Displays the e-mail address for support.                                       |
| Contact Utility Link     | Displays a link to the Printer Management Utilities.                           |


# User Authentication

 This page appears only when logged on to Registered User Mode.

## User Password Change

 KONICA MINOLTA

 iPAGE SCORE Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub  
C35P

Log out

SystemJobPrint

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▼ User Authentication

▶ User Password Change

▶ Registration Information

User Password Change

User Nameuser001

Current Password

New Password

Retype New Password


Apply

Clear

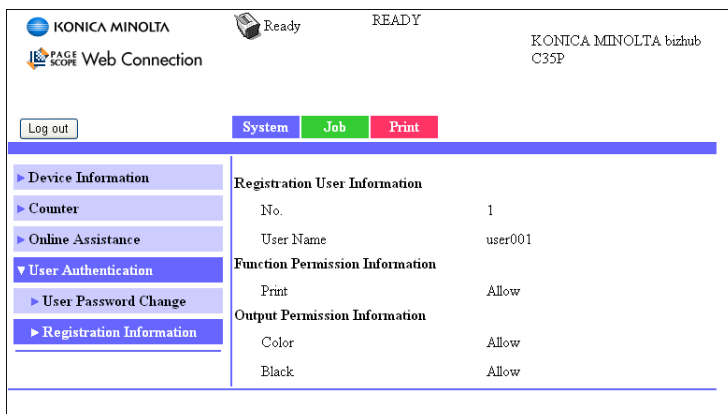
The password for the user who is logged on can be changed from the **System - User Authentication - User Password Change** page.

| Item                | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| User Name           | Shows the name of user who is logged on.  |
| Current Password    | Type in the current password for the user who is logged on.<br><br>Range: Up to 64 characters<br>Default: [Blank] |
| New Password        | Type in the new password.<br><br>Range: Up to 64 characters<br>Default: [Blank]                                   |
| Retype New Password | Type in the new password again for confirmation.<br><br>Range: Up to 64 characters<br>Default: [Blank]            |



| Item         | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| Apply button | Applies the new password.<br><br> <i>If the password typed in three text boxes doesn't match, the following message displays when you choose the <b>Apply</b> button: "Password was changed unsuccessfully. Please retry." Retype the passwords in both text boxes.</i> |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

## Registration Information



The screenshot shows the KONICA MINOLTA Web Connection interface. At the top, there are logos for KONICA MINOLTA and PAGE SCOPE, along with status indicators 'Ready' and 'READY'. The user is logged in as 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P'. A 'Log out' button is visible. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'System', 'Job', and 'Print'. The 'System' tab is selected, and the 'User Authentication' section is expanded, showing 'Registration Information'. The 'Registration User Information' section displays the following details:

| Registration User Information |         |
|-------------------------------|---------|
| No.                           | 1       |
| User Name                     | user001 |


The 'Function Permission Information' section displays the following details:

| Function Permission Information |       |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| Print                           | Allow |

The 'Output Permission Information' section displays the following details:

| Output Permission Information |       |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| Color                         | Allow |
| Black                         | Allow |

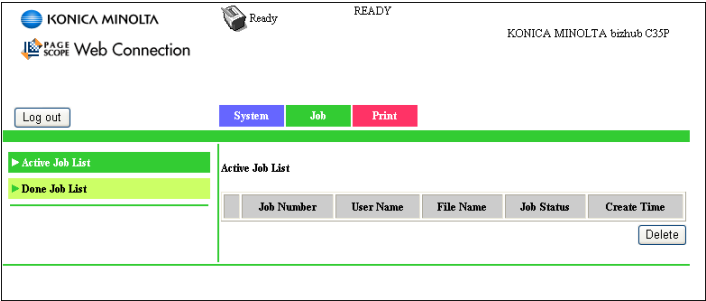
The registration information for the user who is logged on can be checked from the **System - User Authentication - Registration Information** page.

| Item                            | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Registration User Information   | Shows the registration number (No.), user name and account name for the user who is logged on.<br><br> <i>Only the account name is displayed if <b>Synchronize User Authentication &amp; Account Track</b> is set to <b>Synchronize</b> in the <b>Network - Authentication - User Authentication</b> page.</i> |
| Function Permission Information | Shows whether printing is permitted by the user who is logged on.   |

| Item                          | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Output Permission Information | Shows whether color printing and whether black-and-white printing is permitted by the user who is logged on. |

# Job Page

This page allows you to view the status of current print jobs.

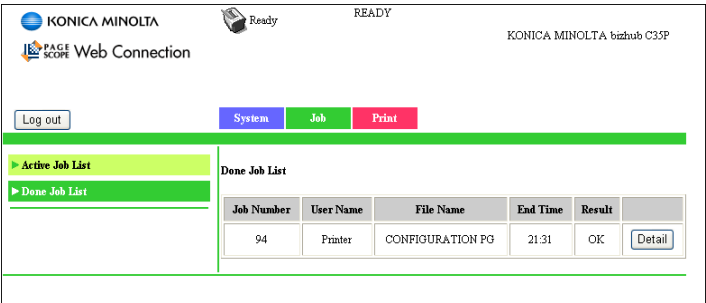


## Active Job List (shown above)

The **Job - Active Job List** window provides the following information for up to 49 print jobs:

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Job Number    | Displays the print job identification number. Each print job that the printer receives is assigned a unique identification number.  |
| User Name     | If known, displays the owner of the print job.  |
| File Name     | Displays the name of the print file.<br><br>This cell remains empty if <b>Hide Personal Information</b> is set to <b>On</b> in the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> window. |
| Job Status    | Displays the current status of the print job (Parsing, Printing, Cancel, Pending, Abort or Pending).  |
| Create Time   | Displays the time that the job was queued.  |
| Delete button | Deletes the print job(s) whose check boxes in column 1 are checked.   |


# Done Job List





The **Job - Done Job List** window provides the following information for up to 50 print jobs:

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Job Number    | Displays the print job identification number. Each print job that the printer receives is assigned a unique identification number.  |
| User Name     | If known, displays the owner of the print job.  |
| File Name     | Displays the name of the print file.<br><br>This cell remains empty if <b>Hide Personal Information</b> is set to <b>On</b> in the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> window. |
| End Time      | Displays the time that printing finished.   |
| Result        | Displays the result of the print job (OK, Error, or Canceled).  |
| Detail button | Displays a screen containing details.   |

# Done Job List (Detail)

 KONICA MINOLTA

 Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

▶ Active Job List

▶ Done Job List

Detail

|               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| Job Number    | 94               |
| User Name     | Printer          |
| File Name     | CONFIGURATION PG |
| Delivery Type | Report Print     |
| Create Time   | 21:31            |
| End Time      | 21:31            |
| Result        | OK               |

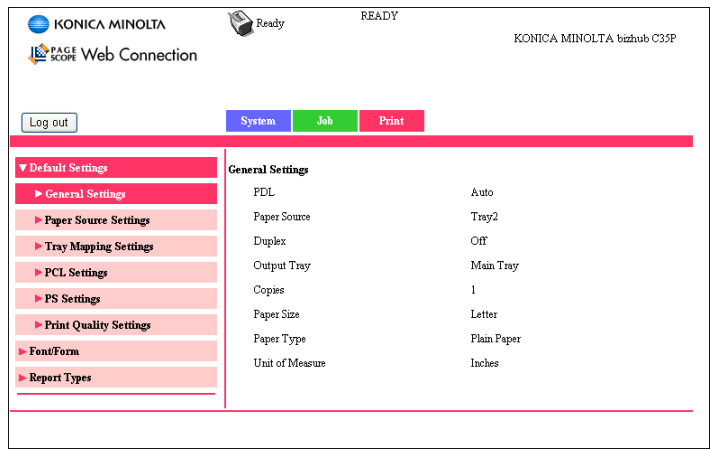
Back

The **Job - Done Job List - Detail** window provides the following information for the selected job:

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Job Number    | Displays the print job identification number. Each print job that the printer receives is assigned a unique identification number.      |
| User Name     | If known, displays the owner of the print job.  |
| File Name     | Displays the name of the print file.  |
| Delivery Type | Displays the delivery method for the job (Print, Print and Hold, Proof then Print, IPP Print, Secure Job, Time Print, or Report Print). |
| Create Time   | Displays the time that the job was queued.  |
| End Time      | Displays the time that printing finished.   |
| Result        | Displays the result of the print job (OK, Error, or Canceled).  |
| Back button   | Returns to the previous screen.   |

# Print Page

This page allows you to check the settings for printing when there is no PDL printer driver.




## Default Settings

### General Settings (shown above)

The **Print - Default Settings - General Settings** window provides the following information.

| Item         | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| PDL          | Indicates default language to be selected.   |
| Paper Source | The paper tray that is normally used is indicated.   |
| Duplex       | If <b>Long-Edge Binding</b> is indicated, the pages will be printed on both sides of the paper for long-edge binding.<br><br>If <b>Short-Edge Binding</b> is indicated, the pages will be printed on both sides of the paper for short-edge binding. |
| Output Tray  | Displays the name of the output tray.  |
| Copies       | Indicates the default setting for number of copies to be printed.  |
| Paper Size   | Indicates the default setting for the size of paper.   |

| Item            | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Width           | Indicates the paper width when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b> .  |
| Length          | Indicates the paper length when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b> .   |
| Paper Type      | Indicates the default setting for the type of paper.   |
| Collate         | <p>If <b>On</b> is indicated, all pages in a copy of the document can be printed before printing the next copy.</p> <p>If <b>Off</b> is indicated, all copies of the document are not printed separately.</p> <p> <i>This menu item appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.</i></p> |
| Unit of Measure | The units for specifying the size of custom paper is indicated between inches and millimeters.   |

# Paper Source Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCORE

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

▼ Default Settings

▶ General Settings

▶ Paper Source Settings

▶ Tray Mapping Settings

▶ PCL Settings

▶ PS Settings

▶ Print Quality Settings

▶ FontForm

▶ Report Types

Paper Source Settings

Tray1

Paper SizeA4

Paper TypePlain Paper

Tray2

Paper SizeA4

Paper TypePlain Paper

Tray3

Paper SizeA4

Paper TypePlain Paper

Tray Chaining

Tray ChainingEnable

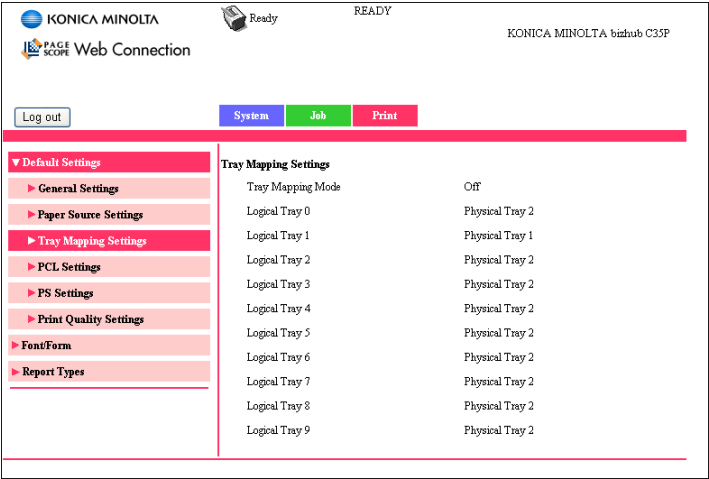
The **Print - Default Settings - Paper Source Settings** window provides the following information.

| Item  |            | Description   |
|-------|------------|---|
| Tray1 | Paper Size | Indicates the setting for the size of paper loaded into Tray 1.                 |
|       | Width      | Indicates the paper width when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b> . |
|       | Length     | Indicates the paper width when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b> . |
|       | Paper Type | Indicates the setting for the type of paper loaded into Tray 1.                 |
| Tray2 | Paper Size | Indicates the setting for the size of paper loaded into Tray 2.                 |
|       | Width      | Indicates the paper width when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b> . |
|       | Length     | Indicates the paper width when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b> . |
|       | Paper Type | Indicates the setting for the type of paper loaded into Tray 2.                 |



| Item  |            | Description  |
|---|------------|--|
| Tray3<br><br>This item appears only if an optional lower feeder unit PF-P09 is installed. | Paper Size | Indicates the setting for the size of paper loaded into Tray 3.  |
|   | Paper Type | Indicates the setting for the type of paper loaded into Tray 3.  |
| Tray Chaining   |            | <p>If <b>Enable</b> is indicated and the specified paper tray runs out of paper during printing, a paper tray loaded with paper of the same size is automatically selected so printing can continue.</p> <p>If <b>Disable</b> is indicated and the specified paper tray runs out of paper, printing stops.</p> |

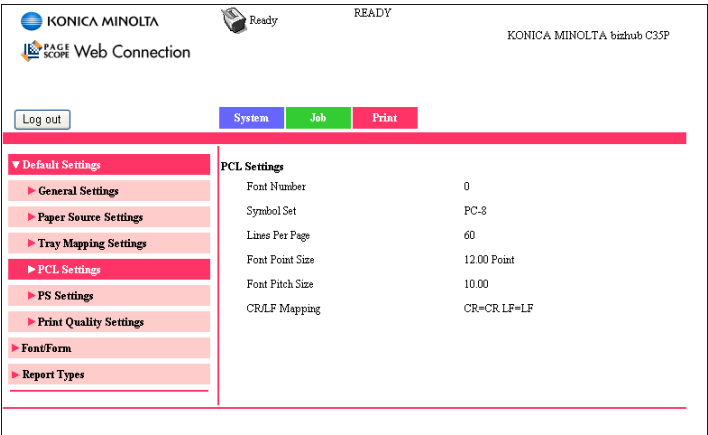
# Tray Mapping Settings



The **Print - Default Settings - Tray Mapping Settings** window provides the following information.

| Item              | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| Tray Mapping Mode | If <b>On</b> is indicated, Tray Mapping function is used.<br><br>If <b>Off</b> is indicated, Tray Mapping function is not used. |
| Logical Tray 0-9  | Indicates the tray that is used for printing when a print job is received from another manufacture's printer driver.            |

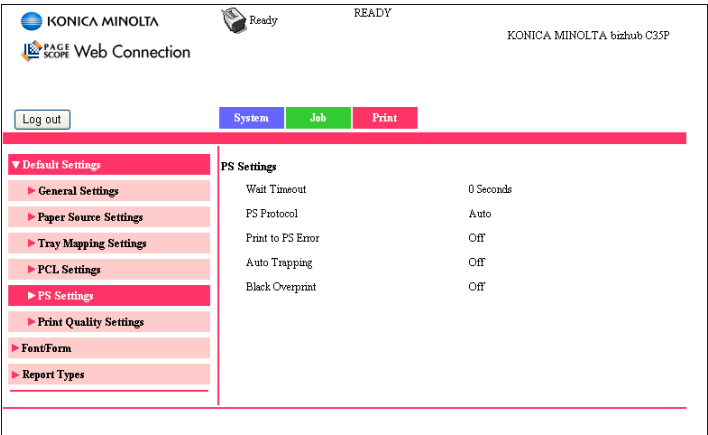
# PCL Settings



The **Print - Default Settings - PCL Settings** window provides the following information.

| Item            | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Font Number     | Displays the default font in the PCL language.          |
| Symbol Set      | Displays the symbol set used with the PCL language.     |
| Lines Per Page  | Indicates how many lines are in a page in PCL language. |
| Font Point Size | Displays the font size in the PCL language.             |
| Font Pitch Size | Displays the font pitch in the PCL language.            |
| CR/LF Mapping   | Indicates CR/LF code definition in PCL language.        |


# PS Settings





The **Print - Default Settings - PS Settings** window provides the following information.

| Item              | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Wait Timeout      | Indicates Postscript timeout. "0" means that no time-out control is effective.                                     |
| PS Protocol       | Displays the settings for the PS protocol.   |
| Print to PS Error | Displays whether or not error printing is performed.   |
| Auto Trapping     | If <b>On</b> is displayed, Auto Trapping is enabled.<br>If <b>Off</b> is displayed, Auto Trapping is disabled.     |
| Black Overprint   | If <b>On</b> is displayed, Black Overprint is enabled.<br>If <b>Off</b> is displayed, Black Overprint is disabled. |

## XPS Settings

 KONICA MINOLTA

 PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

▼ Default Settings

▶ General Settings

▶ Paper Source Settings

▶ Tray Mapping Settings

▶ PCL Settings

▶ PS Settings

▶ XPS Settings

▶ Print Quality Settings

▶ Font/Form

▶ Report Types

▶ Direct Print

XPS Settings

Digital Signature

Disable

Print to XPS Error

On

The **Print - Default Settings - XPS Settings** window provides the following information.



*This page appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.*

| Item               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Digital Signature  | Shows whether XPS digital signatures are enabled or disabled.                                     |
| Print to XPS Error | Shows whether or not error information is printed when an error has occurred during XPS printing. |

## Print Quality Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

▼ Default Settings

► General Settings

► Paper Source Settings

► Tray Mapping Settings

► PCL Settings

► PS Settings

► Print Quality Settings

► Font/Form

► Report Types

Print Quality Settings

Color Mode

Color

Color Separation

Off

Brightness

0

Halftone

Image Printing

Detail

Text Printing

Line Art

Graphics Printing

Detail

Edge Enhancement

Image Printing

Off

Text Printing

On

Graphics Printing

On

Edge Strength

Middle

Economy Print Mode

Off

PCL Settings

Contrast

0

The **Print - Default Settings - Print Quality Settings** window provides the following information.

| Item                   |  | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| Print Quality Settings | Color Mode                               | If <b>Color</b> is indicated, the pages are printed in full color.<br>If <b>Monochrome</b> is indicated, the pages are printed in black and white.  |
|                        | Color Separation                         | If <b>On</b> is indicated, color separation is performed.<br>If <b>Off</b> is indicated, color separation is not performed.   |
|                        | Brightness                               | Indicates the brightness of the printed image.  |
|                        | Halftone (Image/Text/ Graphics Printing) | Indicates how halftones are reproduced.<br>If <b>Line Art</b> is indicated, halftones are reproduced with high precision.<br>If <b>Detail</b> is indicated, halftones are reproduced with detail.<br>If <b>Smooth</b> is indicated, halftones are reproduced with smoothness. |

Viewing Printer Status

7-39

| Item         |  | Description  |
|--------------|--|--|
|              | Edge Enhancement (Image/Text/ Graphics Printing)   | Shows the settings for whether or not edges are emphasized in images, text and graphics.   |
|              | Edge Strength                                      | Shows the setting for the amount that edges are emphasized.  |
|              | Economy Print Mode                                 | Shows the setting for whether or not Economy Print Mode is enabled. When Economy Print Mode is enabled, the amount of toner used is reduced when printing many drawings. |
| PCL Settings | Contrast   | Indicates the contrast of the image.   |
|              | Image/Text/Graphics Printing (Source)              | Identifies the color space for RGB data.   |
|              | Image/Text/Graphics Printing (Intent)              | Indicates the color intent to be used on conversion RGB to CMYK by printer.  |
|              | Image/Text/Graphics Printing (Gray Treatment)      | Indicates the method to reproduce RGB black and gray.  |
| PS Settings  | Image/Text/Graphics Printing (RGB Source)          | Identifies the color space for RGB data.   |
|              | Image/Text/Graphics Printing (RGB Intent)          | Indicates the color intent to be used on conversion RGB to CMYK by printer.  |
|              | Image/Text/Graphics Printing (RGB Gray Treatment)  | Indicates the method to reproduce RGB black and gray.  |
|              | Image/Text/Graphics Printing (Destination Profile) | Indicates the ICC destination profile to be used for printed output.   |
|              | Simulation (Profile)                               | Indicates the specific ICC simulation profile to be used for printed output.   |
|              | Simulation (Intent)                                | Indicates the simulation intent to be used for simulation printing.  |
|              | Simulation (CMYK Gray Treatment)                   | Indicates the method to reproduce CMYK black and gray for simulation printing.   |

| Item                 |   | Description   |
|----------------------|---|---|
| Calibration Settings | Tone Calibration                                      | If <b>On</b> is indicated, image adjustments are applied.<br>If <b>Off</b> is indicated, image adjustments are not applied. |
|                      | Cyan/Magenta/<br>Yellow/ Black Density<br>(Highlight) | Indicates the density of the highlight color.   |
|                      | Cyan/Magenta/<br>Yellow/ Black Density<br>(Middle)    | Indicates the density of the middle color.  |
|                      | Cyan/Magenta/<br>Yellow/ Black Density<br>(Shadow)    | Indicates the density of the shadow color.  |



# Font/Form

## PCL Font

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

► Default Settings

▼ Font/Form

► PCL Font

► PS Font

► Form Overlay

► Color Profile

► Report Types

PCL Font

| Number | Font Name            | Source |
|--------|----------------------|--------|
| 0      | Courier              | ROM    |
| 1      | Courier Italic       | ROM    |
| 2      | Courier Bold         | ROM    |
| 3      | Courier Bold Italic  | ROM    |
| 4      | Naskh                | ROM    |
| 5      | Naskh Bold           | ROM    |
| 6      | Albertus Medium      | ROM    |
| 7      | Albertus Extra Bold  | ROM    |
| 8      | Antique Olive        | ROM    |
| 9      | Antique Olive Italic | ROM    |
| 10     | Antique Olive Bold   | ROM    |
| 11     | Arial                | ROM    |
| 12     | Arial Italic         | ROM    |

The **Print - Font/Form - PCL Font** page allows you to check the list of PCL fonts that the printer manages.

| Item      | Description                              |
|-----------|--|
| Number    | Displays the control number of the font. |
| Font Name | Displays the name of the fonts.          |
| Source    | Displays the storage source of the font. |

PS Font

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCORE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

» Default Settings

▼ Font/Form

» PCL Font

» PS Font

» Form Overlay

» Color Profile

» Report Types

PostScript Font

| Number | Font Name                   | Source |
|--------|-----------------------------|--------|
| 1      | Optima                      | ROM    |
| 2      | Optima-Italic               | ROM    |
| 3      | OCRB                        | ROM    |
| 4      | Univers-Bold                | ROM    |
| 5      | CourierCE-BoldOblique       | ROM    |
| 6      | StempelGaramond-BoldItalic  | ROM    |
| 7      | ZapfChanceryCE-MediumItalic | ROM    |
| 8      | NewCenturySchlbk-Italic     | ROM    |
| 9      | TimesCE-Bold                | ROM    |
| 10     | StempelGaramondCE-Italic    | ROM    |
| 11     | Clarendon                   | ROM    |
| 12     | Univers-ExtendedCbl         | ROM    |
| 13     | JoannaMTCE-Italic           | ROM    |

The **Print - Font/Form - PS Font** page allows you to check the list of Post-Script fonts that the printer manages.

| Item      | Description                              |
|-----------|--|
| Number    | Displays the control number of the font. |
| Font Name | Displays the name of the fonts.          |
| Source    | Displays the storage source of the font. |

# Form Overlay

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

▶ Default Settings

▼ Font/Form

▶ PCL Font

▶ PS Font

▶ Form Overlay

▶ Color Profile

▶ Report Types


Form Overlay


| Number | File Name | Source |
|--------|-----------|--------|
|--------|-----------|--------|

The **Print - Font/Form - Form Overlay** page allows you to check the list of form overlays that the printer manages.

| Item      | Description                                      |
|-----------|--|
| Number    | Displays the control number of the overlay.      |
| File Name | Displays the name of the overlays.               |
| Source    | Displays the storage source of the form overlay. |


## Color Profile


**KONICA MINOLTA**


 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P


**Web Connection**

Log out

System

Job

Print

▶ Default Settings

▼ FontForm

▶ PCL Font

▶ PS Font

▶ Form Overlay

▶ Color Profile

▶ Report Types

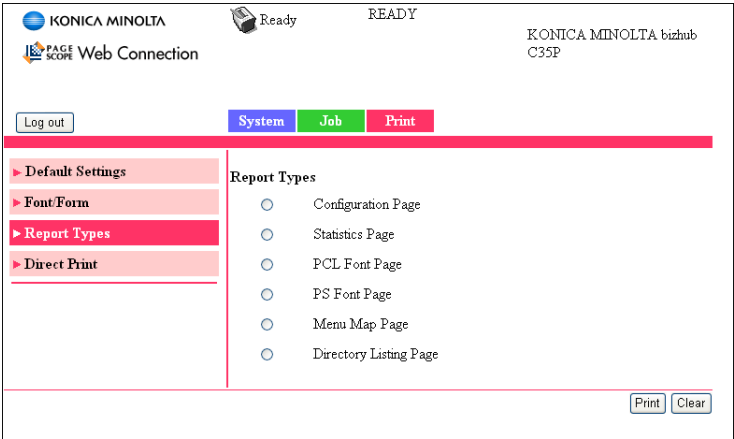
**Color Profile**

| Number | File Name       | Profile Name    | Class          | Color Space | Source |
|--------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|-------------|--------|
| 1      | sRGB            | sRGB            | Display Device | RGB         | ROM    |
| 2      | AppleRGB        | AppleRGB        | Display Device | RGB         | ROM    |
| 3      | AdobeRGB1998    | AdobeRGB1998    | Display Device | RGB         | ROM    |
| 4      | ColorMatchRGB   | ColorMatchRGB   | Display Device | RGB         | ROM    |
| 5      | BlueAdjustRGB   | BlueAdjustRGB   | Input Device   | RGB         | ROM    |
| 6      | SWOP            | SWOP            | Output Device  | CMYK        | ROM    |
| 7      | Euroscale       | Eurocolor       | Output Device  | CMYK        | ROM    |
| 8      | CommercialPress | CommercialPress | Output Device  | CMYK        | ROM    |
| 9      | JapanColor      | JapanColor      | Output Device  | CMYK        | ROM    |
| 10     | TOYO            | TOYO            | Output Device  | CMYK        | ROM    |
| 11     | DIC             | DIC             | Output Device  | CMYK        | ROM    |


The **Print - Font/Form - Color Profile** page allows you to check the list of color profiles that the printer manages.

| Item         | Description                                       |
|--------------|---|
| Number       | Displays the control number of the color profile. |
| File Name    | Displays the file name of the color profile.      |
| Profile Name | Displays the name of the color profile.           |
| Class        | Displays the type of color profile.               |
| Color Space  | Displays the color space for the color profile.   |
| Source       | Displays the storage source of the color profile. |

# Report Types



The **Print - Report Types** window provides the following information.

| Item                   | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| Configuration Page     | Prints the printer configuration page.  |
| Statistics Page        | Prints the statistics page such as the number of pages printed.   |
| PCL Font Page          | Prints the PCL font lists.  |
| PS Font Page           | Prints the PostScript font lists.   |
| Menu Map Page          | Prints the menu map.  |
| Directory Listing Page | Prints the directory list.<br> <i>This menu item appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.</i> |
| Print button           | Sends the page to the printer.  |
| Clear button           | Cancels the selected settings.  |

## Direct Print

KONICA MINOLTA Ready READY KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

Log out System Job Print

► Default Settings

► Font/Font

► Report Types

► Direct Print

Direct Print

File Name  Browse...

Send File to Printer

The **Print - Direct Print** page allows you to print a file directly from the printer without starting up the application.



*This page appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.*



*This page appears when both **Public Access** (in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) and **Print** (in the **System - Authentication - Default Permission Settings**) are set to **Allow**.*



*The following file formats can be printed using direct printing: PDF, TIFF, JPEG and XPS.*

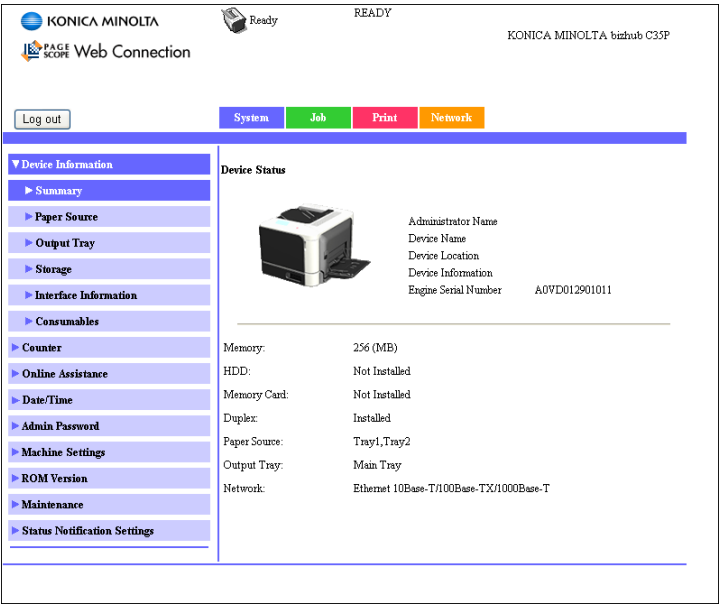
| Item          | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| File Name     | Specify the location of the file to be printed.<br>Click <b>Browse</b> , and then select the file. |
| Browse button | Displays a dialog box for browsing to the file to be printed.                                      |
| Send button   | Sends the specified file to the printer.   |

# Configuring the Printer

In order to make any configuration changes through PageScope Web Connection, you must first enter Administrator Mode. See “Administrator Mode” on page 7-12. for instructions on logging into Administrator Mode.

## System Page


This page allows you to configure several user- and printer-specific items.



## Device Information

### Summary (previous page)

The **System - Device Information - Summary** window provides the following information.

| Item         | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| Memory       | Displays the amount of memory installed in the printer.  |
| HDD          | If an optional hard disk kit HD-P03 is installed in the printer, displays the size of the hard disk.<br><br>If no optional hard disk kit HD-P03 is installed in the printer, displays "Not Installed".                               |
| Memory Card  | If an optional CompactFlash card is installed in the printer, displays the size of the CompactFlash card.<br><br>If no optional CompactFlash card is installed in the printer, displays "Not Installed".                             |
| Duplex       | Identifies whether the optional duplex option is "Installed" or "Not Installed".   |
| Paper Source | Identifies the paper feed units installed on the printer.<br><br> <b>Tray3</b> appears only if the optional lower feeder unit PF-P09 are installed. |
| Output Tray  | Identifies the output trays installed on the printer.  |
| Network      | Lists the installed printer interface (Ethernet 10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T).   |



# Paper Source



The **System - Device Information - Paper Source** window provides the following information.

| Item          | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Paper Source  | Identifies the paper feed units Tray 1/2/3 installed on the printer. |
| Paper Size    | Indicates the size of paper loaded in a specific tray.               |
| Paper Type    | Indicates the type of paper loaded in a specific tray.               |
| Paper         | Indicates the paper status (“Ready” or “Empty”) for each tray.       |
| Detail button | Displays detailed information about the paper trays.                 |

## Paper Source (Detail)

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▼ Device Information

▶ Summary

▶ Paper Source

▶ Output Tray

▶ Storage

▶ Interface Information

▶ Consumables

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

Detail

|              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| Paper Source | Tray1       |
| Paper Size   | A4          |
| Paper Type   | Plain Paper |
| Capacity     | 100         |
| Paper        | Empty       |

Back

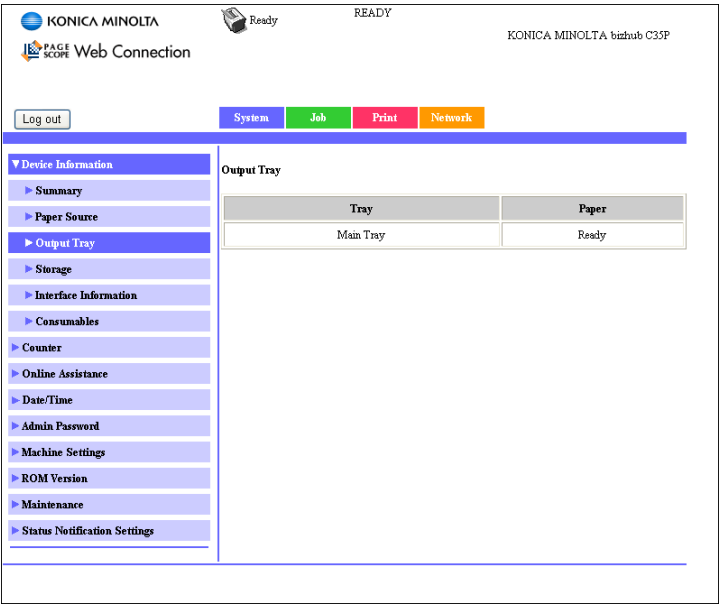
The **System - Device Information - Paper Source - Detail** window provides the following information.

| Item         | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| Paper Source | Displays the names of the paper trays.             |
| Paper Size   | Displays the paper sizes.                          |
| Paper Type   | Displays the paper types.                          |
| Capacity     | Displays the maximum capacity for each paper tray. |
| Paper        | Displays the amount of paper remaining.            |
| Back button  | Returns to the previous screen.                    |

Configuring the Printer

7-51

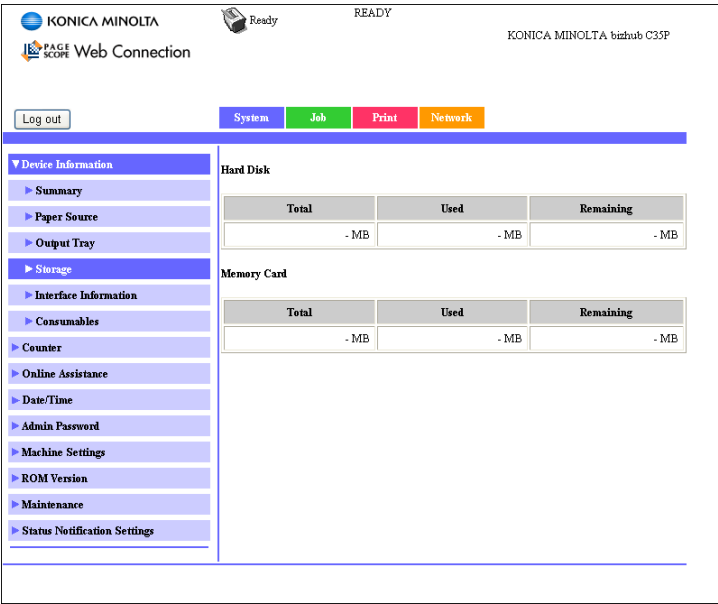
# Output Tray



The **System - Device Information - Output Tray** window provides the following information.

| Item  | Description   |
|-------|---|
| Tray  | Displays the name of the output tray.                 |
| Paper | Displays the status (Ready, Full) of the output tray. |

# Storage



The **System - Device Information - Storage** window provides the following information.

| Item      | Description   |
|-----------|---|
| Total     | Displays the total amount of space on the hard disk and CompactFlash card.<br><br>If no optional storages are installed, “-” are displayed.         |
| Used      | Displays the amount of space on the hard disk and CompactFlash card that are used.<br><br>If no optional storages are installed, “-” are displayed. |
| Remaining | Displays the amount of space remaining on the hard disk and CompactFlash card.<br><br>If no optional storages are installed, “-” are displayed.     |

## Interface Information

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE

SCORE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▼ Device Information

▶ Summary

▶ Paper Source

▶ Output Tray

▶ Storage

▶ Interface Information

▶ Consumables

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

Protocol Information

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| TCP/IP      | Enable  |
| IPv6        | Enable  |
| Bonjour     | Enable  |
| FTP         | Enable  |
| Dynamic DNS | Disable |
| IPP         | Enable  |
| LPD         | Enable  |
| RAW Port    | Enable  |
| SLP         | Enable  |
| SMTP        | Enable  |
| SNMP        | Enable  |
| WSD Print   | Enable  |
| LLTD        | Enable  |
| LLMNR       | Enable  |
| AppleTalk   | Enable  |
| NetWare     | Disable |
| IEEE802.1x  | Disable |

Network Information

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Type           | Ethernet 10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T |
| Ethernet Speed | Auto                                    |
| IP Address     | 192.168.1.2                             |

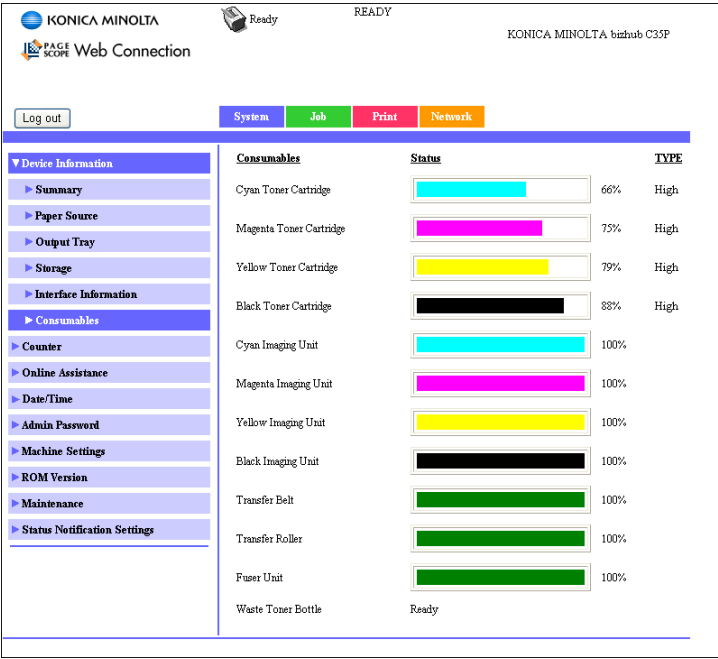
The **System - Device Information - Interface Information** window provides the following information.

| Item                 |             | Description   |
|----------------------|-------------|---|
| Protocol Information | TCP/IP      | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, TCP/IP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, TCP/IP is disabled.           |
|                      | IPv6        | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, IPv6 is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, IPv6 is disabled.               |
|                      | Bonjour     | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, Bonjour is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is displayed, Bonjour is disabled.        |
|                      | FTP         | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, FTP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, FTP is disabled.                 |
|                      | Dynamic DNS | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, Dynamic DNS is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, Dynamic DNS is disabled. |

| Item |            | Description   |
|------|------------|---|
|      | IPP        | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, IPP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, IPP is disabled.                   |
|      | LPD        | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, LPD is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, LPD is disabled.                   |
|      | RAW Port   | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, RAW Port is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, RAW Port is disabled.         |
|      | SLP        | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, SLP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, SLP is disabled.                   |
|      | SMTP       | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, SMTP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, SMTP is disabled.                 |
|      | SNMP       | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, SNMP is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, SNMP is disabled.                 |
|      | WSD Print  | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, WSD Print is enabled.<br><br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, WSD Print is disabled.   |
|      | LLTD       | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, LLTD is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, LLTD is disabled.                 |
|      | LLNMR      | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, LLNMR is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, LLNMR is disabled.               |
|      | AppleTalk  | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, AppleTalk is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, AppleTalk is disabled.       |
|      | NetWare    | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, NetWare is enabled.<br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, NetWare is disabled.           |
|      | IEEE802.1x | If <b>Enable</b> is displayed, IEEE802.1x is enabled.<br><br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, IEEE802.1x is disabled. |

| Item                |                               | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Network Information | Type                          | Identifies the type of network interface installed on the printer (Ethernet 10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T). |
|                     | Ethernet Speed                | Indicates the transmission speed for the network and the transmission method for bidirectional transmission. |
|                     | IP Address                    | Identifies the IP (Internet Protocol) address of the Ethernet interface.                                     |
|                     | IPv6 Link Local Address       | Identifies the IPv6 link local address of the Ethernet interface.  |
|                     | IPv6 Global Address           | Identifies the IPv6 global address of the Ethernet interface.  |
|                     | MAC Address                   | Identifies the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the Ethernet interface.                                 |
|                     | Host Name                     | Identifies the host name for the printer.  |
|                     | Print Server Name (NetWare)   | Identifies the Print Server Name for the NetWare.  |
|                     | Printer Name (AppleTalk)      | Identifies the printer name on AppleTalk.  |
|                     | Current Zone Name (AppleTalk) | Identifies the Current Zone Name for the AppleTalk.  |
|                     | Bonjour Name                  | Displays the Bonjour name for the printer.   |
|                     | WSD Printer Name              | Displays the WSD printer name for the printer.   |

# Consumables



The **System - Device Information - Consumables** window provides the following information.

| Item        | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| Consumables | Identifies the type of consumable that is being monitored.   |
| Status      | Indicates the remaining life of the consumables. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Toner Cartridge, Imaging Unit, Transfer Belt, Transfer Roller, Fuser Unit: Percentage</li><li>■ Waste Toner Bottle: Ready, Near Full, or Full</li></ul> |
| TYPE        | Identifies the type of Toner Cartridge. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ High</li></ul>   |



# Counter

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE

SCORE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

Counter

Pages Printed

|                  | Monochrome | Full Color | Total |
|------------------|------------|------------|-------|
| Total Pages      | 0          | 13         | 13    |
| Duplex Pages     | 0          | 0          | 0     |
| Normalized Pages | 0          | 12         | 12    |

Sheets Printed by Paper Size

|             | Total |
|-------------|-------|
| Legal       | 0     |
| Letter      | 1     |
| A4          | 13    |
| B5(JIS)     | 0     |
| A5          | 0     |
| Custom Size | 0     |
| Other       | 0     |

Sheets Printed by Paper Type

|                  | Total |
|------------------|-------|
| Plain Paper      | 14    |
| Recycled         | 0     |
| Thick 1          | 0     |
| Thick 2          | 0     |
| Label            | 0     |
| Envelope         | 0     |
| Postcard         | 0     |
| Letterhead       | 0     |
| Glossy 1         | 0     |
| Glossy 2         | 0     |
| Single Side Only | 0     |
| Special Paper    | 0     |

The **System - Counter** window provides the following information.

| Item                         | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Pages Printed                | Indicates the number of prints.                       |
| Sheets Printed by Paper Size | Indicates the number of prints grouped by Paper Size. |
| Sheets Printed by Paper Type | Indicates the number of prints grouped by Paper Type. |

# Online Assistance

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

Online Assistance

Contact Name

KONICA MINOLTA Customer Support

Contact Information

Product Help URL

http://pagescope.com

Corporate URL

http://konicaminolta.com

Supplies and Accessories

Contact Phone Number

Contact Address

Contact Utility Link

http://pagescope.com

Apply


Clear

The **System - Online Assistance** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item                | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| Contact Name        | Sets the name of the person or organization responsible for providing assistance with the printer.<br><br>Range: Up to 63 characters<br>Default: KONICA MINOLTA Customer Support |
| Contact Information | Sets the web site for printer assistance.<br><br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |
| Product Help URL    | Sets the help web site address for printer assistance.<br><br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default: http://pagescope.com   |
| Corporate URL       | Sets the KONICA MINOLTA corporate web site address.<br><br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default: http://konicaminolta.com  |


| <b>Item</b>              | <b>Description</b>   |
|--------------------------|--|
| Supplies and Accessories | Sets the web address where you can purchase printer supplies and accessories.<br><br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default:                                   |
| Contact Phone Number     | Specifies the telephone number of the printer administrator.<br><br>Range: Up to 31 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |
| Contact Address          | Specifies the address of the printer administrator.<br><br>Range: Up to 320 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |
| Contact Utility Link     | Specifies the link to the Printer Management Utilities.<br><br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default: <a href="http://pagescope.com">http://pagescope.com</a> |
| Apply button             | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button             | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |


# Import/Export

 This page appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed. In addition, this page appears when **Job Log** (in the **System - Machine Settings** page) is set to **Enable**.

## Job Log

KONICA MINOLTA

 Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub  
C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▼ Import/Export

▶ Job Log

▶ User Information

▶ Authentication

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

Job Log

Export


Last 10

Clear

Export

Clear

The **System - Import/Export - Job Log** window allows you to configure the following items.

 This page appears when **Job Log** (in the **System - Machine Settings** page) is set to **Enable**.

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Export        | <p>Specify the number of job logs to be retrieved. The specified number of job logs is retrieved from the most recent job logs. If the specified number of job logs is larger than the number of job logs available, all job logs are retrieved.</p> <p>Choices: Last 10, Last 50, Last 100, Last 250, Last 500, All<br/>Default: Last 10</p> |
| Export button | Exports the job log information on the device to the computer.  |

| Item         | Description                         |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| Clear button | Clears the job log from the device. |

## User Information

The screenshot shows the KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P Web Connection interface. At the top, there's a status bar with 'Ready' and 'READY' indicators. Below this, the 'Web Connection' logo is on the left and 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P' is on the right. A navigation bar contains buttons for 'System', 'Job', 'Print', and 'Network'. The 'System' button is highlighted. On the left side, there's a sidebar menu with options like 'Device Information', 'Counter', 'Online Assistance', 'Import/Export', 'Job Log', 'User Information', 'Authentication', 'Date/Time', 'Admin Password', 'Machine Settings', 'ROM Version', 'Maintenance', and 'Status Notification Settings'. The 'User Information' option is selected. The main content area is titled 'User Information' and contains two sections: 'Import' and 'Export'. The 'Import' section has a text input field, a 'Browse...' button, and an 'Import' button. The 'Export' section has an 'Export' button.

The **System - Import/Export - User Information** window allows you to configure the following items.



*This page appears when **User Authentication** (in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) is set to **On**.*

| Item            | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Import Text Box | Type in the name of the file containing the registered user authentication information to be imported. |
| Browse button   | Allows the registered user authentication information transferred to the device to be searched.        |
| Import button   | Transfers the registered user authentication information to the device.                                |
| Export button   | Exports the registered user authentication information to the computer.                                |

## Authentication



*This page appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.*



*This page doesn't appear when both **User Authentication** and **Account Track** are set to **Off** and **Public Access** is set to **Restrict** (in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page).*

## Default Permission Settings

The screenshot shows the 'Default Permission Settings' window. At the top, there's a status bar with 'KONICA MINOLTA', 'Ready', 'READY', and 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P'. Below this is a navigation bar with 'Log out', 'System', 'Job', 'Print', and 'Network' tabs. The 'System' tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar lists various settings: Device Information, Counter, Online Assistance, Import/Export, Authentication (expanded), Default Permission Settings (selected), User Registration, Account Track Registration, Date/Time, Admin Password, Machine Settings, ROM Version, Maintenance, and Status Notification Settings. The main area is titled 'Default Permission Settings' and contains a 'Function Permission' section with a 'Print' label and a dropdown menu set to 'Allow'. At the bottom right are 'Apply' and 'Clear' buttons.

The **System - Authentication - Default Permission Settings** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item                |       | Description   |
|---------------------|-------|---|
| Function Permission | Print | Select whether or not printing is permitted when public authentication is used.<br><br>Choices: Allow, Restrict<br>Default: Allow |
| Apply button        |       | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button        |       | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

# User Registration



This menu item appears when **User Authentication** (in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page) is set to **On**.

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ Import/Export

▼ Authentication

▶ Default Permission Settings

▶ User Registration

▶ Account Track Registration

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

User Registration

New Registration

Search for Number1-50

| No. | User Name | Edit | Delete |
|-----|-----------|------|--------|
| 1   | user001   |      |        |

The **System - Authentication - User Registration** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item                    | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Search for Number       | Select the user registration number (No.) to be searched for.<br><br>Range: 1 - 1000<br>Default: 1 - 50 |
| No.                     | Shows the user registration number (No.) to be registered.  |
| User Name               | Shows the user name to be registered.   |
| Edit icon               | The information for the user to be registered can be edited.  |
| Delete icon             | The user to be registered can be deleted.   |
| New Registration button | Registers a new user.   |

7-64

Configuring the Printer

## User Registration (New Registration)

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

Device Information

Counter

Online Assistance

Import/Export

Authentication

Default Permission Settings

User Registration

Account Track Registration

Date/Time

Admin Password

Machine Settings

ROM Version

Maintenance

Status Notification Settings

User Registration

No.1

User Name

User Password

Retype User Password

Function Permission

Print

Output Permission

Color




Black

Apply



Clear

Cancel

The **System - Authentication - User Registration - New Registration** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item              |                      | Description  |
|-------------------|----------------------|--|
| User Registration | No.                  | Shows the new user registration number (No.).  |
|                   | User Name            | <div>Specify the name of the new user.</div> <div>Range: Up to 64 characters</div> <div>Default: [Blank]</div> <div><div></div><div>A user name that already exists cannot be specified.</div><div><div></div><div>"Public" cannot be specified as the user name.</div></div></div> |
|                   | User Password        | <div>Specify the password of the new user.</div> <div>Range: Up to 64 characters</div> <div>Default: [Blank]</div> <div><div></div><div>The User Password box can be left blank.</div></div>  |
|                   | Retype User Password | <div>Type in the new password again for confirmation.</div> <div>Range: Up to 64 characters</div> <div>Default: [Blank]</div>  |



| Item                |              | Description   |
|---------------------|--------------|---|
|                     | Account Name | <p>Specify the account that the user belongs to.</p> <p>Range: Up to 8 characters<br/>Default: [Blank]</p> <p> Create the account in the <b>System - Authentication - Account Track Registration - New Registration</b> page, and then specify this setting. When specifying this setting, an account name that does not exist cannot be specified.</p> <p> This menu item appears only when both <b>User Authentication</b> and <b>Account Track</b> are set to <b>On</b> and <b>Synchronize User Authentication &amp; Account Track</b> is set to <b>Synchronize</b> (in the <b>Network - Authentication - User Authentication</b> page).</p> |
| Function Permission | Print        | <p>Select whether or not the new user is permitted to print.</p> <p>Choices: Allow, Restrict<br/>Default: Allow</p>   |
| Output Permission   | Color        | <p>Select whether or not the new user is permitted to print in color.</p> <p>Choices: Allow, Economy Print Mode Only, Restrict<br/>Default: Allow</p>   |
|                     | Black        | <p>Select whether or not the new user is permitted to print in black and white.</p> <p>Choices: Allow, Restrict<br/>Default: Allow</p>  |
| Apply button        |              | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button        |              | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |
| Cancel button       |              | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>System - Authentication - User Registration</b> page.   |

# Account Track Registration



This menu item appears when **Account Track** (in the **Network - Authentication - User Authentication page**) is set to **On**.

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ Import/Export

▼ Authentication

▶ Default Permission Settings

▶ User Registration

▶ Account Track Registration

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

Account Track Registration

New Registration

Search for Number 1-50

| No. | Account Name | Edit | Delete |
|-----|--------------|------|--------|
| 2   | acc001       |      |        |

The **System - Authentication - Account Track Registration** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item                    | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Search for Number       | Select the account registration number (No.) to be searched for.<br><br>Range: 1 - 1000<br>Default: 1 - 50 |
| No.                     | Shows the account registration number (No.) to be registered.  |
| Account Name            | Shows the account name to be registered.   |
| Edit icon               | The information for the account to be registered can be edited.  |
| Delete icon             | The account to be registered can be deleted.   |
| New Registration button | Registers a new account.   |

# Account Track Registration (New Registration)

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

SystemJobPrintNetwork

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ Import/Export

▼ Authentication

▶ Default Permission Settings

▶ User Registration

▶ Account Track Registration

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

Account Track Registration

No.2

Account Name

Account Password

Retype Account Password

Function Permission

PrintAllow


Output Permission

ColorAllow

BlackAllow

ApplyClearCancel

The **System - Authentication - Account Track Registration - New Registration** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item                       |                         | Description   |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Account Track Registration | No.                     | Shows the new account registration number (No.).  |
|                            | Account Name            | <div>Specify the name of the new account.</div> <div>Range: Up to 8 characters</div> <div>Default: [Blank]</div> <div> <i>An account name that already exists cannot be specified.</i></div> |
|                            | Account Password        | <div>Specify the password of the new account.</div> <div>Range: Up to 8 characters</div> <div>Default: [Blank]</div>  |
|                            | Retype Account Password | <div>Type in the new password again for confirmation.</div> <div>Range: Up to 8 characters</div> <div>Default: [Blank]</div>  |

| Item                |       | Description  |
|---------------------|-------|--|
| Function Permission | Print | Select whether or not the new account is permitted to print.<br><br>Choices: Allow, Restrict<br>Default: Allow                                   |
| Output Permission   | Color | Select whether or not the new account is permitted to print in color.<br><br>Choices: Allow, Economy Print Mode Only, Restrict<br>Default: Allow |
|                     | Black | Select whether or not the new account is permitted to print in black and white.<br><br>Choices: Allow, Restrict<br>Default: Allow                |
| Apply button        |       | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button        |       | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |
| Cancel button       |       | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>System - Authentication - Account Track Registration</b> page.                             |

## Manual Settings


**KONICA MINOLTA**


**PAGE SCOPE**

Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Device Information  
 ▶ Counter  
 ▶ Online Assistance  
 ▼ Date/Time  
   ▶ Manual Settings  
     ▶ Time Adjustment Settings  
 ▶ Admin Password  
 ▶ Machine Settings  
 ▶ ROM Version  
 ▶ Maintenance  
   ▶ Status Notification Settings

**Date/Time**  
 Year   
 Month   
 Day   
 Hour   
 Minute   
 Time Zone  :  -12:00 ~ +13:00

Apply

Clear

The **System - Date/Time - Manual Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item  | Description   |
|-------|---|
| Year  | Specifies the year for the printer's internal clock.<br>Range: 2008 - 2032<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - CLOCK - DATE |
| Month | Specifies the month for the printer's internal clock.<br>Range: 1 - 12<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - CLOCK - DATE     |
| Day   | Specifies the day for the printer's internal clock.<br>Range: 1 - 31<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - CLOCK - DATE       |

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Hour         | Specifies the hour for the printer's internal clock.<br>Range: 0 - 23<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - CLOCK - TIME  |
| Minute       | Specifies the minute for the printer's internal clock.<br>Range: 0 - 59<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - CLOCK - TIME                                      |
| Time Zone    | Specifies the time zone for sending e-mail notifications.<br>Range: -12:00 - +13:00<br>Default: 0:00<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - CLOCK -<br>TIME ZONE |
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

## Time Adjustment Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▼ Date/Time

▶ Manual Settings

▶ Time Adjustment Settings

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

Time Adjustment Settings

Time Adjustment

Disable

NTP Server Address

0.0.0.0

Port Number

123

(1-65535)

Time Zone

0

00

-12:00 - +13:00

Adjustment Time

Unknown

Apply

Clear

The **System - Date/Time - Time Adjust Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Time Adjustment    | Select whether or not the time is automatically adjusted with NTP.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Disable  |
| NTP Server Address | Specifies the NTP server address.<br>IPv4 address, IPv6 address or FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) can be specified.<br><br>Range: Up to 63 characters<br>Default: 0.0.0.0 |
| Port Number        | Specifies the NTP server port number.<br><br>Range: 1 - 65535<br>Default: 123   |
| Time Zone          | Specifies the time difference from GMT.<br><br>Range: -12:00 - +13:00<br>Default: 0:00  |
| Adjustment Time    | Shows the last modification date and time.<br><br>Default: Unknown  |

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values. |



# Admin Password

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

Device Information

Counter

Online Assistance

Date/Time

Admin Password

Machine Settings

ROM Version

Maintenance

Status Notification Settings

Admin Password

Current Password


New Password


Retype New Password

Apply

Clear

The **System - Admin Password** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Current Password | Type in the current password.<br><br>Range: Up to 16 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |
| New Password     | Sets a new password to enter Administrator Mode.<br><br>Range: Up to 16 characters<br>Default: [Blank]<br><br> Passwords can be set to any string of numbers and letters (uppercase and lowercase) up to 16 characters in length. |

| Item            | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Retype Password | <p>Verifies the new password typed in the <b>New Password</b> text box.</p> <p>Range: Up to 16 characters<br/>Default: [Blank]</p> <p> <i>If the password typed in three text boxes doesn't match, the following message displays when you choose the <b>Apply</b> button: "Password was changed unsuccessfully. Please retry." Click <b>OK</b> button, and then retype the passwords in both text boxes.</i></p> |
| Apply button    | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button    | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |



*If you forget the new password you've assigned, use the printer's **SYS DEFAULT MENU - RESTORE DEFAULTS - RESTORE NETWORK** menu to reset the password (and all other network configuration choices) to administrator.*

# Machine Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

Machine Settings

Administrator Name

Device Name

Device Location

Device Information

Do Startup Page

Auto Continue

Energy Saver Time

Grayscale Page

Hide Personal Information

Apply


Clear


The **System - Machine Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Administrator Name | Specifies the name of the administrator for the printer.<br><br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank] |
| Device Name        | Specifies the name of the printer.<br><br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]                       |
| Device Location    | Specifies the setup location for the printer.<br><br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]            |
| Device Information | Specifies the information for the printer.<br><br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]               |

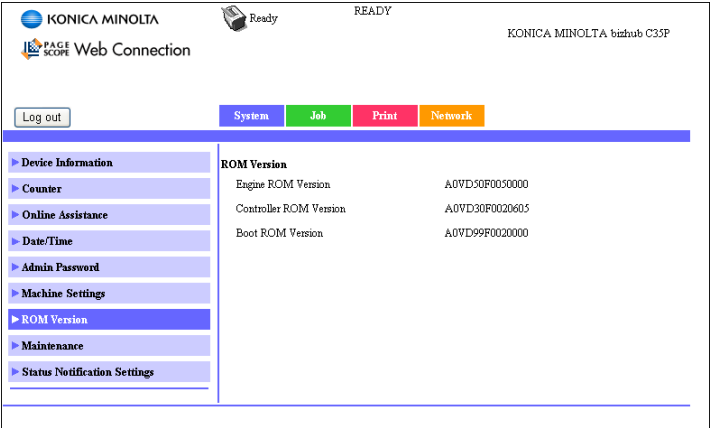
7-76

Configuring the Printer

| Item              | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Do Startup Page   | <p>Selects whether or not a startup page is printed when the printer is turned on.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off<br/> Default: Off<br/> Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> SYS DEFAULT MENU - STARTUP<br/> OPTIONS - DO STARTUP PAGE</p>  |
| Auto Continue     | <p>Selects whether or not printing continues if the size or type of paper in the selected paper tray is different from the size or type of paper for the print job.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off<br/> Default: Off<br/> Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> SYS DEFAULT - AUTO CONTINUE</p>   |
| Hold Job Timeout  | <p>Specifies the length of time until print jobs saved on the hard disk are deleted. If Disable is selected, print jobs are not deleted at a specific time.</p> <p>Choices: Disabled, One Hour, Four Hours, One Day, One Week<br/> Default: Disabled<br/> Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> SYS DEFAULT MENU -<br/> HOLD JOB TIMEOUT</p> <p> <i>This menu item appears only if an optional hard disk kit HD-P03 is installed.</i></p> |
| Energy Saver Time | <p>Specifies the length of time until the machine enters Energy Saver mode.</p> <p>This menu item appears only when <b>Energy Saver</b> is set to <b>On</b>.</p> <p>Choices: 5-15 Minutes, 30 Minutes, 1 Hour, 3 Hours<br/> Default: 15 Minutes<br/> Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> SYS DEFAULT MENU -<br/> ENERGY SAVER TIME</p>   |

| Item                      | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Grayscale Page            | <p>Specify the operation to be performed for black-and-white pages in a job specified for color printing.</p> <p>If <b>Auto</b> is selected, printing is automatically performed according to the first page of the job.</p> <p>If <b>Grayscale Print</b> is selected, black-and-white printing is automatically performed depending on each page.</p> <p>If <b>Color Print</b> is selected, color printing is performed, even for a black-and-white page.</p> <p>Choices: Auto, Grayscale Print, Color Print<br/> Default: Grayscale Print<br/> Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> SYS DEFAULT MENU -<br/> GRAYSCALE PAGE</p> |
| Job Log                   | <p>Select whether or not the Job Log function is used.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable<br/> Default: Disable</p> <p> <i>This menu item appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.</i></p>   |
| Hide Personal Information | <p>Select whether or not the names of printed files (<b>File Name</b>) are displayed in the Job page.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off<br/> Default: Off</p>   |
| Apply button              | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button              | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

# ROM Version

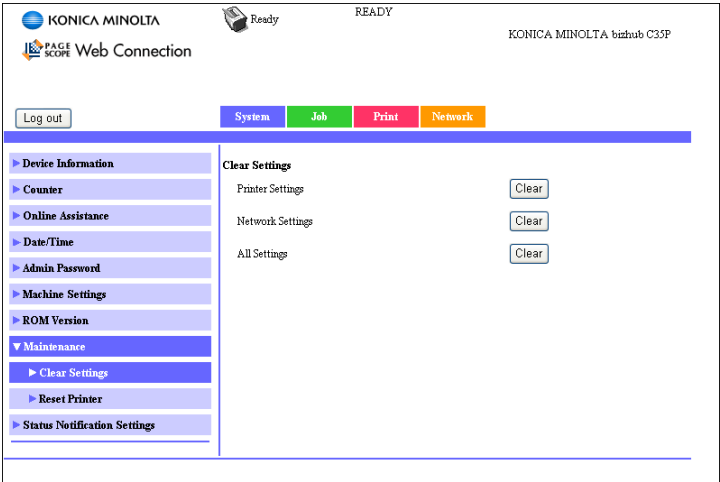


The **System - ROM Version** window provides the following information.

| Item                   | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| Engine ROM Version     | Displays the ROM version of the printer engine.     |
| Controller ROM Version | Displays the ROM version of the printer controller. |
| Boot ROM Version       | Displays the ROM version of the Boot ROM.           |

# Maintenance

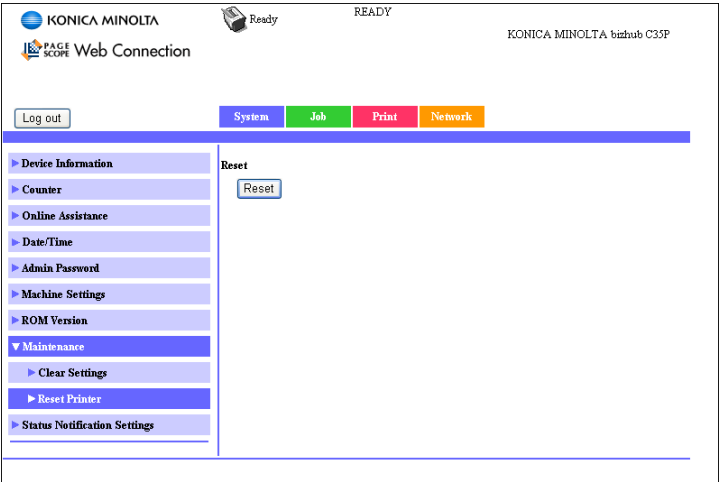
## Clear Settings



The **System - Maintenance - Clear Settings** page allows you to reset the printer settings to its factory defaults.

| Item             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Printer Settings | Resets the printer settings to their defaults.<br><br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - RESTORE<br>DEFAULTS - RESTORE PRINTER                                 |
| Network Settings | Resets the network settings to their defaults.<br><br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - RESTORE<br>DEFAULTS - RESTORE NETWORK                                 |
| All Settings     | Resets all settings to their defaults.<br><br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - RESTORE<br>DEFAULTS - RESTORE ALL   |
| Clear button     | When clicked, the message “Is it OK to restore Factory Defaults?” appears. Click <b>OK</b> to automatically restart the printer and return the settings to their default values. |

# Reset Printer





The **System - Maintenance - Reset Printer** page allows you to reset the printer controller.


| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Reset button | When clicked, the message “Is it OK to reset the Printer?” appears. Click <b>OK</b> to automatically restart the printer. |



## Status Notification Settings




Web Connection


READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

System
Job
Print
Network

▶ Device Information

▶ Counter

▶ Online Assistance

▶ Date/Time

▶ Admin Password

▶ Machine Settings

▶ ROM Version

▶ Maintenance

▶ Status Notification Settings

### Status Notification Settings

**IP Address**

Notification Address

Port Number  (1-65535)

Community Name

---

**IPX Address**

Notification Address

Node Address

Community Name

---

**Email Address**

Email Notice  ▼

Notification Address

---

The **System - Status Notification Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item       | Description          |  |
|------------|----------------------|--|
| IP Address | Notification Address | Specify the IP address of the SNMP trap receiver. An IPv4 or IPv6 address or a host name can be specified.<br><br>Range: Up to 63 characters<br>Default: 0.0.0.0 |
|            | Port Number          | Specify the port number of the SNMP trap.<br><br>Range: 1 - 65535<br>Default: 162  |
|            | Community Name       | Specify the community name for the SNMP trap.<br><br>Range: Up to 15 characters<br>Default: public   |

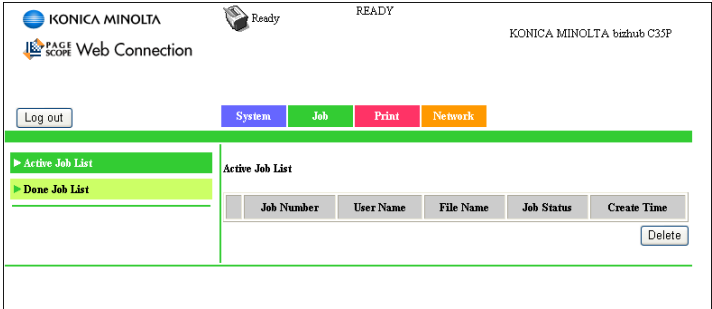
| Item          |                      | Description   |
|---------------|----------------------|---|
| IPX Address   | Notification Address | Specify the IPX address of the SNMP trap receiver.<br><br>Range: 8 characters<br>Default: 00000000  |
|               | Node Address         | Specify the node address of the SNMP trap receiver.<br><br>Range: 12 characters<br>Default: 000000000000  |
|               | Community Name       | Specify the community name for the SNMP trap.<br><br>Range: Up to 15 characters<br>Default: public  |
| Email Address | Email Notice         | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent by e-mail when a warning occurs in the printer.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable            |
|               | Notification Address | Specifies the e-mail address where the notification is sent.<br><br>Range: Up to 320 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |
| Alert         | Paper Empty          | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent when the paper tray runs out of paper.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable                     |
|               | Paper Jam            | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent when a paper misfeed occurs.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable                               |
|               | Maintenance          | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent when the time for a periodic maintenance has been reached.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable |

| Item |                  | Description   |
|------|------------------|---|
|      | Toner Out        | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent when the toner is empty.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable   |
|      | Output Tray Full | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent when the output tray has become full.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable                                      |
|      | Fuser Unit End   | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent when the fuser unit has reached the end of its service life.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable               |
|      | Operator Call    | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent when the operator must be called.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable  |
|      | Service Call     | Selects whether or not notification is sent to the service representative when a condition occurs that requires servicing.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable |
|      | Job Complete     | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent when a print job is completed correctly.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable                                   |
|      | Job Error        | Specifies whether or not a notification is sent when a job could not be printed because an error occurred.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable                 |

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values. |

# Job Page

This page allows you to view the status of current print jobs.

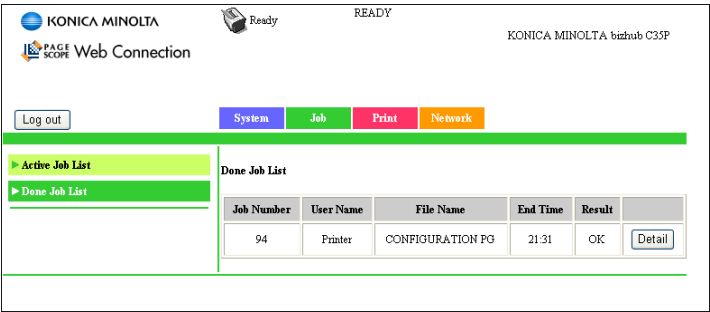


## Active Job List (show above)

The **Job - Active Job List** window provides the following information for up to 49 print jobs.

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Job Number    | Displays the print job identification number. Each print job that the printer receives is assigned a unique identification number.  |
| User Name     | If known, displays the owner of the print job.  |
| File Name     | Displays the name of the print file.<br><br>This cell remains empty if <b>Hide Personal Information</b> is set to <b>On</b> in the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> window. |
| Job Status    | Displays the current status of the print job (Parsing, Printing, Cancel, Pending, Abort or Pending).  |
| Create Time   | Displays the time that the job was queued.  |
| Delete button | Deletes the print job(s) whose check boxes in column 1 are checked.   |

# Done Job List



The **Job - Done Job List** window provides the following information for up to 50 print jobs.

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Job Number    | Displays the print job identification number. Each print job that the printer receives is assigned a unique identification number.  |
| User Name     | If known, displays the owner of the print job.  |
| File Name     | Displays the name of the print file.<br><br>This cell remains empty if <b>Hide Personal Information</b> is set to <b>On</b> in the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> window. |
| End Time      | Displays the time that printing finished.   |
| Result        | Displays the result of the print job (OK, Error, or Canceled).  |
| Detail button | Displays a screen containing details.   |

# Done Job List (Detail)

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

> Active Job List

> Done Job List

Detail

|               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| Job Number    | 94               |
| User Name     | Printer          |
| File Name     | CONFIGURATION PG |
| Delivery Type | Report Print     |
| Create Time   | 21:31            |
| End Time      | 21:31            |
| Result        | OK               |

Back

The **Job - Done Job List - Detail** window provides the following information for the selected job.

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Job Number    | Displays the print job identification number. Each print job that the printer receives is assigned a unique identification number.      |
| User Name     | If known, displays the owner of the print job.  |
| File Name     | Displays the name of the print file.  |
| Delivery Type | Displays the delivery method for the job (Print, Print and Hold, Proof then Print, IPP Print, Secure Job, Time Print, or Report Print). |
| Create Time   | Displays the time that the job was queued.  |
| End Time      | Displays the time that printing finished.   |
| Result        | Displays the result of the print job (OK, Error, or Canceled).  |
| Back button   | Returns to the previous screen.   |


7-88


Configuring the Printer


# Print Page

This page allows more detailed printer settings to be specified.

## Local Interface

 KONICA MINOLTA

 iPage Score Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Local Interface

▶ Default Settings

Local Interface

I/O Timeout

15

Seconds(5-300)

Apply

Clear

The **Print - Local Interface** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item         | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| I/O Timeout  | Specifies the reception timeout (in seconds).<br>Range: 5-300<br>Default: 15<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - JOB TIMEOUT |
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |



## General Settings


**KONICA MINOLTA**


**Web Connection**


 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Local Interface

▼ Default Settings

▶ General Settings

▶ Paper Source Settings

▶ Tray Mapping Settings

▶ PCL Settings

▶ PS Settings

▶ Print Quality Settings

General Settings

PDL

Auto

Paper Source

Tray2

Duplex

Off

Output Tray

Main Tray

Copies

1 (1-9999)

Paper Size

Letter

Width

8.50 Inches (3.63-8.50)

Length

11.00 Inches (5.83-14.00)

Paper Type

Plain Paper


Unit of Measure

Inches


Apply

Clear

The **Print - Default Settings - General Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| PDL          | <p>Selects default language to be selected.</p> <p>Choices: Auto, PCL, PS<br/>           Default: Auto<br/>           Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>               SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>               - DEF. EMULATION</p>  |
| Paper Source | <p>The paper tray that is normally used can be specified.</p> <p>Choices: Tray1, Tray2, Tray3<br/>           Default: Tray2<br/>           Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>               PAPER MENU - PAPER SOURCE -<br/>               DEFAULT TRAY</p> <p> <b>Tray3</b> appears only if an optional lower feeder unit PF-P09 is installed.</p> |

| Item        | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| Duplex      | <p>If <b>Long-Edge Binding</b> is selected, the pages will be printed on both sides of the paper for long-edge binding.</p> <p>If <b>Short-Edge Binding</b> is selected, the pages will be printed on both sides of the paper for short-edge binding.</p> <p>Choices: Off, Short-Edge Binding, Long-Edge Binding</p> <p>Default: Off</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>PAPER MENU - DUPLEX</p> |
| Output Tray | Displays the name of the output tray.  |
| Copies      | <p>Specifies the default setting for number of copies to be printed.</p> <p>Range: 1-9999</p> <p>Default: 1</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>PAPER MENU - COPIES</p>  |
| Paper Size  | <p>Specifies the default setting for the size of paper.</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - PAPER -<br/>DEFAULT PAPER - PAPER SIZE</p>  |
| Width       | <p>Specifies the paper width when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b>.</p> <p>Range: 3.63 - 8.50 (inch) / 92 - 216 (mm)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - PAPER -<br/>DEFAULT PAPER - CUSTOM SIZE<br/>- WIDTH</p>  |
| Length      | <p>Specifies the paper length when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b>.</p> <p>Range: 5.83 - 14.00 (inch) / 148 - 356 (mm)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - PAPER -<br/>DEFAULT PAPER - CUSTOM SIZE<br/>- LENGTH</p>  |

| Item            | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Paper Type      | <p>Specifies the default setting for the type of paper.</p> <p>Choices: Plain Paper, Recycled, Thick 1, Thick 2, Label, Envelope, Postcard, Letterhead, Glossy 1, Glossy 2, Single Side Only, Special Paper</p> <p>Default: Plain Paper</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>SYS DEFAULT MENU - PAPER -<br/>DEFAULT PAPER - PAPER TYPE</p>  |
| Collate         | <p>If <b>On</b> is selected, all pages in a copy of the document can be printed before printing the next copy. If <b>Off</b> is selected, all copies of the document are not printed separately.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off</p> <p>Default: Off</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>PAPER MENU - COLLATE</p> <p> <i>This menu item appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.</i></p> |
| Unit of Measure | <p>The unit for specifying the size of custom paper can be specified between inches and millimeters.</p> <p>Choices: Inches, Millimeters</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>SYS DEFAULT MENU - PAPER -<br/>UNIT OF MEASURE</p>  |
| Apply button    | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button    | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

# Paper Source Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

Local Interface

Default Settings

General Settings

Paper Source Settings

Tray Mapping Settings

PCL Settings

PS Settings

Print Quality Settings

Paper Source Settings

Tray1

Paper Size

Width

Length

Paper Type

Tray2

Paper Size

Width

Length

Paper Type

Tray3

Paper Size

Paper Type

Tray Chaining

Tray Chaining

Apply

Clear

The **Print - Default Settings - Paper Source Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item  |            | Description   |
|-------|------------|---|
| Tray1 | Paper Size | Specifies the setting for the size of paper loaded into Tray 1.<br><br>Default: Letter (120V model)<br>A4 (Other model)<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>PAPER MENU - PAPER SOURCE - TRAY1 - PAPER SIZE                   |
|       | Width      | Specifies the paper width when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b> .<br><br>Range: 3.63 - 8.50 (inch) / 92 - 216 (mm)<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>PAPER MENU - PAPER SOURCE - TRAY1 - CUSTOM SIZE - WIDTH |

Configuring the Printer

7-93

| Item |            | Description  |
|------|------------|--|
|      | Length     | <p>Specifies the paper length when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b>.</p> <p>Range: 5.83 - 14.00 (inch) /<br/>148 - 356 (mm)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>PAPER MENU - PAPER<br/>SOURCE - TRAY1 -<br/>CUSTOM SIZE - LENGTH</p>   |
|      | Paper Type | <p>Specifies the setting for the type of paper loaded into Tray 1.</p> <p>Choices: Any, Plain Paper, Recycled, Thick 1, Thick 2, Label, Envelope, Postcard, Letterhead, Glossy 1, Glossy 2, Single Side Only, Special Paper</p> <p>Default: Plain Paper</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>PAPER MENU - PAPER<br/>SOURCE - TRAY1 - PAPER<br/>TYPE</p> |

| Item  |            | Description  |
|-------|------------|--|
| Tray2 | Paper Size | <p>Specifies the setting for the size of paper loaded into Tray 2.</p> <p>Default: Letter (120V model)<br/>A4 (other model)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>PAPER MENU - PAPER<br/>SOURCE - TRAY2 - PAPER<br/>SIZE</p>   |
|       | Width      | <p>Specifies the paper width when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b>.</p> <p>Range: 3.63 - 8.50 (inch) /<br/>92 - 216 (mm)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>PAPER MENU - PAPER<br/>SOURCE - TRAY2 -<br/>CUSTOM SIZE - WIDTH</p>   |
|       | Length     | <p>Specifies the paper length when <b>Paper Size</b> is set to <b>Custom Size</b>.</p> <p>Range: 5.83 - 11.69 (inch) /<br/>148 - 297 (mm)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>PAPER MENU - PAPER<br/>SOURCE - TRAY2 -<br/>CUSTOM SIZE - LENGTH</p>   |
|       | Paper Type | <p>Specifies the setting for the type of paper loaded into Tray 2.</p> <p>Choices: Any, Plain Paper, Recycled, Thick 1, Thick 2, Label, Postcard, Letterhead, Glossy 1, Glossy 2, Single Side Only, Special Paper</p> <p>Default: Plain Paper</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>PAPER MENU - PAPER<br/>SOURCE - TRAY2 - PAPER<br/>TYPE</p> |

| Item  |               | Description  |
|---|---------------|--|
| Tray3<br><br>This item appears only if an optional lower feeder unit PF-P09 is installed. | Paper Size    | Displays the setting for the size of paper loaded into Tray 3.<br><br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>PAPER MENU - PAPER<br>SOURCE - TRAY3 - PAPER<br>SIZE   |
|   | Paper Type    | Specifies the setting for the type of paper loaded into Tray 3.<br><br>Choices: Any, Plain Paper, Recycled, Single Side Only, Special Paper<br>Default: Plain Paper<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>PAPER MENU - PAPER<br>SOURCE - TRAY3 - PAPER<br>TYPE  |
| Tray Chaining   | Tray Chaining | If <b>Enable</b> is selected and the specified paper tray runs out of paper during printing, a paper tray loaded with paper of the same size is automatically selected so printing can continue.<br><br>If <b>Disable</b> is selected and the specified paper tray runs out of paper, printing stops.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>PAPER MENU - PAPER<br>SOURCE - TRAY CHAINING |
| Apply button  |               | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button  |               | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

# Tray Mapping Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

 Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▶ Local Interface

▼ Default Settings

▶ General Settings

▶ Paper Source Settings

▶ Tray Mapping Settings

▶ PCL Settings

▶ PS Settings

▶ Print Quality Settings

Tray Mapping Settings

Tray Mapping Mode

Off

Logical Tray 0

Physical Tray 2

Logical Tray 1

Physical Tray 1

Logical Tray 2

Physical Tray 2

Logical Tray 3

Physical Tray 2

Logical Tray 4

Physical Tray 2

Logical Tray 5

Physical Tray 2

Logical Tray 6

Physical Tray 2

Logical Tray 7

Physical Tray 2

Logical Tray 8

Physical Tray 2

Logical Tray 9

Physical Tray 2


Apply

Clear



The **Print - Default Settings - Tray Mapping Settings** window provides the following information.


| Item              | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Tray Mapping Mode | Select whether or not the Tray Mapping function is used.<br><br>Choices: On, Off<br>Default: Off<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>PAPER MENU - PAPER SOURCE -<br>TRAY MAPPING - TRAY MAPPING<br>MODE |



| Item             | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Logical Tray 0-9 | <p>Select the tray that is used for printing when a print job is received from another manufacturer's printer driver.</p> <p>The default setting for <b>Logical Tray 1</b> is <b>Physical Tray1</b>. The default setting for all other trays is <b>Physical Tray2</b>.</p> <p>Choices: Physical Tray1, Physical Tray2, Physical Tray3</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> PAPER MENU - PAPER SOURCE -<br/> TRAY MAPPING - LOGICAL<br/> TRAY0 - 9</p> <p> <i>Physical Tray3 appears only if an optional lower feeder unit PF-P09 is installed.</i></p> |
| Apply button     | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button     | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

## PCL Settings


**KONICA MINOLTA**  

**Web Connection**


**Ready**

**READY**

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System
Job
Print
Network

▶ Local Interface  
▼ Default Settings  
▶ General Settings  
▶ Paper Source Settings  
▶ Tray Mapping Settings  
▶ PCL Settings  
▶ PS Settings  
▶ Print Quality Settings

**PCL Settings**  
Font Number 0 (0-102)  
Symbol Set PC-8  
Lines Per Page 60 (5-128)  
Font Point Size 12.00 Point(4.00-999.75)  
Font Pitch Size 10.00 (0.44-99.99)  
CRLF Mapping CR=CR LF=LF

Apply Clear

The **Print - Default Settings - PCL Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item            | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Font Number     | <p>Sets the default font in the PCL language.</p> <p>Range: 0 - 102<br/>Default: 0<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>- PCL - FONT SOURCE - FONT<br/>NUMBER</p>       |
| Symbol Set      | <p>Selects the symbol set used with the PCL language.</p> <p>Default: PC-8<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>- PCL - FONT SOURCE - SYMBOL<br/>SET</p>                |
| Lines Per Page  | <p>Selects how many lines are in a page in PCL language.</p> <p>Range: 5 - 128<br/>Default: 60<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>- PCL - LINES PER PAGE</p>          |
| Font Point Size | <p>Sets the font size in the PCL language.</p> <p>Range: 4.00 - 999.75<br/>Default: 12.00<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>- PCL - FONT SOURCE - POINT<br/>SIZE</p> |
| Font Pitch Size | <p>Sets the font pitch in the PCL language.</p> <p>Range: 0.44 - 99.99<br/>Default: 10.00<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>- PCL - FONT SOURCE - PITCH<br/>SIZE</p> |

| Item          | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| CR/LF Mapping | <p>Selects CR/LF code definition in PCL language.</p> <p>Choices: CR=CR LF=LF, CR=CRLF LF=LF,<br/> CR=CR LF=LFCR, CR=CRLF LF=LFCR</p> <p>Default: CR=CR LF=LF</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/> - PCL - CR/LF MAPPING</p> |
| Apply button  | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button  | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

# PS Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

Local Interface

▼ Default Settings

▶ General Settings

▶ Paper Source Settings

▶ Tray Mapping Settings

▶ PCL Settings

▶ PS Settings

▶ Print Quality Settings

PS Settings

Wait Timeout

0

Seconds(0-300)

PS Protocol

Auto

Print to PS Error

Off

Auto Trapping

Off

Black Overprint

Off

Apply

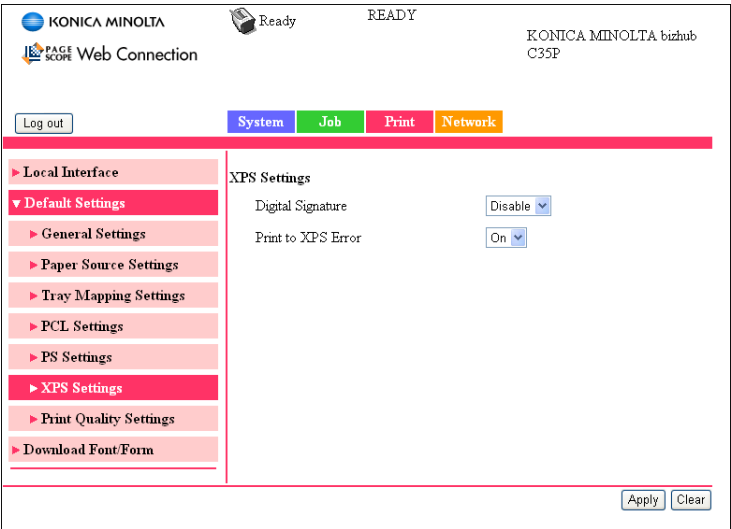
Clear

The **Print - Default Settings - PS Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:


| Item              | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| Wait Timeout      | Sets Postscript timeout. "0" means that no time-out control is effective.<br><br>Range: 0 - 300 (in seconds)<br>Default: 0<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br>- POSTSCRIPT - WAIT TIMEOUT |
| PS Protocol       | Specifies the PS protocol.<br><br>Choices: Auto, Normal, Binary<br>Default: Auto<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br>- POSTSCRIPT - PS PROTOCOL  |
| Print to PS Error | Specifies whether or not error printing is performed.<br><br>Choices: On, Off<br>Default: Off<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br>- POSTSCRIPT - PS ERROR PAGE                             |

| Item            | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Auto Trapping   | <p>Select whether or not neighboring colors are printed superimposed in order to prevent white space around images.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off<br/> Default: Off<br/> Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>           SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>                   - POSTSCRIPT - AUTO TRAPPING</p>  |
| Black Overprint | <p>Specify whether black objects are printed (superimposed) on a neighboring color in order to prevent white space around black characters or figures.</p> <p>If <b>Text/Graphic</b> is selected, superimposed printing is applied to text and graphics.</p> <p>If <b>Text</b> is selected, superimposed printing is applied to text.</p> <p>Choices: Text/Graphic, Text, Off<br/> Default: Off<br/> Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>           SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>                   - POSTSCRIPT - BLACK OVER-<br/>                           PRINT</p> |
| Apply button    | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button    | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

# XPS Settings



The **Print - Default Settings - XPS Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:

 *This page appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.*

| Item               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Digital Signature  | <p>Specify whether to verify digital signature. When <b>Enable</b> is selected, the document without a valid digital signature is not printed.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable<br/>Default: Disable<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>- XPS - DIGITAL SIGNATURE</p> |
| Print to XPS Error | <p>Specify whether to print error message when an error occurs during XPS print.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off<br/>Default: On<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>SYS DEFAULT MENU - EMULATION<br/>- XPS - XPS ERROR PAGE</p>   |

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values. |

### Print Quality Settings

The **Print - Default Settings - Print Quality Settings** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item                   |            | Description  |
|------------------------|------------|--|
| Print Quality Settings | Color Mode | <p>If <b>Color</b> is selected, the pages are printed in full color.</p> <p>If <b>Monochrome</b> is selected, the pages are printed in black and white.</p> <p>Choices: Color, Monochrome</p> <p>Default: Color</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">QUALITY MENU - COLOR<br/>MODE</p> |

| Item |   | Description  |
|------|---|--|
|      | Color Separation                        | <p>If <b>On</b> is selected, color separation is performed.</p> <p>If <b>Off</b> is selected, color separation is not performed.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off</p> <p>Default: Off</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - COLOR SEPARATION</p>  |
|      | Brightness                              | <p>Specifies the brightness of the printed image.</p> <p>Choices: +15%, +10%, +5%, 0, -5%, -10%, -15%</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - BRIGHTNESS</p>   |
|      | Halftone (Image/Text/Graphics Printing) | <p>Specifies how halftones are reproduced.</p> <p>If <b>Line Art</b> is selected, halftones are reproduced with high precision.</p> <p>If <b>Detail</b> is selected, halftones are reproduced with detail.</p> <p>If <b>Smooth</b> is selected, halftones are reproduced with smoothness.</p> <p>Choices: Line Art, Detail, Smooth</p> <p>Default: Detail (Image/Graphics)<br/>Line Art (Text)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - HALFTONE - IMAGE/TEXT/GRAPHICS PRINTING</p> |



| Item |  | Description  |
|------|--|--|
|      | Edge Enhancement (Image/Text/ Graphics Printing) | <p>Select whether image/text/graphics edges are emphasized.</p> <p>If <b>On</b> is selected, the edges are emphasized.</p> <p>If <b>Off</b> is selected, the edges are not emphasized.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off</p> <p>Default: Off (Image)<br/>On (Text / Graphics)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - EDGE<br/>ENHANCEMENT - IMAGE/<br/>TEXT/GRAPHICS PRINTING</p>   |
|      | Edge Strength                                    | <p>Select the desired amount that edges are emphasized.</p> <p>If <b>Off</b> is selected, the edges are not emphasized.</p> <p>If <b>Low</b> is selected, the edges are slightly emphasized.</p> <p>If <b>Middle</b> is selected, the edges are emphasized by an average amount.</p> <p>If <b>High</b> is selected, the edges are highly emphasized.</p> <p>Choices: Off, Low, Middle, High</p> <p>Default: Middle</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - EDGE<br/>STRENGTH</p> |
|      | Economy Print Mode                               | <p>Select whether to print graphics with a reduced density by reducing the amount of toner that is used.</p> <p>When Economy Print Mode is enabled, the amount of toner used is reduced when printing many drawings.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off</p> <p>Default: Off</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - ECONOMY<br/>PRINT</p>   |

| Item         |  | Description  |
|--------------|--|--|
| PCL Settings | Contrast                                       | <p>Specifies the contrast of the image.</p> <p>Choices: +15%, +10%, +5%, 0, -5%, -10%, -15%</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - PCL<br/>SETTING - CONTRAST</p>   |
|              | Image/Text/ Graphics Printing (Source)         | <p>Specifies the color space for RGB data.</p> <p>Choices: Device Color, sRGB</p> <p>Default: sRGB</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - PCL<br/>SETTING - IMAGE/TEXT/<br/>GRAPHICS PRINTING - RGB<br/>SOURCE</p>  |
|              | Image/Text/ Graphics Printing (Intent)         | <p>Specifies the color intent to be used on conversion RGB to CMYK by printer.</p> <p>Choices: Vivid, Photographic</p> <p>Default: Photographic (Image)<br/>Vivid (Text/Graphics)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - PCL<br/>SETTING - IMAGE/TEXT/<br/>GRAPHICS PRINTING - RGB<br/>INTENT</p> |
|              | Image/Text/ Graphics Printing (Gray Treatment) | <p>Specifies the method to reproduce RGB black and gray.</p> <p>Choices: Composite Black, Black and Gray, Black Only</p> <p>Default: Black and Gray</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - PCL<br/>SETTING - IMAGE/TEXT/<br/>GRAPHICS PRINTING - RGB<br/>GRAY</p>                                 |


| Item        |  | Description   |
|-------------|--|---|
| PS Settings | Image/Text/ Graphics Printing (RGB Source)         | <p>Specifies the color space for RGB data.</p> <p>Choices: Device Color, sRGB, AppleRGB, AdobeRGB1998, ColorMatchRGB, BlueAdjustRGB, Custom Profile</p> <p>Default: sRGB</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - PS<br/>SETTING - IMAGE/TEXT/<br/>GRAPHICS PRINTING - RGB<br/>SOURCE</p>  |
|             | Image/Text/ Graphics Printing (RGB Intent)         | <p>Specifies the color intent to be used on conversion RGB to CMYK by printer.</p> <p>Choices: Vivid, Photographic, Relative Color, Absolute Color</p> <p>Default: Photographic (Image)<br/>Vivid (Text/Graphics)</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - PS<br/>SETTING - IMAGE/TEXT/<br/>GRAPHICS PRINTING - RGB<br/>INTENT</p> |
|             | Image/Text/ Graphics Printing (RGB Gray Treatment) | <p>Specifies the method to reproduce RGB black and gray.</p> <p>Choices: Composite Black, Black and Gray, Black Only</p> <p>Default: Black and Gray</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>QUALITY MENU - PS<br/>SETTING - IMAGE/TEXT/<br/>GRAPHICS PRINTING - RGB<br/>GRAY</p>   |

| Item |   | Description  |
|------|---|--|
|      | Image/Text/<br>Graphics Printing<br>(Destination Profile) | <p>Specifies the ICC destination profile to be used for printed output.</p> <p>Choices: Auto, Custom Profile<br/>Default: Auto<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>           QUALITY MENU - PS<br/>           SETTING - IMAGE/TEXT/<br/>           GRAPHICS PRINTING -<br/>           DESTINATION PROF</p>                               |
|      | Simulation (Profile)                                      | <p>Specifies the specific ICC simulation profile to be used for printed output.</p> <p>Choices: None, SWOP, Euroscale, CommercialPress, Japan Color TOYO, DIC, Custom Profile<br/>Default: None<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>           QUALITY MENU - PS<br/>           SETTING - SIMULATION -<br/>           SIMULATION PROF</p> |
|      | Simulation (Intent)                                       | <p>Specifies the simulation intent to be used for simulation printing.</p> <p>Choices: Relative Color, Absolute Color<br/>Default: Relative Color<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>           QUALITY MENU - PS<br/>           SETTING - SIMULATION -<br/>           SIMULATION INTENT</p>   |
|      | Simulation (CMYK Gray Treatment)                          | <p>Specifies the method to reproduce CMYK black and gray for simulation printing.</p> <p>Choices: Composite Black, Black and Gray, Black Only<br/>Default: Composite Black<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>           QUALITY MENU - PS<br/>           SETTING - SIMULATION -<br/>           CMYK GRAY</p>                            |


| Item                 |   | Description   |
|----------------------|---|---|
| Calibration Settings | Tone Calibration                              | <p>If <b>On</b> is indicated, image adjustments are applied.<br/>If <b>Off</b> is indicated, image adjustments are not applied.</p> <p>Choices: On, Off<br/>Default: On<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> QUALITY MENU -<br/> CALIBRATION - TONE<br/> CALIBRATION</p> |
|                      | Cyan/Magenta/Yellow/Black Density (Highlight) | <p>Specifies the density of the highlight color.</p> <p>Choices: +3, +2, +1, 0, -1, -2, -3<br/>Default: 0<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> QUALITY MENU -<br/> CALIBRATION - CMYK<br/> DENSITY - CYAN/<br/> MAGENTA/YELLOW/BLACK -<br/> HIGHLIGHT</p>                |
|                      | Cyan/Magenta/Yellow/Black Density (Middle)    | <p>Specifies the density of the middle color.</p> <p>Choices: +3, +2, +1, 0, -1, -2, -3<br/>Default: 0<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> QUALITY MENU -<br/> CALIBRATION - CMYK<br/> DENSITY - CYAN/<br/> MAGENTA/YELLOW/BLACK -<br/> MIDDLE</p>                      |
|                      | Cyan/Magenta/Yellow/Black Density (Shadow)    | <p>Specifies the density of the shadow color.</p> <p>Choices: +3, +2, +1, 0, -1, -2, -3<br/>Default: 0<br/>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> QUALITY MENU -<br/> CALIBRATION - CMYK<br/> DENSITY - CYAN/<br/> MAGENTA/YELLOW/BLACK -<br/> SHADOW</p>                      |
| Apply button         |   | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |


| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values. |


# Download Font/Form

 This page appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.

## PS Font

 KONICA MINOLTA

 PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub  
C35P

Log out

SystemJobPrintNetwork

Local Interface

Default Settings

Download Font/Form

PS Font

Form Overlay

Color Profile

Download PS Font

☒ HDD

Browse...

Submit

Delete PS Font


☐

Number

Font Name

Source

Delete

 The printer must have an optional hard disk kit HD-P03 or CompactFlash card to use the PS Font parameters described below.

The **Print - Download Font/Form - PS Font** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item             |               | Description  |
|------------------|---------------|--|
| Download PS Font | Radio button  | Specifies the download destination (HDD/ Memory Card) of the font.   |
|                  | Text box      | Specifies the file name for the PostScript font to be downloaded.  |
|                  | Browse button | Displays a dialog box for browsing to the PostScript font file.  |
|                  | Submit button | Sends the specified PostScript font file to the printer.   |
| Delete PS Font   | Check box     | Select the check box of the font to be deleted, and then click <b>Delete</b> to delete the selected font from the printer. |
|                  | Number        | Displays the control number of the font.   |
|                  | Font Name     | Displays the name of the fonts.  |
|                  | Source        | Displays the storage source of the font.   |

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Delete button | Deletes the PostScript font file(s) whose check boxes the left end are checked. |

## Form Overlay

The screenshot shows the 'Form Overlay' configuration window in the KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P Web Connection interface. The interface includes a top navigation bar with 'System', 'Job', 'Print', and 'Network' tabs. The 'Print' tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar menu shows 'Download Font/Form' expanded, with 'Form Overlay' selected. The main content area is titled 'Download Form Overlay' and contains a radio button for 'HDD', a text box for the file name, and 'Browse...' and 'Submit' buttons. Below this is a 'Delete Form Overlay' section with a table listing overlays by Number, File Name, and Source, and a 'Delete' button.

The **Print - Download Font/Form - Form Overlay** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item                  | Description   |   |
|-----------------------|---------------|---|
| Download Form Overlay | Radio button  | Specifies the download destination (HDD/ Memory Card) of the form overlay file.   |
|                       | Text box      | Specifies the file name for the form overlay to be downloaded.  |
|                       | Browse button | Displays a dialog box for browsing to the form overlay file.  |
|                       | Submit button | Sends the specified form overlay file to the printer.   |
| Delete Form Overlay   | Check box     | Select the check box of the form overlay file to be deleted, and then click <b>Delete</b> to delete the selected form overlay from the printer. |
|                       | Number        | Displays the control number of the overlay.   |
|                       | File Name     | Displays the name of the overlays.  |



| Item          |        | Description  |
|---------------|--------|--|
|               | Source | Displays the storage source of the form overlay.                             |
| Delete button |        | Deletes the form overlay file(s) whose check boxes the left end are checked. |

## Color Profile

The screenshot shows the Konica Minolta bizhub C35P Web Connection interface. At the top, there are logos for KONICA MINOLTA and iKON PAGE SCOPE, along with a 'Web Connection' label. On the right, it says 'READY' and 'KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P'. Below the logos, there are tabs for 'System', 'Job', 'Print', and 'Network'. The 'Print' tab is selected. On the left, there is a sidebar with a tree view containing 'Local Interface', 'Default Settings', 'Download Font/Form', 'PS Font', 'Form Overlay', and 'Color Profile'. The 'Color Profile' option is selected. The main area is titled 'Download Color Profile' and contains a radio button for 'HDD', a text box for the file name, a 'Browse...' button, and a 'Submit' button. Below this, there is a section titled 'Delete Color Profile' with a table of color profiles and a 'Delete' button.

The **Print - Download Font/Form - Color Profile** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item                   |               | Description   |
|------------------------|---------------|---|
| Download Color Profile | Radio button  | Specifies the download destination (HDD/ Memory Card) of the color profile.   |
|                        | Text box      | Specifies the file name for the color profile to be downloaded.   |
|                        | Browse button | Displays a dialog box for browsing to the color profile file.   |
|                        | Submit button | Sends the specified color profile file to the printer.  |
| Delete Color Profile   | Check box     | Select the check box of the color profile file to be deleted, and then click <b>Delete</b> to delete the selected color profile from the printer. |
|                        | Number        | Displays the control number of the color profile.   |
|                        | File Name     | Displays the name of the color profile.   |

| Item          |              | Description   |
|---------------|--------------|---|
|               | Profile Name | Displays the name of the color profile.                                       |
|               | Class        | Displays the type of color profile.   |
|               | Color Space  | Displays the color space for the color profile.                               |
|               | Source       | Displays the storage source of the color profile.                             |
| Delete button |              | Deletes the color profile file(s) whose check boxes the left end are checked. |



*When Download Manager is being used, long file names cannot be specified for downloaded form PostScript fonts, overlays or color profiles. Make sure that file names comply with the 8.3 format (MS-DOS file name format). In addition, file names consisting of a maximum of 31 characters can be specified with the printer driver.*

# Network Page

This page allows you to configure network settings. For more information on these protocols, see Chapter 6 “Network Printing”

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

TCP/IP

IPv4 Settings

IPv6 Settings

RAW Port Settings

DNS Settings

IP Address Filtering

IPsec

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

TCP/IP

TCP/IP

Speed

LPD

SLP

LLMNR

Enable

Auto

Enable

Enable

Enable

Apply

Clear

## TCP/IP

### TCP/IP (shown above)

The **Network - TCP/IP - TCP/IP** window allows you to configure the following items. For more information on these TCP/IP, see Chapter 6 “Network Printing”

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| TCP/IP       | Sets whether or not to use TCP/IP.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br>IP - ENABLE  |
| Speed        | Specifies the operating mode and speed for Ethernet.<br><br>Choices: Auto, 10Base-T(Half), 10Base-T(Full),<br>100Base-TX(Half), 100Base-TX(Full),<br>1000Base-T(Full)<br>Default: Auto<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET -<br>SPEED/DUPLEX |
| LPD          | Select whether or not LPD is used.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable   |
| SLP          | Select whether or not SLP is used.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br>IP - SLP - ENABLE  |
| LLMNR        | Select whether or not LLMNR is used.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable   |
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

## IPv4 Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

READY

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▼ TCP/IP

▶ TCP/IP

▶ IPv4 Settings

▶ IPv6 Settings

▶ RAW Port Settings

▶ DNS Settings

▶ IP Address Filtering

▶ IPsec

▶ Bonjour

▶ WSD

▶ LLTD

▶ NetWare

▶ IPP

▶ FTP

▶ SNMP

▶ AppleTalk

▶ Email

▶ SSL/TLS

▶ Authentication

IPv4 Settings

Auto IP

☐ DHCP

☐ BootP

☐ ARP/PING

IP Address

192.168.1.2

Subnet Mask

255.255.255.0

Default Gateway

192.168.1.1

Domain Name Automatic Acquisition

Enable

DNS Server Automatic Acquisition




Enable

Apply

Clear

The **Network - TCP/IP - IPv4 Settings** window allows you to configure the following items. For more information on these TCP/IP, see Chapter 6 “Network Printing”

| Item    | Description   |
|---------|---|
| Auto IP | <p>Specifies the automatic assigning method for the printer IP address.</p> <p>Choices: DHCP, BootP, ARP/PING</p> <p>Default: DHCP</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/ IP - DHCP, BOOTP, ARP/PING</p> |

| Item                              | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| IP Address*                       | <p>Sets the printer's IP address.</p> <p>Range: 0–255 for each xxx triplet<br/>Default: 0.0.0.0</p> <p> <i>If the specified IP address is outside of the allowable range, the value is not changed, even after the <b>Apply</b> button is clicked. The setting returns to the previous value.</i></p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br/>IP - IP ADDRESS</p>  |
| Subnet Mask*                      | <p>Sets the printer's subnet mask address.</p> <p>Range: 0–255 for each xxx triplet<br/>Default: 0.0.0.0</p> <p> <i>If the specified subnet mask address is outside of the allowable range, the value is not changed, even after the <b>Apply</b> button is clicked. The setting returns to the previous value.</i></p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br/>IP - SUBNET MASK</p>                         |
| Default Gateway*                  | <p>If a router is used on the network, sets the router's address.</p> <p>Range: 0–255 for each xxx triplet<br/>Default: 0.0.0.0</p> <p> <i>If the specified router address is outside of the allowable range, the value is not changed, even after the <b>Apply</b> button is clicked. The setting returns to the previous value.</i></p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br/>IP - DEFAULT GATEWAY</p> |
| Domain Name Automatic Acquisition | <p>Select whether or not the default DNS domain name is automatically acquired from the DHCP server to overwrite the current setting.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable<br/>Default: Enable</p>  |

| Item  | Description  |
|---|--|
| DNS Server Automatic Acquisition  | <p>Select whether or not the DNS server address is automatically acquired from the DHCP server to overwrite the current setting.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable<br/>Default: Enable</p> |
| Apply button  | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button  | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |
| <p>* Always enter these addresses without leading zeros. For example, 131.011.010.001 should be entered as 131.11.10.1.</p> |  |

IPv6 Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

READY

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▼ TCP/IP

▶ TCP/IP

▶ IPv4 Settings

▶ IPv6 Settings

▶ RAW Port Settings

▶ DNS Settings

▶ IP Address Filtering

▶ IPsec

▶ Bonjour

▶ WSD

▶ LLTD

▶ NetWare

▶ IPP

▶ FTP

▶ SNMP

▶ AppleTalk

▶ Email

▶ SSL/TLS

▶ Authentication

IPv6 Settings

IPv6

Enable

IPv6 Auto Setting

Enable

IPv6 Link Local Address

fe80::220:6bff:fe42:898b

IPv6 Global Address

:::0

IPv6 Gateway Address

::

DHCPv6

Enable

DNS Server Automatic Acquisition

Enable

Search Domain Name Automatic Acquisition

Enable

NTP Server Automatic Acquisition

Enable



Apply

Clear

The **Network - TCP/IP - IPv6 Settings** window allows you to configure the following items. For more information on these TCP/IP, see Chapter 6 “Network Printing”

| Item              | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| IPv6              | Select whether or not IPv6 is used.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br>IP - IPv6 - ENABLE                        |
| IPv6 Auto Setting | Select whether or not the IPv6 auto setting is used.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br>IP - IPv6 - AUTO SETTING |



| Item                                     | Description   |
|--|---|
| IPv6 Link Local Address                  | <p>Displays IPv6 Link Local Address.</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br/>IP - IPv6 - LINK LOCAL</p>   |
| IPv6 Global Address                      | <p>Specifies the IPv6 Global Address.</p> <p>Range: 4 to 43 characters</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br/>IP - IPv6 - GLOBAL ADDRESS</p> <p> When <b>IPv6 Auto Setting</b> is set to <b>ENABLE</b>, this item is not applied, even if the setting is changed.</p>   |
| IPv6 Gateway Address                     | <p>Specifies the IPv6 Gateway Address.</p> <p>Range: 6 to 39 characters</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br/>IP - IPv6 - GATEWAY ADDRESS</p> <p> When <b>IPv6 Auto Setting</b> is set to <b>ENABLE</b>, this item is not applied, even if the setting is changed.</p> |
| DHCPv6                                   | <p>Select whether or not DHCPv6 is used.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Enable</p>   |
| DNS Server Automatic Acquisition         | <p>Select whether or not the DNS server address is automatically acquired from the DHCPv6 server to overwrite the current setting.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Enable</p>   |
| Search Domain Name Automatic Acquisition | <p>Select whether or not the DNS search domain name is automatically acquired from the DHCPv6 server to overwrite the current setting.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Enable</p>   |
| NTP Server Automatic Acquisition         | <p>Select whether or not the NTP server address is automatically acquired from the DHCPv6 server to overwrite the current setting.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Enable</p>   |

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values. |

## RAW Port Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▼ TCP/IP

▶ TCP/IP

▶ IPv4 Settings

▶ IPv6 Settings

▶ RAW Port Settings

▶ DNS Settings

▶ IP Address Filtering

▶ IPsec

▶ Bonjour

▶ WSD

▶ LLTD

▶ NetWare

▶ IPP

▶ FTP

▶ SNMP

▶ AppleTalk

▶ Email

▶ SSL/TLS

▶ Authentication

RAW Port Settings

RAW Port

Enable

RAW Port Number

9100

(1-65535)


RAW Port Bidirectional

Disable

Apply

Clear

The **Network - TCP/IP - RAW Port Settings** window allows you to configure the following items. For more information on these TCP/IP, see Chapter 6 “Network Printing”

| Item            | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Raw Port        | Select whether or not RAW port is used.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br>IP - RAW PORT - ENABLE   |
| RAW Port Number | Identifies the number of the printer's RAW port.<br>Choices: 1 - 65535<br>Default: 9100<br> <i>The currently used port number and numbers 161, 443 and 631 cannot be specified.</i> |

7-124

Configuring the Printer

| Item                   | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| RAW Port Bidirectional | Select whether or not the RAW Port bidirectional is used.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Disable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br>IP - RAW PORT - BIDIRECTIONAL |
| Apply button           | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button           | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

## DNS Settings

KONICA MINOLTA

READY

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▼ TCP/IP

▶ TCP/IP

▶ IPv4 Settings

▶ IPv6 Settings

▶ RAW Port Settings

▶ DNS Settings

▶ IP Address Filtering

▶ IPsec

▶ Bonjour

▶ WSD

▶ LLTD

▶ NetWare

▶ IPP

▶ FTP

▶ SNMP

▶ AppleTalk

▶ Email

▶ SSL/TLS

▶ Authentication

DNS Settings

Host Name

BHC35P-D2898B

Domain Name

DNS Server(IPv4)

0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0

DNS Server(IPv6)

::

::

::

Search Domain Name


Dynamic DNS

Disable

Apply

Clear

The **Network - TCP/IP - DNS Settings** window allows you to configure the following items. For more information on these TCP/IP, see Chapter 6 “Network Printing”

| Item        | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| Host Name   | <div>Specifies the host name.</div> <div>Range: Up to 63 characters</div> <div>Default: BHC35P-xxxxxx</div> <div> xxxxxx displays six last digits of the MAC address in hexadecimal.</div> |
| Domain Name | <div>Specifies the domain name.</div> <div>Range: Up to 63 characters</div> <div>Default: [Blank]</div>   |

| <b>Item</b>        | <b>Description</b>  |
|--------------------|---|
| DNS Server(IPv4)   | Specifies the DNS server.<br>A maximum of three IPv4 addresses can be specified.<br>Default: 0.0.0.0  |
| DNS Server(IPv6)   | Specifies the DNS server.<br>A maximum of three IPv6 addresses can be specified.<br>Default: ::   |
| Search Domain Name | Specifies the DNS Search Domain.<br>A maximum of three FQDN (fully qualified domain names) can be specified.<br>Default: [Blank]  |
| Dynamic DNS        | Select whether or not Dynamic DNS is used.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Disable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br>IP - DYNAMIC DNS - ENABLE |
| Apply button       | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button       | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

## IP Address Filtering

KONICA MINOLTA Ready READY KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

PAGE Web Connection

Log out System Job Print Network

▼ TCP/IP

- ▶ TCP/IP
- ▶ IPv4 Settings
- ▶ IPv6 Settings
- ▶ RAW Port Settings
- ▶ DNS Settings
- ▶ IP Address Filtering
- ▶ IPsec
- ▶ Bonjour
- ▶ WSD
- ▶ LLTD
- ▶ NetWare
- ▶ IPP
- ▶ FTP
- ▶ SNMP
- ▶ AppleTalk
- ▶ Email
- ▶ SSL/TLS
- ▶ Authentication

IP Address Filtering

Access Permission Address

Disable

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

Access Refuse Address

Disable

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

Apply Clear



The **Network - TCP/IP - IP Address Filtering** page allows you to specify the IP address and limitations for accessing the printer.





*The settings described below are not applied to the DNS server and DHCP server.*



*If the range of permitted IP addresses in **Access Permission Address** overlaps the range of refused IP address in **Access Refuse Address**, the refuse setting of **Access Refuse Address** is given priority.*

| Item                                  | Description  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Access Permission Address             | <p>If <b>Enable</b> is selected, the range of IP addresses permitted access to the printer can be specified.</p> <p>A maximum of five ranges of permitted IP addresses can be specified. In addition, access from an IP address out of the specified range is prohibited.</p> <p>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, the permitted access setting is disabled.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable<br/> Default: Disable<br/> Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br/> IP - IP ADDRESS FILTER - ACCESS<br/> PERMISSION</p>   |
| Range of IP address permitted access* | <p>Specify the range of IP addresses permitted access to the printer. Type the IP address at the beginning of the range into the box on the left, and the IP address at the end of the range into the box on the right.</p> <p>Range: 0-255 for each xxx triplet<br/> Default: 0.0.0.0</p> <p> <i>To specify a single IP address, type the same IP address into both the box for the starting IP address and for the ending IP address, or type "0.0.0.0" into the box for either the starting IP address or the ending IP address.</i></p> <p> <i>If the starting IP address is larger than the ending IP address, the setting is not applied.</i></p> |



| Item  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Access Refuse Address   | <p>If <b>Enable</b> is selected, the range of IP addresses refused access to the printer can be specified.</p> <p>A maximum of five ranges of refused IP addresses can be specified.</p> <p>If <b>Disable</b> is selected, the refused access setting is disabled.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable<br/> Default: Disable<br/> Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br/> INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br/> IP - IP ADDRESS FILTER - ACCESS<br/> REFUSE</p>   |
| Range of IP address refused access*   | <p>Specify the range of IP addresses refused access to the printer. Type the IP address at the beginning of the range into the box on the left, and the IP address at the end of the range into the box on the right.</p> <p>Range: 0-255 for each xxx triplet<br/> Default: 0.0.0.0</p> <p> <i>To specify a single IP address, type the same IP address into both the box for the starting IP address and for the ending IP address, or type "0.0.0.0" into the box for either the starting IP address or the ending IP address.</i></p> <p> <i>If the starting IP address is larger than the ending IP address, the setting is not applied.</i></p> |
| Apply button  | Applies the configuration settings in this page.  |
| Clear button  | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |
| <p>* Always enter these addresses without leading zeros. For example, 131.011.010.001 should be entered as 131.11.10.1.</p> |   |

IPsec

KONICA MINOLTA

READY

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▼ TCP/IP

▶ TCP/IP

▶ IPv4 Settings

▶ IPv6 Settings

▶ RAW Port Settings

▶ DNS Settings

▶ IP Address Filtering

▶ IPsec

▶ Bonjour

▶ WSD

▶ LLTD

▶ NetWare

▶ IPP

▶ FTP

▶ SNMP

▶ AppleTalk

▶ Email

▶ SSL/TLS

▶ Authentication

IPsec

General Settings

IPsecDisable

IKE Life Time28800

IKE Diffie-Hellman GroupGroup2

IPsec SA Life Time3600

Edit

IKE Settings

| No. | Encryption Algorithm | Authentication Algorithm | Edit | Delete |
|-----|----------------------|--------------------------|------|--------|
| 1   |                      |                          |      |        |
| 2   |                      |                          |      |        |
| 3   |                      |                          |      |        |
| 4   |                      |                          |      |        |

IPsec SA Settings

| No. | Security Protocol | Encryption Algorithm for ESP | Authentication Algorithm for ESP | Authentication Algorithm for AH | Edit | Delete |
|-----|-------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|------|--------|
| 1   |                   |                              |                                  |                                 |      |        |
| 2   |                   |                              |                                  |                                 |      |        |
| 3   |                   |                              |                                  |                                 |      |        |

The **Network - TCP/IP - IPsec** window allows you to configure the following items. For more information on these TCP/IP, see Chapter 6 “Network Printing”

| Item   |                          | Description   |
|--|--------------------------|---|
| Generic Settings                                     | IPsec                    | Displays whether to enable or disable the IPsec function. |
|  | IKE Life Time            | Display the IKE Life Time.                                |
|  | IKE Diffie-Hellman Group | Display the IKE Diffie-Hellman Group.                     |
|  | IPsec SA Life Time       | Display the IPsec SA Life Time.                           |
|  | Edit icon                | Click this icon to display the settings page.             |
| IKE Settings /IPsec SA Settings /IPsec Peer Settings |                          | Displays the registered settings.                         |

| Item   | Description                                   |
|--|---|
| IKE Settings /IPsec SA Settings /IPsec Peer Settings (Edit icon)   | Click this icon to display the settings page. |
| IKE Settings /IPsec SA Settings /IPsec Peer Settings (Delete icon) | Click this icon to delete the settings.       |

## IPsec (General Settings)

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out
System
Job
Print
Network

▼ TCP/IP
▶ TCP/IP
▶ IPv4 Settings
▶ IPv6 Settings
▶ RAW Port Settings
▶ DNS Settings
▶ IP Address Filtering
▶ IPsec
▶ Bonjour
▶ WSD
▶ LLTD
▶ NetWare
▶ IPP
▶ FTP
▶ SNMP
▶ Apple Talk
▶ Email
▶ SSL/TLS
▶ Authentication

### General Settings

IPsec Disable

IKE Life Time 28800 Seconds(30-604800)

IKE Diffie-Hellman Group Group2

IPsec SA Life Time 3600 Seconds(120-604800)

Apply
Clear
Cancel

The **Network - IPsec - General Settings** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item                     | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| IPsec                    | Select whether to enable or disable the IPsec function.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Disable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br>IP - IPSEC - ENABLE |
| IKE Life Time            | Specifies the IKE Life Time (in seconds).<br><br>Range: 80-604800<br>Default: 28800  |
| IKE Diffie-Hellman Group | Selects IKE Diffie-Hellman Group.<br><br>Choices: Group1, Group2<br>Default: Group2  |
| IPsec SA Life Time       | Specifies the IPsec SA Life Time (in seconds).<br><br>Range: 120-604800<br>Default: 3600   |
| Apply button             | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button             | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |
| Cancel button            | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - TCP/IP - IPsec</b> page.   |

## IPsec (IKE Settings)

KONICA MINOLTA

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▼ TCP/IP

► TCP/IP

► IPv4 Settings

► IPv6 Settings

► RAW Port Settings

► DNS Settings

► IP Address Filtering

► IPsec

► Bonjour

► WSD

► LLTD

► NetWare

► IPP

► FTP

► SNMP

► AppleTalk

► Email

► SSL/TLS

► Authentication

**IKE Settings**

No.1

Encryption Algorithm

DES-CBC

Authentication Algorithm

MD5

Apply

Clear

Cancel

The **Network - IPsec - IKE Settings** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item                     | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| No.                      | Displays the number (No.) to be registered.  |
| Encryption Algorithm     | Select the encryption algorithm to be used when creating a control tunnel.<br>Choices: DES-CBC, 3DES-CBC<br>Default: DES-CBC |
| Authentication Algorithm | Select the authentication algorithm to be used when creating a control tunnel.<br>Choices: MD5, SHA-1<br>Default: MD5        |
| Apply button             | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button             | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

| Item          | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Cancel button | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - TCP/IP - IPsec</b> page. |

# IPsec (IPsec SA Settings)

The **Network - IPsec - IPsec SA Settings** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item              | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| No.               | Displays the number (No.) to be registered.                                |
| Security Protocol | Select the security protocol.<br>Choices: AH, ESP, ESP & AH<br>Default: AH |

| Item                             | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Encryption Algorithm for ESP     | When <b>ESP</b> is selected for <b>Security Protocol</b> , specify the ESP encryption algorithm.<br><br>Choices: None, DES-CBC, 3DES-CBC, AES-CBC, AES-CTR<br>Default: None |
| Authentication Algorithm for ESP | When <b>ESP</b> is selected for <b>Security Protocol</b> , specify the ESP authentication algorithm.<br><br>Choices: None, MD5, SHA-1<br>Default: None                      |
| Authentication Algorithm for AH  | When <b>AH</b> is selected for <b>Security Protocol</b> , specify the AH authentication algorithm.<br><br>Choices: MD5, SHA-1<br>Default: MD5                               |
| Apply button                     | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button                     | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |
| Cancel button                    | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - TCP/IP - IPsec</b> page.  |

## IPsec (IPsec Peer Settings)

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

▼ TCP/IP

► TCP/IP

► IPv4 Settings

► IPv6 Settings

► RAW Port Settings

► DNS Settings

► IP Address Filtering

► IPsec

► Bonjour

► WSD

► LLTD

► NetWare

► IPP

► FTP

► SNMP

► AppleTalk

► Email

► SSL/TLS

► Authentication

IPsec Peer Settings

No.1

Perfect Forward SecrecyNot Use

Peer's Address

Pre-Shared Key

Encapsulation ModeNot Use

ApplyClearCancel

The **Network - IPsec - IPsec Peer Settings** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item                    | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| No.                     | Displays the number (No.) to be registered.   |
| Perfect Forward Secrecy | To increase the IKE strength, select <b>Use</b> .<br>Choices: Not Use, Use<br>Default: Not Use          |
| Peer's Address          | Specify the IP address of the peer.<br>Range: 2 to 39 characters<br>Default: [Blank]                    |
| Pre-Shared Key          | Specify the Pre-Shared Key text shared with the peer.<br>Range: Up to 64 characters<br>Default: [Blank] |




| Item               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Encapsulation Mode | Specify the operation mode of IPsec.<br>Choices: Not Use, Tunnel Mode, Transport Mode<br>Default: Not Use |
| Apply button       | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button       | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |
| Cancel button      | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - TCP/IP - IPsec</b> page.                  |

## Bonjour

The **Network - Bonjour** page allows you to configure the following items.

| Item    | Description   |
|---------|---|
| Bonjour | Select whether to enable or disable the Bonjour function.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/<br>IP - BONJOUR - ENABLE |

| Item              | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| Bonjour Name      | <p>Specify the Bonjour name for the printer.</p> <p>Range: 1 to 63 characters<br/> Default: KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P(xx:xx:xx)</p> <p> "xx:xx:xx" refers to the last six digits of the MAC address (in hexadecimal).</p> |
| Priority Protocol | <p>Specify the connection protocol given priority with Bonjour.</p> <p>Choices: LPD, RAW Port, IPP<br/> Default: RAW Port</p>   |
| Apply button      | Applies the configuration settings in this page.  |
| Clear button      | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

# WSD

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCOPE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

WSD Print

WSD Print

Device Name

Device Location

Device Information


Enable




KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P(D2.89.8E)

Apply

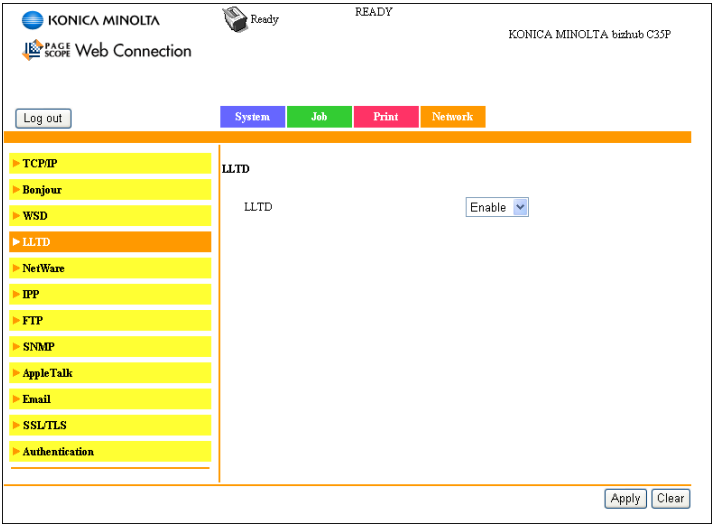
Clear

The **Network - WSD** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item        | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| WSD Print   | <p>Select whether to enable or disable the WSD print function.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Enable</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET - TCP/ IP - WSD PRINT - ENABLE</p>   |
| Secure Mode | <p>Select whether or not WSD communication is performed with SSL.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Disable</p> <p> <i>This item appears only if the SSL/TLS settings are enabled.</i></p> |

| Item               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Device Name        | <p>Displays the Device name.</p> <p>Default: KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P(xx:xx:xx)</p> <p> Specify the settings from the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> page.</p> |
| Device Location    | <p>Displays the Device location.</p> <p>Default: [Blank]</p> <p> Specify the settings from the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> page.</p>                          |
| Device Information | <p>Displays the Device information.</p> <p>Default: [Blank]</p> <p> Specify the settings from the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> page.</p>                       |
| Apply button       | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button       | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

# LLTD



The **Network - LLTD** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| LLTD         | Select whether to enable or disable the LLTD function.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable |
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |

# NetWare

## NetWare

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCORE

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

NetWare

NetWare Status

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

NetWare

NetWare Print

Frame Type

Mode

PServer

Print Server Name

Print Server Password

Retype Password

Print Queue Scan Rate

Bindery/NDS

Preferred File Server

Preferred NDS Context Name

Preferred NDS Tree Name

NPrinter/RPrinter

Printer Name

Printer Number

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Disable

Auto

Disable

BHC35P-D2898B

1 Seconds(1-65535)

NDS

BHC35P-D2898B


255 (0-255,255:Auto)


Apply

Clear

The **Network - NetWare - NetWare** window allows you to configure the following items

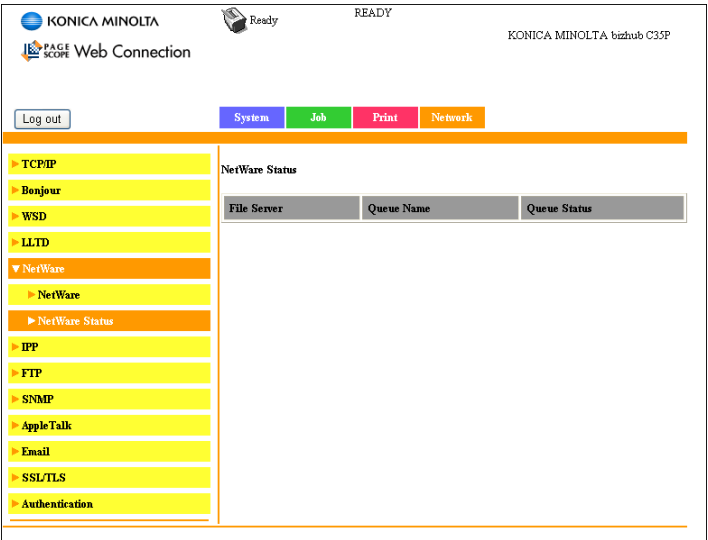
| Item    |               | Description   |
|---------|---------------|---|
| NetWare | NetWare Print | Enables or Disables the NetWare print option.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Disable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU -<br>ETHERNET - NETWARE -<br>ENABLE |

| Item    |                       | Description  |
|---------|-----------------------|--|
|         | Frame Type            | Specifies the Frame Type.<br><br>Choices: Auto, Ethernet 802.2, Ethernet 802.3, Ethernet II, Ethernet SNAP<br><br>Default: Auto  |
|         | Mode                  | Specifies the NetWare Configuration mode.<br><br>Choices: Disable, PServer, NPrinter/ RPrinter<br><br>Default: Disable   |
| PServer | Print Server Name     | Sets the Print Server Name for the printer.<br><br>Range: 1 to 63 characters<br>Default: BHC35P-xxxxxx<br><br> xxxxxx displays six last digits of the MAC address in hexadecimal. |
|         | Print Server Password | Sets the Print Server password.<br><br>Range: Up to 31 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |
|         | Retype Password       | Verifies the new password typed in the Print Server Password text box.<br><br>Range: Up to 31 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |
|         | Print Queue Scan Rate | Sets the number of the queue scan interval.<br><br>Range: 1 - 65535 (Seconds)<br>Default: 1  |
|         | Bindery/NDS           | Specifies the bindery options.<br><br>Choices: NDS, Bindery/NDS, Bindery<br>Default: NDS   |
|         | Preferred File Server | Sets the Preferred File Server for the printer.<br><br>Range: Up to 47 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |

| Item                  |                            | Description   |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---|
|                       | Preferred NDS Context Name | Sets the Preferred NDS Context for the printer.<br><br>Range: Up to 191 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |
|                       | Preferred NDS Tree Name    | Sets the Preferred NDS Tree for the printer.<br><br>Range: Up to 63 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |
| NPrinter/<br>RPrinter | Printer Name               | Sets the printer's name.<br><br>Range: 1 to 63 characters<br>Default: BHC35P-xxxxxx<br><br> xxxxxx displays six last digits of the MAC address in hexadecimal. |
|                       | Printer Number             | Sets the Printer Number.<br><br>Range: 0 - 255<br>Default: 255  |
| Apply button          |                            | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button          |                            | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.   |



# NetWare Status



The **Network - NetWare - NetWare Status** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item         | Description                             |
|--------------|---|
| File Server  | Identifies current NetWare File Server. |
| Queue Name   | Identifies current NetWare queue name.  |
| Queue Status | Identifies current NetWare status.      |

IPP

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

IPP

IPP Print

Enable

Accept IPP Job

Enable

Printer Name

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P(D2:89:8B)

Printer Location

Printer Information

Printer URI

Printer URI

http://192.168.1.2/ipp

http://BHC35P-D2898B/ipp

ipp://192.168.1.2/ipp

ipp://BHC35P-D2898B/ipp

Operational Support

☒

Print Job

☒

Validate Job

☒

Cancel Job

☒

Get Job Attributes

☒

Get Jobs

☒

Get Print Attributes

IPP Authentication

Requesting-user-name

User Name

user

Password

pass

Realm





ipp

Apply

Clear

The **Network - IPP** window allows you to configure the following items. For details on IPP, refer to Chapter 6 “Network Printing” In order to apply the settings, the printer must be turned off, then on again after the setting is specified.

| Item      | Description   |
|-----------|---|
| IPP Print | Sets whether or not to use IPP.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU -<br>ETHERNET - TCP/IP -<br>IPP - ENABLE |

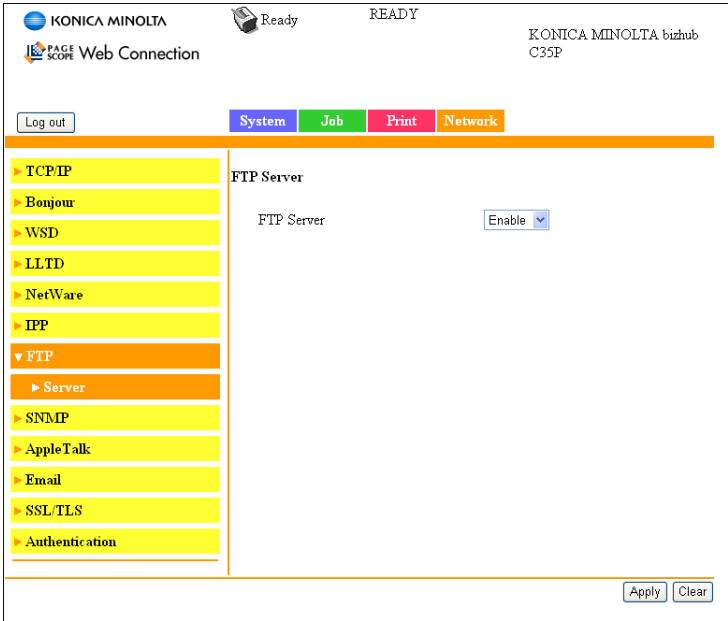
| Item                | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Accept IPP Job      | Sets whether or not to accept IPP Job.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable   |
| Printer Name        | Displays the printer's name.<br>Range: Up to 127 characters<br>Default: KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P(xx:xx:xx)<br> Specify the settings from the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> page.  |
| Printer Location    | Displays the printer's location.<br>Default: [Blank]<br> Specify the settings from the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> page.  |
| Printer Information | Displays the printer information.<br>Default: [Blank]<br> Specify the settings from the <b>System - Machine Settings</b> page.   |
| Printer URI         | Displays the printer's Uniform Resource Identifier (URI).<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ http://&lt;IP_address&gt;/ipp</li> <li>■ http://FQDN:/ipp</li> <li>■ ipp://&lt;IP_address&gt;/ipp</li> <li>■ ipp://FQDN:/ipp</li> <li>■ https://&lt;IP_address&gt;/ipp</li> <li>■ https://FQDN:/ipp</li> </ul>  "https://<IP_address>/ipp", and "https://FQDN:/ipp" appear only if the SSL/TLS settings are enabled. |

| Item                |                      | Description   |
|---------------------|----------------------|---|
| Operational Support | Print Job            | If this check box is selected, Print Job is enabled.<br>Default: Checked  |
|                     | Validate Job         | If this check box is selected, Validate Job is enabled.<br>Default: Checked   |
|                     | Cancel Job           | If this check box is selected, Cancel Job is enabled.<br>Default: Checked   |
|                     | Get Job Attributes   | If this check box is selected, Get Job Attribute is enabled.<br>Default: Checked  |
|                     | Get Jobs             | If this check box is selected, Get Job is enabled.<br>Default: Checked  |
|                     | Get Print Attributes | If this check box is selected, Get Printer Attribute is enabled.<br>Default: Checked  |
| IPP Authentication  |                      | Specifies the authentication method for IPP connections.<br><br>Choices: None, Requesting-user-name, Basic, Digest<br>Default: Requesting-user-name |
| User Name           |                      | Specify the user name used with Basic or Digest authentication.<br><br>Range: 1 to 20 characters<br>Default: user                                   |
| Password            |                      | Specify the password used with Basic or Digest authentication.<br><br>Range: 1 to 20 characters<br>Default: pass                                    |
| Realm               |                      | Specify the realm used with Basic or Digest authentication.<br><br>Range: 1 to 127 characters<br>Default: IPP                                       |

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values. |

# FTP


## Server





The **Network - FTP - Server** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item         | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| FTP Server   | Enables or Disables the FTP server.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET -<br>TCP/IP - FTP - ENABLE |
| Apply button | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

# SNMP


READY


Web Connection



Log out
System
Job
Print
Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

### SNMP

SNMP

Enable

SNMP v1/v2c(IP)

Enable

SNMP v3(IP)

Enable

SNMP v1(IPX)

Enable

UDP Port

161

(1-65535)

### SNMP v1/v2c(IP)

Read Community Name

public

Write

Enable

Write Community Name

private

### SNMP v3

Context Name

Discovery

Enable

Discovery User Name

public

Read User Name


initial

Read Security Level


Auth nosecrypt(Privacy nosecrypt)

The **Network - SNMP** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item |                     | Description  |
|------|---------------------|--|
| SNMP | SNMP                | <p>If <b>Enable</b> is selected, SNMP is enabled.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Enable</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET -<br/>TCP/IP - SNMP - ENABLE</p> |
|      | SNMP v1/<br>v2c(IP) | <p>If <b>Enable</b> is selected, SNMP v1/v2c(IP) is enabled.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Enable</p>  |
|      | SNMP<br>v3(IP)      | <p>If <b>Enable</b> is selected, SNMP v3(IP) is enabled.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Enable</p>  |

| Item            |                      | Description  |
|-----------------|----------------------|--|
|                 | SNMP v1(IPX)         | If <b>Enable</b> is selected, SNMP v1(IPX) is enabled.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable  |
|                 | UDP Port             | Specifies the UDP port number.<br>Range: 1 - 65535<br>Default: 161   |
| SNMP v1/v2c(IP) | Read Community Name  | Specifies the community name to be used for scanning.<br>Range: 1 to 15 characters<br>Default: public  |
|                 | Write                | If <b>Enable</b> is selected, Write is enabled.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable   |
|                 | Write Community Name | Specifies the community name to be used for reading and writing.<br>Range: 1 to 15 characters<br>Default: private  |
| SNMP v3         | Context Name         | Specifies the context name.<br>Range: Up to 63 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |
|                 | Discovery            | If <b>Enable</b> is selected, Discovery is enabled.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable   |
|                 | Discovery User Name  | Specifies the user name for detection.<br>Range: 1 to 32 characters<br>Default: public   |
|                 | Read User Name       | Specifies the name of read only user.<br>Range: Up to 32 characters<br>Default: initial<br> <i>The same name specified as the Discovery user name cannot be used.</i> |



| Item                  |                      | Description  |
|-----------------------|----------------------|--|
|                       | Read Security Level  | Specifies the security level for read only user.<br>Choices: None, Auth-password, Auth-password/Priv-password<br>Default: Auth-password/Priv-password  |
|                       | Read Auth-pass-word  | Specifies the read only user authentication password to be used for authentication.<br>Range: 8 to 32 characters<br>Default: AuthPassword  |
|                       | Read Priv-pass-word  | Specifies the read only user privacy password to be used for privacy (encryption).<br>Range: 8 to 32 characters<br>Default: PrivPassword   |
|                       | Write User Name      | Specifies the reading/writing user name.<br>Range: Up to 32 characters<br>Default: restrict<br> <i>The same name specified as the Discovery user name cannot be used.</i> |
|                       | Write Security Level | Specifies the security level for reading/writing user.<br>Choices: None, Auth-password, Auth-password/Priv-password<br>Default: Auth-password/Priv-password  |
|                       | Write Auth-pass-word | Specifies the reading/writing user authentication password to be used for authentication.<br>Range: 8 to 32 characters<br>Default: <Mac address>(excluding colons)   |
|                       | Write Priv-pass-word | Specifies the reading/writing user privacy password to be used for privacy (encryption).<br>Range: 8 to 32 characters<br>Default: <Mac address>(excluding colons)  |
| Encryption Algorithm  |                      | Select an encryption algorithm.<br>Choices: [DES], [AES-128]<br>Default: [DES]   |
| Authentication Method |                      | Select an authentication method.<br>Choices: [MD5], [SHA-1]<br>Default: [MD5]  |

| Item          |  | Description  |
|---------------|--|--|
| Trap Settings | Allow Setting                          | Specifies whether or not to permit the Trap settings<br>Choices: Allow, Restrict<br>Default: Allow                                   |
|               | Trap Setting When Authentication Fails | Specifies whether to enable or disable the Trap settings when authentication failed.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Disable |
| Apply button  |  | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button  |  | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

# AppleTalk

KONICA MINOLTA

PAGE SCORE

Web Connection

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

AppleTalk

AppleTalk

Printer Name

Zone Name

Current Zone Name

Enable

BHC35P-D2896B


\*

\*

Apply

Clear

The **Network - AppleTalk** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item              | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| AppleTalk         | If <b>Enable</b> is selected, AppleTalk is enabled.<br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Enable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET -<br>APPLETALK - ENABLE   |
| Printer Name      | Sets the printer name.<br>Range: 1 to 31 characters<br>Default: BHC35P-xxxxxx<br> xxxxxx displays six last digits of the MAC address in hexadecimal. |
| Zone Name         | Sets the Zone Name.<br>Range: 1 to 31 characters<br>Default: *  |
| Current Zone Name | Identifies the current zone name.   |
| Apply button      | Applies the configuration settings for this window.   |

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Clear button | Resets all configuration settings to previous values. |

## Email

### Send Email

The **Network - Email - Send Email** window allows you to configure the following items:

| Item       |                      | Description   |
|------------|----------------------|---|
| Send Email | Send                 | <p>If <b>Enable</b> is selected, sending Email is enabled.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable</p> <p>Default: Enable</p> <p>Configuration Menu Equivalent:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET -<br/>TCP/IP - SMTP - ENABLE</p> |
|            | SMTP Server Address* | <p>Specifies the address of the mail transmission server. An IPv4 or IPv6 address or a host name can be specified.</p> <p>Range: Up to 255 characters</p> <p>Default: 0.0.0.0</p>   |


| Item   |                     | Description  |
|--|---------------------|--|
|  | Port Number         | Specifies the port number of the mail transmission server.<br><br>Range: 1 - 65535<br>Default: 25                                |
|  | Connection Time-out | Specifies the amount of time until the connection times out when sending e-mail.<br><br>Range: 30 - 300 (seconds)<br>Default: 60 |
| SMTP Authentication  | SMTP Authentication | If <b>Enable</b> is selected, SMTP server authentication is enabled.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Disable         |
|  | Account             | Specify the account name used with SMTP authentication.<br><br>Range: Up to 255 characters<br>Default: [Blank]                   |
|  | Password            | Specify the password used with SMTP authentication.<br><br>Range: Up to 128 characters<br>Default: [Blank]                       |
|  | Realm               | Specify the realm used with Digest-MD5 authentication.<br><br>Range: Up to 255 characters<br>Default: [Blank]                    |
| Apply button   |                     | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button   |                     | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |
| * Always enter these addresses without leading zeros. For example, 131.011.010.001 should be entered as 131.11.10.1. |                     |  |

# SSL/TLS

## SSL/TLS Information

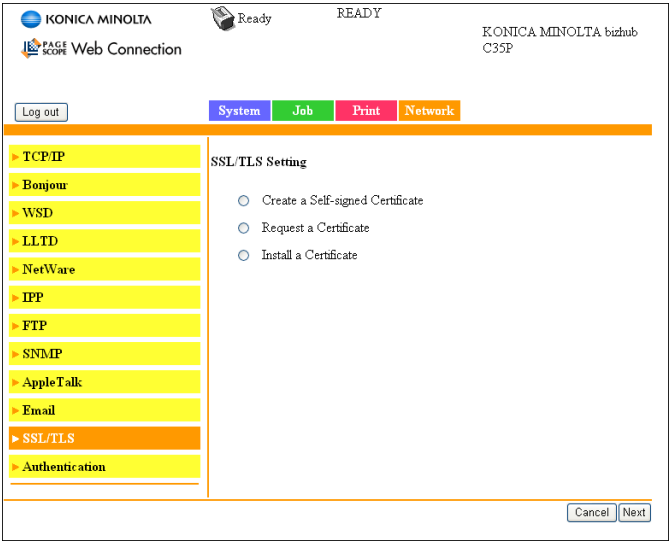


The **Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information** page allows you to specify SSL/TLS settings.

 As a default, SSL/TLS is not installed. Click **Setting** to create a certificate and specify the SSL settings.

| Item           | Description                               |
|----------------|---|
| Setting button | Displays the <b>SSL/TLS Setting</b> page. |

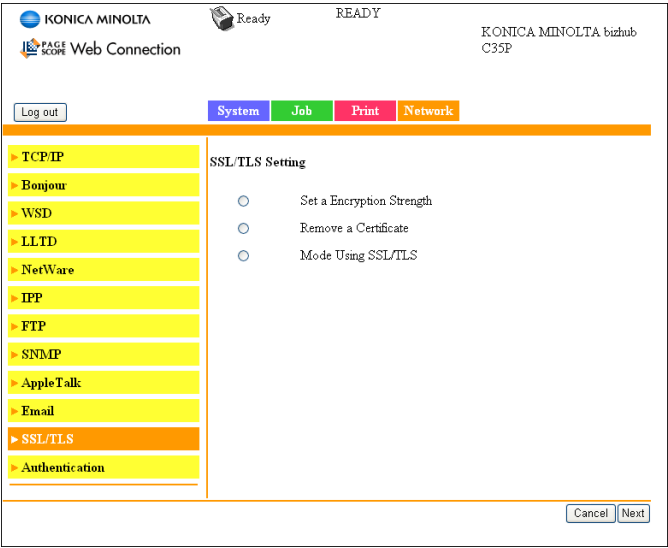
# SSL/TLS Setting (When a certificate is not installed)



The **Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Setting** page allows you to select the following SSL/TLS settings that appear.

| Item                             | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Create a self-signed Certificate | Creates a self-signed certificate.  |
| Request a certificate            | Creates data for requesting that a certificate be issued from a certificate authority.                  |
| Install a certificate            | Installs the certificate issued by the certificate authority.   |
| Next button                      | Click to display the selected page.   |
| Cancel button                    | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information</b> page. |

# SSL/TLS Setting (When a certificate is installed)



The **Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Setting** page allows you to select the following SSL/ TLS settings that appear.

| Item                      | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Set a Encryption Strength | Specifies the encryption level. In addition, SSL/TLS can be disabled.                                   |
| Remove a certificate      | Removes the certificate.  |
| Mode Using SSL/TLS        | Specifies the SSL transmission mode.  |
| Next button               | Click to display the selected page.   |
| Cancel button             | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information</b> page. |



# Self-signed Certificate Setting

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

PAGE SCORE

Web Connection

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

Self-signed Certificate Setting

Common Name

BHC35P-D2898B

Organization

Organization Unit

Locality

State/Province

Country

Email Address

Validity Start Date

2006/02/05 02:24:00

Validity Period

1 (1-3650)

Encryption Strength


AES\_256bits\_3DES\_168bits\_RC4\_128bits\_DES\_56bits\_RC4\_40bits


Create

Back

Cancel

The **Network - SSL/TLS - Self-signed Certificate Setting** page allows you to create a certificate and specify SSL settings.

| Item              | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Common Name       | Identifies the Common Name for the printer, to be used in creation of an SSL Certificate. It is comprised of "Printer Host Name. DNS Server". If DNS Server is un-available, only the host name is used as Common Name.<br> This text is read-only. |
| Organization      | Specify the name of the group or organization.<br>Range: 1 to 63 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |
| Organization Unit | Specify the name of the post.<br>Range: 1 to 63 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |

| Item                | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Locality            | Specify the name of the municipality.<br>Range: 1 to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |
| State/Province      | Specify the name of the state or province.<br>Range: 1 to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |
| Country             | Specify the name of the country as a country code regulated by ISO03166.<br>Range: 2 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |
| Email Address       | Specify the e-mail address.<br>Range: 1 to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |
| Validity Start Date | Displays the current time.  |
| Validity Period     | Specify the period of validity.<br>Range: 1 - 3650 (day)<br>Default: 1  |
| Encryption Strength | Specify the encryption level.<br>Choices:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ AES_256bits, 3DES_168bits, RC4_128bits, DES_56bits or RC4_40bits</li> <li>■ 3DES_168bits, RC4_128bits, DES_56bits or RC4_40bits</li> <li>■ RC4_128bits, DES_56bits or RC4_40bits</li> </ul> Default: AES_256bits, 3DES_168bits, RC4_128bits, DES_56bits or RC4_40bits |
| Create button       | Creates the self-signed certificate.<br> <i>A few minutes are needed in order to create the certificate.</i>   |
| Back button         | Click to return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Setting</b> page.   |
| Cancel button       | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information</b> page.   |

# Request a certificate

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

PAGE SCORE

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

Request a Certificate

Common Name

BHC35P-D2698B

Organization

Organization Unit

Locality

State/Province

Country


Email Address

Next

Back

Cancel

The **Network - SSL/TLS - Request a Certificate** page allows you to configure the following items:

| Item              | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Common Name       | Identifies the Common Name for the printer, to be used in creation of an SSL Certificate. It is comprised of "Printer Host Name. DNS Server". If DNS Server is un-available, only the host name is used as Common Name.<br> <i>This text is read-only.</i> |
| Organization      | Specifies the name of the group or organization.<br>Range: 1 to 63 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |
| Organization Unit | Specifies the name of the post.<br>Range: 1 to 63 characters<br>Default: [Blank]   |
| Locality          | Specifies the name of the municipality.<br>Range: 1 to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]  |

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| State/Province | Specifies the name of the state or province.<br><br>Range: 1 to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]                      |
| Country        | Specify the name of the country as a country code regulated by ISO03166.<br><br>Range: 2 characters<br>Default: [Blank] |
| Email Address  | Specify the e-mail address.<br><br>Range: 1 to 127 characters<br>Default: [Blank]                                       |
| Next button    | Click to create data for requesting that a certificate be issued.   |
| Back button    | Click to return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Setting</b> page.   |
| Cancel button  | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information</b> page.                 |

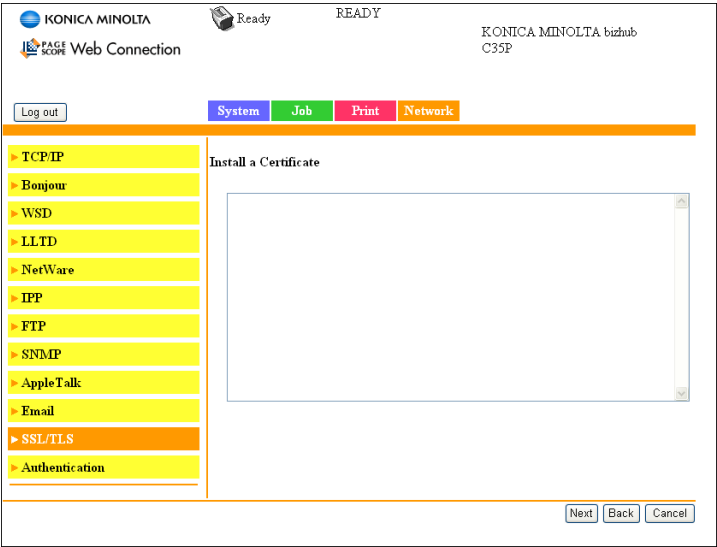
## Certificate Request

[illegible]

The **Network - SSL/TLS - Certificate Request** page displays the data that will be submitted to the certificate authority to request that a certificate be issued.

| Item                | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Certificate Request | Displays the data that should be submitted to the certificate signing authority. This is called CSR (Certificate Signing Request). This data is to be submitted to the certificate signing authority by the user. |
| Save button         | Click to save the data for requesting the certificate with the specified name.  |
| OK button           | Click to return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information</b> page.   |


# Install a Certificate



The **Network - SSL/TLS - Install a Certificate** page allows you to install the certificate issued by the certificate authority.

| Item                  | Description   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Install a Certificate | Signed CSR (Certificate Signing Request) should be pasted to this text area.                            |
| Next button           | Click to display the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - Encryption Strength Setting</b> page.                       |
| Back button           | Click to return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Setting</b> page.                                 |
| Cancel button         | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information</b> page. |

# Encryption Strength Setting

 This menu item appears if a certificate is installed.

 KONICA MINOLTA

 Web Connection

 Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub  
C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

> TCP/IP

> Bonjour

> WSD

> LLTD

> NetWare

> IPP

> FTP

> SNMP

> AppleTalk

> Email

> SSL/TLS

> Authentication

Encryption Strength Setting

Encryption Strength 

AES\_256bits,3DES\_168bits,RC4\_128bits,DES\_56bits,RC4\_40bits

Create

Back


Cancel

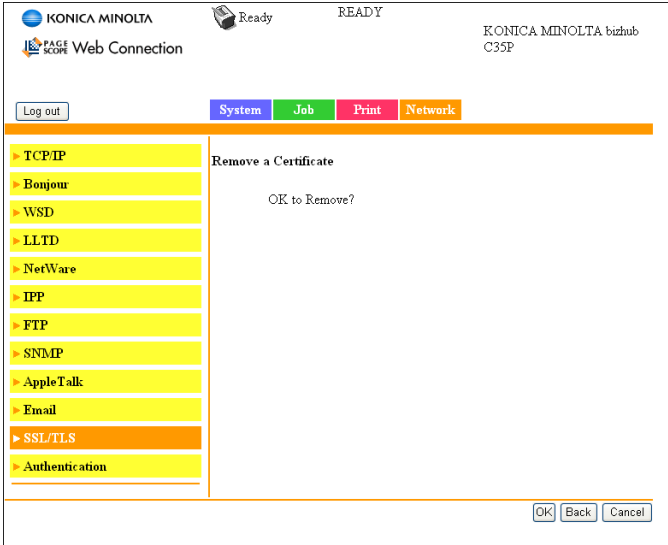
The **Network - SSL/TLS - Encryption Strength Setting** page allows you to specify the encryption level.

| Item                | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| Encryption Strength | <p>Specify the encryption level.</p> <p>Choices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ AES_256bits, 3DES_168bits, RC4_128bits, DES_56bits or RC4_40bits</li><li>■ 3DES_168bits, RC4_128bits, DES_56bits or RC4_40bits</li><li>■ RC4_128bits, DES_56bits or RC4_40bits</li></ul> <p>Default: AES_256bits, 3DES_168bits, RC4_128bits, DES_56bits or RC4_40bits</p> |
| Create button       | <p>Click to specify the encryption level.</p> <p>If the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - Install a Certificate</b> page was previously displayed, the certificate is installed.</p>  |
| Back button         | Returns to the previous screen.  |

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Cancel button | Click to return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information</b> page. |

## Remove a Certificate

 This menu item appears if a certificate is installed.





The **Network - SSL/TLS - Remove a Certificate** page allows you to delete the installed certificate.


| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| OK button     | Click to display a confirmation message. Click <b>OK</b> in the confirmation message to delete the certificate. |
| Back button   | Click to return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Setting</b> page.   |
| Cancel button | Click to return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information</b> page.                                     |




# Mode Using SSL/TLS

 This menu item appears if a certificate is installed.

 KONICA MINOLTA

 Ready

READY

 Web Connection

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub  
C35P

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

> TCP/IP

> Bonjour

> WSD

> LLTD

> NetWare

> IPP

> FTP

> SNMP

> AppleTalk

> Email

> SSL/TLS

> Authentication

Mode Using SSL/TLS

Disable

Apply

Clear

Back

Cancel

The **Network - SSL/TLS - Mode Using SSL/TLS** page allows the SSL transmission mode to be specified.

| Item               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Mode using SSL/TLS | Selects the SSL transmission mode.<br>Choice: Disable, Enable<br>Default: Disable |
| Apply button       | Click to apply the setting specified beside “Mode using SSL/TLS”.                 |
| Clear button       | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.                             |
| Back button        | Click to return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Setting</b> page.           |
| Cancel button      | Click to return to the <b>Network - SSL/TLS - SSL/TLS Information</b> page.       |

# Authentication

## User Authentication

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

PAGE SCOPE Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

User Authentication

Auto Logout

IEEE802.1x

CA Certificate

User Authentication/Account Track

User Authentication

Off

Public Access

Allow

Account Track

Off

Account Track Method

Account Name & Password


Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track


Synchronize

Apply

Clear

The **Network - Authentication - User Authentication** page allows you to specify user authentication settings.

 This page appears only if a hard disk kit HD-P03 or a CompactFlash card is installed.

 When **User Authentication** or **Account Track** is set to **On** and **Public Access** is set to **Restrict** on this page, printing is not possible except from a host where authentication settings can be specified (Windows printer driver or PageScope Direct Print). In addition, resources (fonts, color profiles and form overlays) can no longer be downloaded and firmware can no longer be updated.

| Item                | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| User Authentication | Select whether or not user authentication is performed.<br><br>Choices: On, Off<br>Default: Off |

| <b>Item</b>                                     | <b>Description</b>   |
|---|--|
| Public Access                                   | Select whether or not logon as a Public user is permitted when authentication settings have been specified.<br><br>Choices: Allow, Restrict<br>Default: Allow        |
| Account Track                                   | Select whether or not account authentication is performed.<br><br>Choices: On, Off<br>Default: Off   |
| Account Track Method                            | Specify the account track authentication method.<br><br>Choices: Account Name & Password, Password Only<br>Default: Account Name & Password                          |
| Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track | Select whether or not user authentication and account track settings are to be synchronized.<br><br>Choices: Synchronize, Do Not Synchronize<br>Default: Synchronize |
| Apply button                                    | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button                                    | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

## Auto Logout

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

User Authentication

Auto Logout

IEEE802.1x

CA Certificate

Auto Logout

Admin Mode Logout Time

10

Minutes(1-60)

User Mode Logout Time

60

Minutes(1-60)

Apply

Clear

**Network - Authentication - Auto Logout** window allows you to configure the following items.

| Item                    | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Admin. Mode Logout Time | Specify the length of time to automatically log off from Administrator mode.<br><br>Range: 1 - 60 (Minutes)<br>Default: 10 |
| User Mode Logout Time   | Specify the length of time to automatically log off from User mode.<br><br>Range: 1 - 60 (Minutes)<br>Default: 60          |
| Apply button            | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button            | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

IEEE802.1x

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub  
C35P

PAGE  
COUNT

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

User Authentication

Auto Logout

IEEE802.1x

CA Certificate

IEEE802.1x

IEEE802.1x

EAP Type

User ID

Password

TLS Anonymous Name

TLS Authentication Type

Server Certificate Check

Send Client Certificate

Client Certificate

CA Certificate

Server ID

Encryption Strength

Limit Time of Network Stop

Disable

None

anonymous

MS-CHAPv2

☒ Validity  
☐ CA Chain  
☐ Server ID

Disable

Not Installed

Not Installed

Low


0 Seconds(60-255,0:Disable)



Apply

Clear

The **Network - Authentication - IEEE802.1x** window allows you to configure the following items:

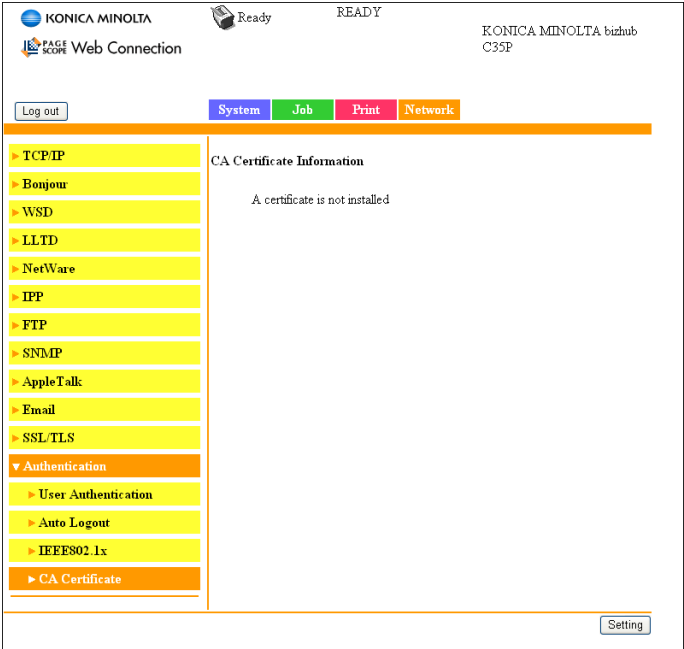
| Item       | Description  |
|------------|--|
| IEEE802.1x | Select whether to enable or disable the IEEE802.1x function.<br><br>Choices: Enable, Disable<br>Default: Disable<br>Configuration Menu Equivalent:<br>INTERFACE MENU - ETHERNET -<br>IEEE802.1X - ENABLE |
| EAP Type   | Select the type of authentication used with IEEE802.1x.<br><br>Choices: None, EAP-MD5, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, PEAP, LEAP, Server Specification<br>Default: None  |

| Item                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| User ID                  | <p>Specifies the account name, when <b>EAP Type</b> is set to <b>EAP-MD5</b>, <b>EAP-TLS</b>, <b>EAP-TTLS</b>, <b>PEAP</b>, <b>LEAP</b> or <b>Server Specification</b>.</p> <p>Range: Up to 128 characters<br/>Default: [Blank]</p>   |
| Password                 | <p>Specifies the password, when <b>EAP Type</b> is set to <b>EAP-MD5</b>, <b>EAP-TLS</b>, <b>EAP-TTLS</b>, <b>PEAP</b>, <b>LEAP</b> or <b>Server Specification</b>.</p> <p>Range: Up to 128 characters<br/>Default: [Blank]</p>   |
| TTLS Anonymous Name      | <p>Specify the logon name used with EAP-TTLS primary authentication. Specifies the TTLS anonymous name, when <b>EAP Type</b> is set to <b>EAP-TTLS</b> or <b>Server Specification</b>.</p> <p>Range: Up to 128 characters<br/>Default: anonymous</p> <p> <i>If <b>EAP Type</b> is set to <b>Server Specification</b> while the actual authentication method is <b>EAP-MD5</b>, type in the same name as the User ID.</i></p> |
| TTLS Anonymous Type      | <p>Specify the EAP-TTLS phase 2 authentication procedure. Specifies the TTLS anonymous type, when <b>EAP Type</b> is set to <b>EAP-TTLS</b> or <b>Server Specification</b>.</p> <p>Choices: PAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAPv2<br/>Default: MS-CHAPv2</p>  |
| Server Certificate Check | <p>Specify the items where the server certificate is verified. Specifies the server certificate check, when <b>EAP Type</b> is set to <b>EAP-TLS</b>, <b>EAP-TTLS</b> or <b>PEAP</b>.</p> <p>Choices: Validity, CA Chain, ServerID<br/>Default: Validity</p>  |
| Send Client Certificate  | <p>Select whether or not the client certificate is sent when the client certificate is requested by the server. Specifies the send client certificate, when <b>EAP Type</b> is set to <b>EAP-TTLS</b> or <b>PEAP</b>.</p> <p>Choices: Enable, Disable<br/>Default: Disable</p>  |

| Item                       | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Client Certificate         | Shows whether or not a client certificate has been specified.<br> Specify the settings from the <b>Network - SSL/TLS</b> page.  |
| CA Certificate             | Shows whether or not a CA certificate has been specified for CA reliability verification of server certificates.<br> Specify the settings from the <b>Network - Authentication - CA Certificate</b> page. |
| Server ID                  | Specify the characters for verification through backward matching with the CN attributes of the server certificate. Specifies the server ID, when <b>EAP Type</b> is set to <b>EAP-TLS</b> , <b>EAP-TTLS</b> , or <b>PEAP</b> .<br>Range: Up to 64 characters<br>Default: [Blank]          |
| Encryption Strength        | Specify the encryption level of TLS packets with EAP-TLS/TTLS/PEAP. Specifies the encryption strength, when <b>EAP Type</b> is set to <b>EAP-TLS</b> , <b>EAP-TTLS</b> , or <b>PEAP</b> .<br>Choices: Low, Medium, High<br>Default: Low  |
| Limit Time of Network Stop | Specify the length of time to postpone stopping the network when authentication fails from the start of authentication.<br>Range: 0, 60 - 255 (seconds)<br>Default: 0  |
| Apply button               | Applies the configuration settings for this window.  |
| Clear button               | Resets all configuration settings to previous values.  |

# CA Certificate

## CA Certificate Information



The **Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - CA Certificate Information** window allows you to specify CA Certificate settings.



*As a default, CA Certificate is not installed. Click **Setting** to create a certificate and specify the CA Certificate settings.*

| Item           | Description                                      |
|----------------|--|
| Setting button | Displays the <b>CA Certificate Setting</b> page. |



## CA Certificate Setting (When a certificate is installed)

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

PAGE scope Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

User Authentication

Auto Logout

IEEE802.1x

CA Certificate

CA Certificate Settings

Remove a Certificate

Cancel

Next

The **Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - CA Certificate Setting** page allows you to select the following CA Certificate settings that appear.

| Item                 | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| Remove a Certificate | Removes the certificate.   |
| Next button          | Click to display the selected page.  |
| Cancel button        | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - CA Certificate Information</b> page. |

CA Certificate Setting (When a certificate is not installed)

KONICA MINOLTA

Ready

READY

KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out

System

Job

Print

Network

TCP/IP

Bonjour

WSD

LLTD

NetWare

IPP

FTP

SNMP

AppleTalk

Email

SSL/TLS

Authentication

User Authentication

Auto Logout

IEEE802.1x

CA Certificate

CA Certificate Settings

☐ Install a Certificate

Cancel

Next

The **Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - CA Certificate Setting** page allows you to select the following CA Certificate settings that appear.

| Item                  | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Install a Certificate | Installs the certificate issued by the certificate authority.  |
| Next button           | Click to display the selected page.  |
| Cancel button         | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - CA Certificate Information</b> page. |

## Install a Certificate

KONICA MINOLTA Ready READY KONICA MINOLTA bizhub C35P

Web Connection

Log out System Job Print Network

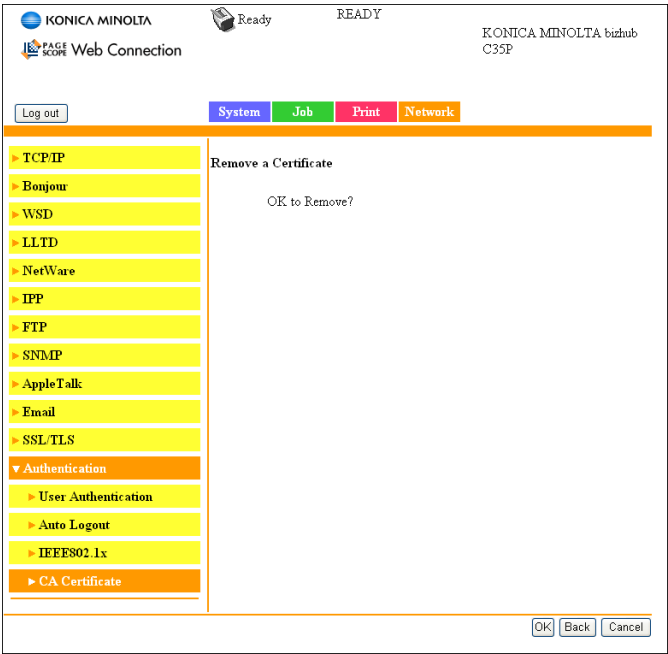
Install a Certificate

Next Back Cancel

The **Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - Install a Certificate** page allows you to install the certificate issued by the certificate authority.

| Item                  | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Install a Certificate | Signed CSR (Certificate Signing Request) should be pasted to this text area.   |
| Next button           | Click to display the <b>Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - Install a Certificate</b> page.                                    |
| Back button           | Click to return to the <b>Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - CA Certificate Setting</b> page.                                 |
| Cancel button         | Click to cancel the entered data and return to the <b>Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - CA Certificate Information</b> page. |

## Remove a Certificate



The **Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - Remove a Certificate** page allows you to delete the installed certificate.

| Item          | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| OK button     | Click to display a confirmation message. Click <b>OK</b> in the confirmation message to delete the certificate. |
| Back button   | Click to return to the <b>Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - CA Certificate Setting</b> page.          |
| Cancel button | Click to return to the <b>Network - Authentication - CA Certificate - CA Certificate Information</b> page.      |



# *Appendix* **A**

## A

|   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| <b>Account Mode</b> .....                                 | 7-9                         |
| <b>Account Mode, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....       | 7-9                         |
| <b>Active job list, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....    |                             |
| Print job status .....                                    | 7-28                        |
| <b>Administrator Mode</b> .....                           | 7-9                         |
| <b>Administrator Mode, PageScope Web Connection</b> ..... | 7-9                         |
| <b>AppleTalk</b> .....                                    | 1-11, 1-27, 1-38, 1-52, 6-9 |
| <b>AppleTalk, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....          | 7-156                       |
| <b>Authentication, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....     | 7-171                       |

## B

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>Bonjour</b> .....                           | 1-36, 6-9 |
| <b>Bonjour, PageScope Web Connection</b> ..... | 7-138     |
| <b>BOOTP</b> .....                             | 5-6, 6-10 |

## C

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>CA certificate information, PageScope Web Connection</b> ..... | 7-177       |
| <b>CA certificate setting, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....     | 7-179       |
| <b>Certificate request, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....        | 7-166       |
| <b>Clear settings, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....             | 7-80        |
| <b>Color profile, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....              | 7-45, 7-114 |
| <b>Configuration</b> .....  |             |
| Network settings .....  | 5-2, 7-117  |
| Printer, via PageScope Web Connection .....                       | 7-48        |
| <b>Configuration, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....              | 7-117       |
| AppleTalk .....   | 7-156       |
| Certificate request .....   | 7-166       |
| Email .....   | 7-157       |

|                                       |       |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Encryption strength setting .....     | 7-168 |
| FTP .....                             | 7-151 |
| Install a certificate .....           | 7-167 |
| LLTD .....                            | 7-142 |
| Mode using SSL/TLS .....              | 7-170 |
| NetWare .....                         | 7-143 |
| Remove a certificate .....            | 7-169 |
| Request a certificate .....           | 7-164 |
| Self-signed certificate setting ..... | 7-162 |
| SNMP .....                            | 7-152 |
| SSL/TLS information .....             | 7-159 |
| SSL/TLS setting .....                 | 7-160 |
| TCP/IP .....                          | 7-117 |

## D

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>Date/Time, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....     | 7-70      |
| <b>DDNS</b> .....                                    | 6-10      |
| <b>Details, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....       |           |
| Done job list .....                                  | 7-30      |
| <b>DHCP</b> .....                                    | 6-3, 6-10 |
| <b>Direct print, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....  | 7-47      |
| <b>DNS settings, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....  | 7-126     |
| <b>Done job list, PageScope Web Connection</b> ..... | 7-29      |
| <b>Download Manager Utility</b> .....                | 4-2       |

## E

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>Email, PageScope Web Connection</b> .....                       | 7-157 |
| <b>Encryption strength setting, PageScope Web Connection</b> ..... | 7-168 |
| <b>Ethernet interface</b> .....                                    | 6-3   |
| <b>Ethernet menu</b> .....   | 5-2   |
| Accessing .....  | 5-4   |
| AppleTalk .....  | 5-12  |
| ARP/PING .....   | 5-6   |
| Bonjour .....  | 5-7   |
| BOOTP .....  | 5-6   |
| DHCP .....   | 5-6   |
| Dynamic DNS .....  | 5-8   |
| FTP .....  | 5-7   |

|                         |      |
|-------------------------|------|
| Gateway .....           | 5-6  |
| HTTP .....              | 5-7  |
| IEEE802.1x .....        | 5-12 |
| IP address .....        | 5-5  |
| IP address filter ..... | 5-10 |
| IPP .....               | 5-8  |
| IPsec .....             | 5-10 |
| IPv6 .....              | 5-11 |
| NetWare .....           | 5-11 |
| RAW port .....          | 5-8  |
| SLP .....               | 5-9  |
| SMTP .....              | 5-9  |
| SNMP .....              | 5-9  |
| Speed/Duplex .....      | 5-12 |
| Subnet mask .....       | 5-5  |
| Using options .....     | 5-5  |
| WSD print .....         | 5-9  |

## F

|                                    |             |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Form overlay, PageScope Web</b> |             |
| <b>Connection</b> .....            | 7-44, 7-113 |
| <b>FTP</b> .....                   | 5-7         |
| <b>FTP, PageScope</b>              |             |
| <b>Web Connection</b> .....        | 7-151       |

## G

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Gateway</b> .....                   | 5-6, 6-3   |
| Manual setting .....                   | 6-5        |
| <b>General settings, PageScope Web</b> |            |
| <b>Connection</b> .....                | 7-31, 7-90 |

## H

|                         |      |
|-------------------------|------|
| <b>Host table</b> ..... | 7-4  |
| <b>HTTP</b> .....       | 6-10 |

## I

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| <b>IEEE802.1x</b> .....                     | 6-11         |
| <b>IEEE802.1x, PageScope Web</b>            |              |
| <b>Connection</b> .....                     | 7-174        |
| <b>IKE Settings, PageScope Web</b>          |              |
| <b>Connection</b> .....                     | 7-134        |
| <b>Install a certificate, PageScope Web</b> |              |
| <b>Connection</b> .....                     | 7-167, 7-180 |

## Installing

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| Certificate .....                          | 7-167, 7-180 |
| Download manager utility .....             | 4-2          |
| Management information base ...            | 4-2          |
| PageScope Data Administrator               |              |
| .....                                      | 4-2          |
| Printer driver .....                       | 1-3, 2-2     |
| Printer Management Utilities .....         | 4-2          |
| Status monitor .....                       | 4-2          |
| <b>IP address</b> .....                    | 5-5, 6-3     |
| Manual setting .....                       | 6-5          |
| <b>IP address filtering, PageScope Web</b> |              |
| <b>Connection</b> .....                    | 7-128        |
| <b>IPP</b> .....                           | 6-11         |
| Printing via .....                         | 6-14         |
| <b>IPP, PageScope</b>                      |              |
| <b>Web Connection</b> .....                | 7-147        |
| <b>IPsec</b> .....                         | 6-11         |
| <b>IPsec PageScope</b>                     |              |
| <b>Web Connection</b> .....                | 7-131        |
| <b>IPsec Peer settings, PageScope Web</b>  |              |
| <b>Connection</b> .....                    | 7-137        |
| <b>IPsec SA Settings, PageScope Web</b>    |              |
| <b>Connection</b> .....                    | 7-135        |
| <b>IPv4 settings, PageScope Web</b>        |              |
| <b>Connection</b> .....                    | 7-118        |
| <b>IPv6</b> .....                          | 6-11         |
| <b>IPv6 settings, PageScope Web</b>        |              |
| <b>Connection</b> .....                    | 7-121        |
| <b>IPX/SPX</b> .....                       | 6-11         |

## J

|                             |            |
|-----------------------------|------------|
| <b>Job log</b> .....        | 7-61       |
| <b>Job, PageScope</b>       |            |
| <b>Web Connection</b> ..... | 7-28, 7-86 |
| Active job list .....       | 7-28       |
| Done job list .....         | 7-29       |

## L

### Linux

|                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Adding the printer .....      | 2-3  |
| Checking print jobs .....     | 2-18 |
| PPD file, installing .....    | 2-2  |
| Print settings .....          | 2-16 |
| Printer driver settings ..... | 2-10 |



|                                       |             |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| System requirements .....             | 2-2         |
| Troubleshooting .....                 | 2-19        |
| <b>LLMNR</b> .....                    | 6-11        |
| <b>LLTD</b> .....                     | 6-12, 7-142 |
| <b>LLTD, PageScope</b>                |             |
| <b>Web Connection</b> .....           | 7-142       |
| <b>Local interface, PageScope Web</b> |             |
| <b>Connection</b> .....               | 7-89        |
| <b>LPD/LPR</b> .....                  | 6-12        |

## M

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>Mac OS X</b>                         |       |
| Options .....                           | 1-59  |
| Page setup settings .....               | 1-63  |
| Print Options .....                     | 1-59  |
| Print settings .....                    | 1-67  |
| Printer driver, installing .....        | 1-3   |
| Printer Setup Utility .....             | 1-34  |
| System requirements .....               | 1-2   |
| Troubleshooting .....                   | 1-109 |
| <b>Management information base</b> .... | 4-2   |
| <b>Mode using SSL/TLS, PageScope</b>    |       |
| <b>Web Connection</b> .....             | 7-170 |

## N

|                                 |       |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| <b>NetWare</b> .....            | 3-2   |
| <b>NetWare, PageScope Web</b>   |       |
| <b>Connection</b> .....         | 7-143 |
| <b>Network connection</b> ..... | 6-2   |
| Address setting .....           | 6-5   |
| Ethernet interface .....        | 6-3   |
| Making connections .....        | 6-3   |
| Theory .....                    | 6-2   |
| Using DHCP .....                | 6-3   |
| <b>Network menu</b>             |       |
| Overview .....                  | 5-2   |
| <b>Network printing</b> .....   | 6-9   |
| <b>Network setting</b> .....    | 5-2   |
| <b>Network, PageScope Web</b>   |       |
| <b>Connection</b>               |       |
| Configuration .....             | 7-116 |
| DNS settings .....              | 7-126 |
| IP address filtering .....      | 7-128 |
| IPsec .....                     | 7-131 |
| IPv6 settings .....             | 7-118 |

|                         |       |
|-------------------------|-------|
| IPv6 settings .....     | 7-121 |
| RAW port settings ..... | 7-124 |

## P

|                                       |              |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>Page setup settings</b> .....      | 1-63         |
| Custom paper size options .....       | 1-65         |
| Page attributes options .....         | 1-64         |
| <b>PageScope</b>                      |              |
| <b>Data Administrator</b> .....       | 4-2          |
| <b>PageScope Web Connection</b> ..... | 7-2          |
| Account Track registration .....      | 7-67         |
| Active job list .....                 | 7-86         |
| Admin password .....                  | 7-74         |
| Administrator Mode .....              | 7-12         |
| AppleTalk .....                       | 7-156        |
| Authentication .....                  | 7-63, 7-171  |
| Auto Logout .....                     | 7-173        |
| Bonjour .....                         | 7-138        |
| CA certificate information .....      | 7-177        |
| CA certificate setting .....          | 7-179        |
| Certificate request .....             | 7-166        |
| Clear settings .....                  | 7-80         |
| Color profile .....                   | 7-45, 7-114  |
| Consumables .....                     | 7-22, 7-57   |
| Counter .....                         | 7-23, 7-58   |
| Current status .....                  | 7-8          |
| Date/Time .....                       | 7-70         |
| Default permission settings .....     | 7-63         |
| Device information .....              | 7-14, 7-49   |
| Direct print .....                    | 7-47         |
| Display language .....                | 7-2          |
| DNS settings .....                    | 7-126        |
| Done job list .....                   | 7-29, 7-87   |
| Email .....                           | 7-157        |
| Encryption strength setting .....     | 7-168        |
| Form overlay .....                    | 7-44, 7-113  |
| FTP .....                             | 7-151        |
| General settings .....                | 7-31, 7-90   |
| IEEE802.1x .....                      | 7-174        |
| IKE settings .....                    | 7-134        |
| Import/Export .....                   | 7-61         |
| Install a certificate .....           | 7-167, 7-180 |
| Interface information .....           | 7-19, 7-54   |
| IP address filtering .....            | 7-128        |
| IPP .....                             | 7-147        |
| IPsec .....                           | 7-131        |

|                                       |              |  |             |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|--|-------------|
| IPsec Peer settings .....             | 7-137        | WSD .....                                | 7-140       |
| IPsec SA settings .....               | 7-135        | XPS settings .....                       | 7-38, 7-103 |
| IPv4 settings .....                   | 7-118        | <b>Paper source settings, PageScope</b>  |             |
| IPv6 settings .....                   | 7-121        | <b>Web Connection</b> .....              | 7-33, 7-93  |
| Job log .....                         | 7-49         | <b>Password, PageScope Web</b>           |             |
| LLTD .....                            | 7-142        | <b>Connection</b> .....                  | 7-74        |
| Local interface .....                 | 7-89         | <b>PCL font, PageScope Web</b>           |             |
| Login page .....                      | 7-9          | <b>Connection</b> .....                  | 7-42        |
| Mode using SSL/TLS .....              | 7-170        | <b>PCL settings, PageScope Web</b>       |             |
| Navigation .....                      | 7-7          | <b>Connection</b> .....                  | 7-36, 7-98  |
| NetWare .....                         | 7-143        | <b>Port 9100</b> .....                   | 6-13        |
| Online assistance .....               | 7-24, 7-59   | <b>Print Center</b>                      |             |
| Output tray .....                     | 7-14, 7-49   | AppleTalk .....                          | 1-11        |
| Paper source .....                    | 7-14, 7-49   | Rendezvous .....                         | 1-13        |
| Paper source settings .....           | 7-33, 7-93   | <b>Print jobs</b>                        |             |
| PCL font .....                        | 7-42         | Checking .....                           | 2-18        |
| PCL settings .....                    | 7-36, 7-98   | <b>Print quality settings, PageScope</b> |             |
| Print quality settings .....          | 7-39, 7-104  | <b>Web Connection</b> .....              | 7-39, 7-104 |
| Printer configuration .....           | 7-48         | <b>Print, PageScope</b>                  |             |
| PS font .....                         | 7-43, 7-112  | <b>Web Connection</b> .....              | 7-31, 7-89  |
| PS settings .....                     | 7-37, 7-101  | Color profile .....                      | 7-45, 7-114 |
| Public User Mode .....                | 7-9          | Direct print .....                       | 7-47        |
| RAW port settings .....               | 7-124        | Form overlay .....                       | 7-44, 7-113 |
| Registered User Mode .....            | 7-9          | General settings .....                   | 7-31, 7-90  |
| Registration information .....        | 7-14         | Local interface .....                    | 7-89        |
| Remove a certificate .....            | 7-169, 7-181 | Paper source settings .....              | 7-33, 7-93  |
| Report types .....                    | 7-46         | PCL font .....                           | 7-42        |
| Request a certificate .....           | 7-164        | PCL settings .....                       | 7-36, 7-98  |
| Requirements .....                    | 7-3          | Print quality settings .....             | 7-39, 7-104 |
| Reset printer .....                   | 7-81         | PS font .....                            | 7-43, 7-112 |
| ROM version .....                     | 7-79         | PS settings .....                        | 7-37, 7-101 |
| Self-signed certificate setting ..... | 7-162        | Report types .....                       | 7-46        |
| SNMP .....                            | 7-152        | Tray mapping settings .....              | 7-35, 7-97  |
| SSL/TLS information .....             | 7-159        | XPS settings .....                       | 7-38, 7-103 |
| SSL/TLS setting .....                 | 7-160        | <b>Printer name</b> .....                | 7-4         |
| Status notification settings .....    | 7-82         | <b>Printer Setup Utility</b> .....       | 1-34        |
| Storage .....                         | 7-18, 7-53   | AppleTalk .....                          | 1-27, 1-38  |
| Summary .....                         | 7-14, 7-49   | Bonjour .....                            | 1-36        |
| TCP/IP .....                          | 7-117        | IP printing setting .....                | 1-30, 1-41  |
| Time adjustment settings .....        | 7-72         | Network Connection .....                 | 1-27, 1-36  |
| Tray mapping settings .....           | 7-35, 7-97   | Rendezvous .....                         | 1-29        |
| User authentication .....             | 7-25, 7-171  | USB connection .....                     | 1-34        |
| User information .....                | 7-62         | <b>Printer status</b> .....              | 7-13        |
| User password change .....            | 7-25         | <b>Printing with NetWare</b> .....       | 3-2         |
| User registration .....               | 7-64         | <b>Protocols, network</b>                |             |
| Viewing printer status .....          | 7-13         | BOOTP .....                              | 6-10        |
| Window .....                          | 7-7          | DHCP .....                               | 6-10        |

|               |      |
|---------------|------|
| HTTP .....    | 6-10 |
| IPP .....     | 6-11 |
| IPv6 .....    | 6-11 |
| IPX/SPX ..... | 6-11 |
| LLMNR .....   | 6-11 |
| LLTD .....    | 6-12 |
| LPD/LPR ..... | 6-12 |
| SLP .....     | 6-12 |
| SMTP .....    | 6-13 |
| SNMP .....    | 6-13 |

## **PS font, PageScope**

|                      |             |
|----------------------|-------------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-43, 7-112 |
|----------------------|-------------|

## **PS settings, PageScope Web**

|                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| Connection ..... | 7-37, 7-101 |
|------------------|-------------|

## **Public User Mode, PageScope Web**

|                  |     |
|------------------|-----|
| Connection ..... | 7-9 |
|------------------|-----|

# **R**

## **RAW port settings, PageScope Web**

|                  |       |
|------------------|-------|
| Connection ..... | 7-124 |
|------------------|-------|

## **Registered User Mode, PageScope**

|                      |     |
|----------------------|-----|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-9 |
|----------------------|-----|

## **Remove a certificate, PageScope Web**

|                  |              |
|------------------|--------------|
| Connection ..... | 7-169, 7-181 |
|------------------|--------------|

## **Rendezvous .....**

|                   |
|-------------------|
| 1-13, 1-29, 7-138 |
|-------------------|

## **Report types, PageScope Web**

|                  |      |
|------------------|------|
| Connection ..... | 7-46 |
|------------------|------|

## **Request a certificate, PageScope**

|                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-164 |
|----------------------|-------|

## **Reset printer, PageScope Web**

|                  |      |
|------------------|------|
| Connection ..... | 7-81 |
|------------------|------|

## **ROM version, PageScope Web**

|                  |      |
|------------------|------|
| Connection ..... | 7-79 |
|------------------|------|

# **S**

## **Self-signed certificate setting,**

### **PageScope**

|                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-162 |
|----------------------|-------|

## **SLP .....**

|      |
|------|
| 6-12 |
|------|

## **SMTP .....**

|      |
|------|
| 6-13 |
|------|

## **SNMP .....**

|      |
|------|
| 6-13 |
|------|

## **SNMP, PageScope**

|                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-152 |
|----------------------|-------|

## **Specifying .....**

|      |
|------|
| 1-63 |
|------|

## **SSL/TLS information, PageScope**

|                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-159 |
|----------------------|-------|

## **SSL/TLS setting, PageScope Web**

|                  |       |
|------------------|-------|
| Connection ..... | 7-160 |
|------------------|-------|

## **Status monitor .....**

|     |
|-----|
| 4-2 |
|-----|

## **Subnet mask .....**

|          |
|----------|
| 5-5, 6-3 |
|----------|

## **Manual setting .....**

|     |
|-----|
| 6-5 |
|-----|

## **System Preference**

|                 |      |
|-----------------|------|
| AppleTalk ..... | 1-52 |
|-----------------|------|

## **System requirements**

|             |     |
|-------------|-----|
| Linux ..... | 2-2 |
|-------------|-----|

|                |     |
|----------------|-----|
| Mac OS X ..... | 1-2 |
|----------------|-----|

## **System, PageScope**

|                      |            |
|----------------------|------------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-13, 7-48 |
|----------------------|------------|

|                      |      |
|----------------------|------|
| Clear settings ..... | 7-80 |
|----------------------|------|

|                 |      |
|-----------------|------|
| Date/Time ..... | 7-70 |
|-----------------|------|

|                        |      |
|------------------------|------|
| Machine settings ..... | 7-76 |
|------------------------|------|

|                |      |
|----------------|------|
| Password ..... | 7-74 |
|----------------|------|

|                     |      |
|---------------------|------|
| Reset printer ..... | 7-81 |
|---------------------|------|

|                   |      |
|-------------------|------|
| ROM version ..... | 7-79 |
|-------------------|------|

|                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| Status notification settings ..... | 7-82 |
|------------------------------------|------|

|                                |      |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Time adjustment settings ..... | 7-72 |
|--------------------------------|------|

## **TCP/IP, PageScope**

|                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-117 |
|----------------------|-------|

## **Time adjustment settings, PageScope**

|                      |      |
|----------------------|------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-72 |
|----------------------|------|

## **Tray mapping settings, PageScope**

|                      |            |
|----------------------|------------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-35, 7-97 |
|----------------------|------------|

## **Troubleshooting**

|             |      |
|-------------|------|
| Linux ..... | 2-19 |
|-------------|------|

|                |       |
|----------------|-------|
| Mac OS X ..... | 1-109 |
|----------------|-------|

# **W**

## **Web page, printer .....**

|     |
|-----|
| 7-4 |
|-----|

|               |     |
|---------------|-----|
| Browser ..... | 7-5 |
|---------------|-----|

|                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| Printer name ..... | 7-4 |
|--------------------|-----|

## **WSD, PageScope**

|                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| Web Connection ..... | 7-140 |
|----------------------|-------|

## **WSD, print .....**

|      |
|------|
| 6-13 |
|------|



**XPS settings, PageScope Web  
Connection .....7-38, 7-103**

